



INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

| | | |
|---|-----------|---|
| <p>(51) International Patent Classification ⁶ : C07D 401/12, A61K 31/415, 31/40, 31/47, 31/42, C07D 209/08, 235/08, 235/12, 401/04, 401/06, 403/04, 413/12, 405/12, 405/14, 409/14</p> | <p>A1</p> | <p>(11) International Publication Number: WO 97/48697 (43) International Publication Date: 24 December 1997 (24.12.97)</p> |
| <p>(21) International Application Number: PCT/GB97/01639 (22) International Filing Date: 19 June 1997 (19.06.97) (30) Priority Data: 9612760.0 19 June 1996 (19.06.96) GB 60/023,047 2 August 1996 (02.08.96) US (71) Applicant (for all designated States except US): RHONE-POULENC RORER LIMITED [GB/GB]; RPR House, 50 Kings Hill Avenue, Kings Hill, West Malling, Kent ME19 4TA (GB). (72) Inventors; and (75) Inventors/Applicants (for US only): COX, Paul, Joseph [GB/GB]; (GB). BOWER, Shelley [GB/GB]; (GB). ALDOUS, David, John [US/GB]; (GB). ASTLES, Peter, Charles [GB/GB]; (GB). McGARRY, Daniel, Gerard [GB/US]; Rhone-Poulenc Rorer Inc., 500 Arcola Road, P.O. Box 1200, Collegeville, PA 19426-0107 (US). HULME, Christopher [GB/US]; Rhone-Poulenc Rorer Inc., 500 Arcola Road, P.O. Box 1200, Collegeville, PA 19426-0107 (US). REGAN, John, Robinson [US/US]; Rhone-Poulenc Rorer Inc., 500 Arcola Road, P.O. Box 1200, Collegeville,</p> | | <p>PA 19426-0107 (US). HUANG, Fu-Chih [US/US]; Rhone-Poulenc Rorer Inc., 500 Arcola Road, P.O. Box 1200, Collegeville, PA 19426-0107 (US). DJURIC, Stevan, Wakefield [GB/US]; Rhone-Poulenc Rorer Inc., 500 Arcola Road, P.O. Box 1200, Collegeville, PA 19426-0107 (US). MORIARTY, Kevin, Joseph [US/US]; Rhone-Poulenc Rorer Inc., 500 Arcola Road, P.O. Box 1200, Collegeville, PA 19426-0107 (US). MATHIEW, Rose, Mappilakunnel [IN/US]; Rhone-Poulenc Rorer Inc., 500 Arcola Road, P.O. Box 1200, Collegeville, PA 19426-0107 (US). POLI, Gregory, Bernard [US/US]; Rhone-Poulenc Rorer Inc., 500 Arcola Road, P.O. Box 1200, Collegeville, PA 19426-0107 (US). (74) Agent: CAITLIN, Lee; Rhone-Poulenc Rorer Limited, Patent Dept., Rainham Road South, Dagenham, Essex RM10 7XS (GB). (81) Designated States: AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, CA, CH, CN, CU, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, GB, GE, GH, HU, IL, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, NO, NZ, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, SL, TJ, TM, TR, TT, UA, UG, US, UZ, VN, YU, ZW, ARIPO patent (GH, KE, LS, MW, SD, SZ, UG, ZW), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).</p> <p>Published With international search report. With amended claims.</p> |
| <p>(54) Title: SUBSTITUTED AZABICYCLIC COMPOUNDS AND THEIR USE AS INHIBITORS OF THE PRODUCTION OF TNF AND CYCLIC AMP PHOSPHODIESTERASE</p> | | |
| <p>Structure (I) shows a bicyclic system with rings A and B. Substituents include (R¹Z¹)_n, (Z¹R¹)_m, R²A¹, and R³. Structure (II) shows a single ring A. Structure (III) shows a single ring B.</p> | | |
| <p>(57) Abstract</p> <p>This invention is directed to physiologically active compounds of formula (I) wherein (i) represents a bicyclic ring system, of about 10 to about 13 ring members, in which the ring (ii) is an azaheterocycle, and the ring (iii) represents an azaheteroaryl ring, or an optionally halo substituted benzene ring; wherein R¹-R³, A¹, Z¹, m and n are as defined herein. Such compounds inhibit the production or physiological effects of TNF and inhibit cyclic AMP phosphodiesterase. The invention is also directed to pharmaceutical compositions comprising compounds of formula (I), their pharmaceutical use and methods for their preparation.</p> | | |

FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

| | | | | | | | |
|----|--------------------------|----|--|----|--|----|--------------------------|
| AL | Albania | ES | Spain | LS | Lesotho | SI | Slovenia |
| AM | Armenia | FI | Finland | LT | Lithuania | SK | Slovakia |
| AT | Austria | FR | France | LU | Luxembourg | SN | Senegal |
| AU | Australia | GA | Gabon | LV | Latvia | SZ | Swaziland |
| AZ | Azerbaijan | GB | United Kingdom | MC | Monaco | TD | Chad |
| BA | Bosnia and Herzegovina | GE | Georgia | MD | Republic of Moldova | TG | Togo |
| BB | Barbados | GH | Ghana | MG | Madagascar | TJ | Tajikistan |
| BE | Belgium | GN | Guinea | MK | The former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia | TM | Turkmenistan |
| BF | Burkina Faso | GR | Greece | ML | Mali | TR | Turkey |
| BG | Bulgaria | HU | Hungary | MN | Mongolia | TT | Trinidad and Tobago |
| BJ | Benin | IE | Ireland | MR | Mauritania | UA | Ukraine |
| BR | Brazil | IL | Israel | MW | Malawi | UG | Uganda |
| BY | Belarus | IS | Iceland | MX | Mexico | US | United States of America |
| CA | Canada | IT | Italy | NE | Niger | UZ | Uzbekistan |
| CF | Central African Republic | JP | Japan | NL | Netherlands | VN | Viet Nam |
| CG | Congo | KE | Kenya | NO | Norway | YU | Yugoslavia |
| CH | Switzerland | KG | Kyrgyzstan | NZ | New Zealand | ZW | Zimbabwe |
| CI | Côte d'Ivoire | KP | Democratic People's Republic of Korea | PL | Poland | | |
| CM | Cameroon | KR | Republic of Korea | PT | Portugal | | |
| CN | China | KZ | Kazakhstan | RO | Romania | | |
| CU | Cuba | LC | Saint Lucia | RU | Russian Federation | | |
| CZ | Czech Republic | LI | Liechtenstein | SD | Sudan | | |
| DE | Germany | LK | Sri Lanka | SE | Sweden | | |
| DK | Denmark | LR | Liberia | SG | Singapore | | |
| EE | Estonia | | | | | | |

- 1 -

SUBSTITUTED AZABICYCLIC COMPOUNDS AND THEIR USE AS INHIBITORS OF THE PRODUCTION OF TNF AND CYCLIC AMP PHOSPHODIESTERASE

This invention is directed to substituted azabicyclic compounds, their preparation, pharmaceutical compositions
5 containing these compounds, and their pharmaceutical use in the treatment of disease states associated with proteins that mediate cellular activity.

Tumour necrosis factor (TNF) is an important
10 pro-inflammatory cytokine which causes hemorrhagic necrosis of tumors and possesses other important biological activities. TNF is released by activated macrophages, activated T-lymphocytes, natural killer cells, mast cells and basophils, fibroblasts, endothelial
15 cells and brain astrocytes among other cells.

The principal in vivo actions of TNF can be broadly classified as inflammatory and catabolic. It has been implicated as a mediator of endotoxic shock, inflammation
20 of joints and of the airways, immune deficiency states, allograft rejection, and in the cachexia associated with malignant disease and some parasitic infections. In view of the association of high serum levels of TNF with poor prognosis in sepsis, graft versus host disease and adult
25 respiratory distress syndrome, and its role in many other immunologic processes, this factor is regarded as an important mediator of general inflammation.

TNF primes or activates neutrophils, eosinophils,
30 fibroblasts and endothelial cells to release tissue

- 2 -

damaging mediators. TNF also activates monocytes, macrophages and T-lymphocytes to cause the production of colony stimulating factors and other pro-inflammatory cytokines such IL₁, IL₆, IL₈ and GM-CSF, which in some

5 case mediate the end effects of TNF. The ability of TNF to activate T-lymphocytes, monocytes, macrophages and related cells has been implicated in the progression of Human Immunodeficiency Virus (HIV) infection. In order for these cells to become infected with HIV and for HIV

10 replication to take place the cells must be maintained in an activated state. Cytokines such as TNF have been shown to activate HIV replication in monocytes and macrophages. Features of endotoxic shock such as fever, metabolic acidosis, hypotension and intravascular

15 coagulation are thought to be mediated through the actions of TNF on the hypothalamus and in reducing the anti-coagulant activity of vascular endothelial cells. The cachexia associated with certain disease states is mediated through indirect effects on protein catabolism.

20 TNF also promotes bone resorption and acute phase protein synthesis.

The discussion herein relates to disease states associated with TNF including those disease states

25 related to the production of TNF itself, and disease states associated with other cytokines, such as but not limited to IL-1, or IL-6, that are modulated by associated with TNF. For example, a IL-1 associated disease state, where IL-1 production or action is

30 exacerbated or secreted in response to TNF, would

- 3 -

therefore be considered a disease state associated with TNF. TNF-alpha and TNF-beta are also herein referred to collectively as "TNF" unless specifically delineated otherwise, since there is a close structural homology

5 between TNF-alpha (cachectin) and TNF-beta (lymphotoxin) and each of them has a capacity to induce similar biological responses and bind to the same cellular receptor.

10 Cyclic AMP phosphodiesterases are important enzymes which regulate cyclic AMP levels and in turn thereby regulate other important biological reactions. The ability to regulate cyclic AMP phosphodiesterases therefore, has been implicated as being capable of treating assorted

15 biological conditions. In particular, inhibitors of type IV cyclic AMP phosphodiesterase have been implicated as being bronchodilators agents, prophylactic agents useful against asthma and as agents for inhibiting eosinophil accumulation and of the function of eosinophils, and for

20 treating other diseases and conditions characterised by, or having an etiology involving, morbid eosinophil accumulation. Inhibitors of cyclic AMP phosphodiesterase are also implicated in treating inflammatory diseases, proliferative skin diseases and conditions associated

25 with cerebral metabolic inhibition.

It has already been reported that certain substituted monocyclic aromatic compounds have valuable pharmaceutical properties, in particular the ability to

30 regulate proteins that mediate cellular activity, for

- 4 -

example, type IV cyclic AMP phosphodiesterase and/or TNF, as described, for example, in the specification of International Patent Application Publication No. WO 95/04045.

5

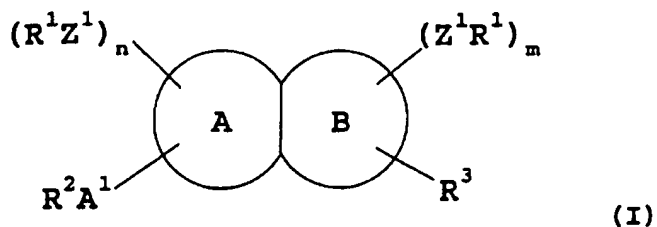
Certain substituted bicyclic aromatic compounds, for example amino-substituted benzofurans and benzothiophenes, are reported in European Patent Application EP-A-0685475, to have the ability to regulate
10 elevated cellular cyclic AMP levels probably due to inhibition of type IV cyclic AMP phosphodiesterase.

Further examples of substituted bicyclic aromatic compounds with type IV cyclic AMP phosphodiesterase
15 and/or TNF inhibitory activity include dihydrobenzofurans reported in WO 96/36625 and WO 96/36626.

We have now found a novel group of azabicyclic compounds which have valuable pharmaceutical properties, in
20 particular the ability to regulate proteins that mediate cellular activity, for example, cyclic AMP phosphodiesterases (in particular type IV) and/or TNF.

Thus, in one aspect, the present invention is directed to
25 compounds of general formula (I):-

- 5 -



wherein

represents a bicyclic ring system, of about 10 to about 13 ring members, in which the ring

5 is an azaheterocycle, and the ring represents an azaheteroaryl ring, or an optionally halo substituted benzene ring;

R^1 represents hydrogen or a straight- or branched-chain alkyl group of 1 to about 4 carbon atoms, optionally substituted by hydroxy or one or more halogen atoms, or when Z^1 represents a direct bond R^1 may also represent a lower alkenyl or lower alkynyl group, or a formyl group;

R^2 represents hydrogen, alkenyl, alkoxy, alkyl, alkylsulphiny, alkylsulphonyl, alkylthio, aryl, arylalkyloxy, arylalkylsulphiny, arylalkylsulphonyl, arylalkylthio, aryloxy, arylsulphiny, arylsulphonyl, arylthio, cyano, cycloalkenyl, cycloalkenyloxy, cycloalkyl, cycloalkyloxy, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkyloxy, heteroaryloxy, hydroxy, $-SO_2NR^4R^5$, $-NR^4SO_2R^5$, $-NR^4R^5$, $-C(=O)R^5$, $-C(=O)C(=O)R^5$, $-C(=O)NR^4R^5$, $-C(=O)OR^5$, $-O(C=O)NR^4R^5$, or $-NR^4C(=O)R^5$ (where R^4 and R^5 ,

- 6 -

which may be the same or different, each represent a hydrogen atom, or an alkyl, aryl, arylalkyl, cycloalkyl, heteroaryl, or heteroarylalkyl group);

R^3 represents a group selected from :

- | | | |
|----|---------|---|
| 5 | (i) | $-C(=Z)-N(R^7)R^6$ |
| | (ii) | $-C(=Z)-CHR^{12}R^6$ |
| | (iii) | $-C(=Z)-R^6$ |
| | (iv) | $-CR^8=C(R^9)(CH_2)_p-R^6$ |
| | (v) | $-C(R^{10})=C(R^{11})R^{12}$ |
| 10 | (vi) | $-C(R^{13})(R^{10})C(R^{11})(R^{14})R^{12}$ |
| | (vii) | $-C(R^8)(R^{15})CH(R^9)(CH_2)_p-R^6$ |
| | (viii) | $-R^6$ |
| | (ix) | $-N(R^{16})C(=Z)R^6$ |
| | (x) | $-C(R^{17})=N-OC(=O)R^{18}$ |
| 15 | (xi) | $-C(=O)-N(R^{19})OR^{20}$ |
| | (xii) | $-C\equiv C-R^6$ |
| | (xiii) | $-CH_2-C(=Z)-R^6$ |
| | (xiv) | $-C(=Z)-C(=Z)R^6$ |
| | (xv) | $-CH_2-NHR^6$ |
| 20 | (xvi) | $-CH_2-ZR^6$ |
| | (xvii) | $-CH_2-SOR^6$ |
| | (xviii) | $-CH_2-SO_2R^6$ |
| | (xix) | $-CF_2-OR^6$ |
| | (xx) | $-NH-CH_2R^6$ |
| 25 | (xxi) | $-Z-CH_2R^6$ |

- 7 -

| | | |
|----|-----------|---|
| | (xxii) | $-\text{SO}-\text{CH}_2\text{R}^6$ |
| | (xxiv) | $-\text{SO}_2-\text{CH}_2\text{R}^6$ |
| | (xxv) | $-\text{O}-\text{CF}_2\text{R}^6$ |
| | (xxiii) | $-\text{O}-\text{C}(=\text{Z})\text{R}^6$ |
| 5 | (xxvi) | $-\text{N}=\text{N}-\text{R}^6$ |
| | (xxvii) | $-\text{NH}-\text{SO}_2\text{R}^6$ |
| | (xxviii) | $-\text{SO}_2-\text{NR}^{21}\text{R}^{22}$ |
| | (xxix) | $-\text{CZ}-\text{CZ}-\text{NHR}^6$ |
| | (xxx) | $-\text{NH}-\text{CO}-\text{OR}^6$ |
| 10 | (xxxi) | $-\text{O}-\text{CO}-\text{NHR}^6$ |
| | (xxxii) | $-\text{NH}-\text{CO}-\text{NHR}^6$ |
| | (xxxiii) | $-\text{R}^{23}$ |
| | (xxxiv) | $-\text{CX}^1=\text{CX}^2\text{R}^6$ |
| | (xxxv) | $-\text{C}(=\text{NOR}^{24})-(\text{CH}_2)_q\text{R}^6$ |
| 15 | (xxxvi) | $-\text{CH}_2-\text{CO}-\text{NH}(\text{CH}_2)_q\text{R}^6$ |
| | (xxxvii) | $-\text{CH}_2-\text{NH}-\text{CO}(\text{CH}_2)_q\text{R}^6$ |
| | (xxxviii) | $-\text{CH}_2-\text{CO}-\text{CH}_2\text{R}^6$ |
| | (xxxix) | $-\text{C}(=\text{NR}^{25})-\text{NH}(\text{CH}_2)_q\text{R}^6$ |
| | (xxxx) | $-\text{C}(\text{X}^3)=\text{N}-(\text{CH}_2)_q\text{R}^6$ |
| 20 | (xxxxi) | $-\text{CH}(\text{X}^4)-\text{CH}_2\text{R}^6$ |

[where:

- R^6 is aryl or heteroaryl;
- R^7 is a hydrogen atom or an alkyl or amino group;
- R^8 and R^9 , which may be the same or different, is each a
5 hydrogen atom or alkyl, $-CO_2R^5$, $-C(=Z)NR^{26}R^{27}$ (where R^{26}
and R^{27} may be the same or different and each is as
described for R^5), $-CN$ or $-CH_2CN$;
- R^{10} and R^{11} , which may be the same or different, is each
a group $-(CH_2)_pR^6$;
- 10 R^{12} is a hydrogen atom or an alkyl group;
- R^{13} is a hydrogen or halogen atom or an $-OR^{28}$ group
(where R^{28} is a hydrogen atom or an alkyl, alkenyl,
alkoxyalkyl, acyl, carboxamido or thiocarboxamido group);
- R^{14} is a hydrogen atom or an alkyl group;
- 15 R^{15} is a hydrogen atom or a hydroxyl group;
- R^{16} is a hydrogen atom or an alkyl, amino, aryl,
arylalkyl, or hydroxy group;
- R^{17} is a hydrogen atom or a C_{1-4} alkyl or aryl C_{1-4} alkyl
group;
- 20 R^{18} is an amino, alkylamino, arylamino, alkoxy or aryloxy
group;
- R^{19} is an alkyl, aryl, heteroaryl, arylalkyl or
heteroarylalkyl group;
- R^{20} is R^5 , $(CH_2)_pCO_2R^5$ or $(CH_2)_pCOR^5$;

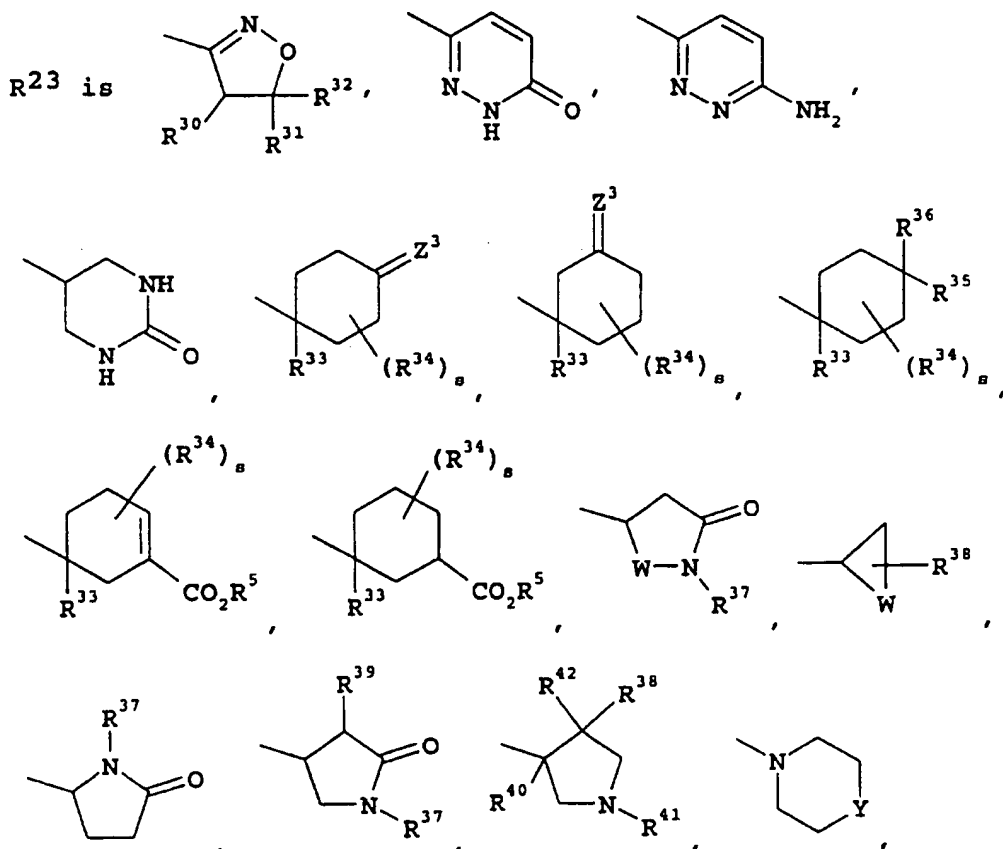
- 9 -

R²¹ is a group -L¹-R²⁹ [where L¹ is a straight or branched C₁₋₆alkylene chain, a straight or branched C₂₋₆alkenylene chain, a straight or branched C₂₋₆alkynylene chain or a straight or branched C₁₋₆alkylene chain containing an oxygen or sulphur atom, a phenylene, imino (-NH-) or alkylimino linkage, or a sulphinyl or sulphonyl group, in which each of the alkylene, alkenylene and alkynylene chains may be optionally substituted, the substituents chosen from alkoxy, aryl, carboxy, cyano, cycloalkyl, halogen, heteroaryl, hydroxyl or oxo; and R²⁹ is hydrogen, or arylalkoxycarbonyl, carboxy or an acid bioisostere, cyano, -NY¹Y², {where Y¹ and Y² are independently hydrogen, alkyl, aryl, arylalkyl, heterocycloalkyl, heteroaryl or heteroarylalkyl, or the group -NY¹Y² may form a 4-6 membered cyclic amine (which may optionally contain a further heteroatom selected from O, S, or NY¹, or which may be fused to an additional aromatic or heteroaromatic ring)}], or R²¹ is an optionally substituted cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl or heterocycloalkyl group which may optionally be fused to an additional optionally substituted aromatic, heteroaromatic, carbocyclic or heterocycloalkyl ring (where the one or more optional substituents, for either or both rings, may be represented by -L¹-R²⁹);

R²² is a hydrogen atom, a group -L¹-R²⁹, or an optionally substituted aryl, heteroaryl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl or heterocycloalkyl group which may optionally be fused to an additional optionally substituted aromatic,

- 10 -

heteroaromatic, carbocyclic or heterocycloalkyl ring
 (where the one or more optional substituents, for either
 or both rings, may be represented by $-L^1-R^{29}$); or both
 R^{21} and R^{22} represent aryl or heteroaryl each optionally
 5 substituted by $-L^1-R^{29}$; or the group $-NR^{21}R^{22}$ represents
 an optionally substituted saturated or unsaturated 3 to 8
 membered cyclic amine ring, which may optionally contain
 one or more heteroatoms selected from O, S or N, and may
 also be fused to an additional optionally substituted
 10 aromatic, heteroaromatic, carbocyclic or heterocycloalkyl
 ring (where the one or more optional substituents, for
 any of the rings, may be represented by $-L^1-R^{29}$);



- 11 -

{where:

R³⁰ is a hydrogen atom or an alkyl, hydroxyalkyl or alkoxyalkyl group;

R³¹ is a hydrogen atom or an alkyl, carboxy, CONHOR¹⁴,
5 N-alkylaminoalkyl, N,N-dialkylaminoalkyl or alkoxyalkyl group; or R³⁰ and R³¹ together represent a -CH₂-O-CH₂-O-CH₂- group;

R³² is a hydrogen atom, or amino, alkyl, aminoalkyl, hydroxyalkyl, hydroxy, acyl, alkoxycarbonyl,
10 methoxycarbonylalkyl, -(CH₂)_pCONY³Y⁴ (where Y³ and Y⁴ are each independently hydrogen or alkyl), -(CH₂)_pSO₂NY³Y⁴, -(CH₂)_pPO₃H₂, -(CH₂)_pSO₂NHCOalkyl, or -(CH₂)_pSO₂NHCOR⁶;
R³³ is C₁₋₄alkyl, CH₂NHCOCONH₂, CH=C(R⁴³)R⁴⁴ (where R⁴³ is R⁴⁴ or fluorine and R⁴⁴ is hydrogen or C₁₋₄alkyl
15 optionally substituted by 1 to 3 fluorine atoms), cyclopropyl (optionally substituted by R⁴³), CN, CH₂OR⁴⁴ or CH₂NR⁴⁴R⁴⁵ (where R⁴⁵ is hydrogen, OR⁴⁴, or C₁₋₄alkyl optionally substituted by 1 to 3 fluorine atoms, or the group NR⁴⁴R⁴⁵ represents a 5 to 7 membered cyclic amine
20 optionally containing one or more additional heteroatom selected from O, N, or S);

R³⁴ is methyl or ethyl optionally substituted by 1 or more halogen atoms;

R³⁵ is R¹⁴, -OR¹⁴, -CO₂R¹⁴, -COR¹⁴, -CN, -CONY³Y⁴ or
25 -NY³Y⁴;

R³⁶ is -C(=Z)R¹⁴, -CO₂R¹⁴, -CONY³Y⁴ or -CN;

- 12 -

R^{37} and R^{39} , which may be the same or different, is each
 a hydrogen atom, alkyl, acyl, arylalkyl, $-(CH_2)_pCO_2R^5$,
 $-CONHR^5$, heteroarylalkyl, aryl, or heteroaryl;
 R^{38} is acyl, aroyl, $-C(=O)cycloalkyl$, alkoxycarbonyl,
 5 $cycloalkoxycarbonyl$, carboxy, alkoxyalkyl, $-NO_2$, $-CH_2OH$,
 $-CN$, $-NR^{14}COR^5$, $-NR^{14}CONY^5Y^6$, $-NR^{14}SO_2R^{46}$ [where R^{46} is
 alkyl, cycloalkyl, trifluoromethyl, aryl, arylalkyl or
 $-NY^5Y^6$ (where Y^5 and Y^6 are independently selected from
 hydrogen, alkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl or arylalkyl, or Y^5 and
 10 Y^6 together form a 4- to 7-membered heterocyclic or
 carbocyclic ring)], $-SO_2R^{46}$ or $-CONY^5Y^6$;
 R^{40} is hydrogen, alkyl, haloalkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl,
 acyl, aroyl, $-C(=O)cycloalkyl$, $-CH_2OH$, alkoxyalkyl,
 alkoxycarbonyl, cycloalkoxycarbonyl, aryloxycarbonyl,
 15 $-CN$, $-NO_2$, or $-SO_2R^{46}$;
 R^{41} is $-CN$, $-C(Z)R^{47}$ (where R^{47} is hydrogen, alkyl,
 haloalkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl, arylalkyl, heteroaryl,
 $C_{1-6}alkoxy$, arylalkoxy, aryloxy or $-NY^5Y^6$) or SO_2R^{46} ;
 R^{42} is hydrogen, alkyl, cycloalkyl, acyl, aroyl,
 20 $-C(=O)cycloalkyl$, alkoxycarbonyl, cycloalkoxycarbonyl,
 carboxy, $-CN$, $-SO_2R^{46}$ or $-CONY^5Y^6$;
 W is $(CH_2)_r$ or NR^{39} ;
 Z^3 is an oxygen atom, NR^{14} or NOR^{14} ;
 s is zero or an integer 1 to 4;
 25 r is 1 to 4; and
 Y is an oxygen atom, $C(=O)$, $CH(OH)$ or $C(OR^{14})(CH_2)_pR^6$ };

- 13 -

- R^{24} is R^5 or $CONHR^{25}$;
 R^{25} is hydrogen, C_{1-3} alkyl or $(CH_2)_qR^6$;
 p is zero or an integer 1 to 5;
 q is zero or 1;
- 5 X^1 and X^2 , which may be the same or different, is each a hydrogen or fluorine atom;
 X^3 is a chlorine or fluorine atom, alkoxy, aryloxy, heteroaryloxy, arylalkyloxy or heteroarylalkyl;
 X^4 is a halogen atom or hydroxy;
- 10 Z represents an oxygen or sulphur atom] ;
- A^1 represents a direct bond, or a straight or branched C_{1-6} alkylene chain optionally substituted by hydroxyl, alkoxy, oxo, cycloalkyl, aryl or heteroaryl, or A^1 represents a straight or branched C_{2-6} alkenylene or
- 15 C_{2-6} alkynylene chain;
- Z^1 represents a direct bond, an oxygen or sulphur atom or NH ;
- n and m each represent zero or 1, provided that n is 1 when m is zero and n is zero when m is 1;
- 20 and N-oxides thereof, and their prodrugs, and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and solvates (e.g. hydrates) of the compounds of formula (I) and N-oxides thereof, and their prodrugs.
- 25 In the present specification, the term "compounds of the invention", and equivalent expressions, are meant to embrace compounds of general formula (I) as hereinbefore

- 14 -

described, which expression includes the N-oxides, the prodrugs, the pharmaceutically acceptable salts, and the solvates, e.g. hydrates, where the context so permits. Similarly, reference to intermediates, whether or not
5 they themselves are claimed, is meant to embrace their N-oxides, salts, and solvates, where the context so permits. For the sake of clarity, particular instances when the context so permits are sometimes indicated in the text, but these instances are purely illustrative and
10 it is not intended to exclude other instances when the context so permits.

It is to be understood that R^2A^1 , $(R^1Z^1)_n$ and $(R^1Z^1)_m$ may be attached at either a ring carbon or nitrogen atom
15 whereas R^3 is attached at a ring carbon.

As used above, and throughout the description of the invention, the following terms, unless otherwise indicated, shall be understood to have the following
20 meanings:-

"Patient" includes both human and other mammals.

"Acyl" means an H-CO- or alkyl-CO- group in which the
25 alkyl group is as described herein. Preferred acyls contain a C_{1-4} alkyl. Exemplary acyl groups include formyl, acetyl, propanoyl, 2-methylpropanoyl, butanoyl and palmitoyl.

- 15 -

"Acylamino" is an acyl-NH- group wherein acyl is as defined herein.

"Alkoxy" means an alkyl-O- group in which the alkyl group
5 is as described herein. Exemplary alkoxy groups include methoxy, ethoxy, n-propoxy, i-propoxy, n-butoxy and heptoxy.

"Alkoxycarbonyl" means an alkyl-O-CO- group in which the
10 alkyl group is as described herein. Exemplary alkoxycarbonyl groups include methoxy- and ethoxycarbonyl.

"Alkyl" means, unless otherwise specified, an aliphatic
15 hydrocarbon group which may be straight or branched having about 1 to about 15 carbon atoms in the chain, optionally substituted by one or more halogen atoms. Particular alkyl groups have 1 to about 12 carbon atoms in the chain, more particularly from 1 to about 6 carbon
20 atoms. Exemplary alkyl groups for R¹ include methyl, fluoromethyl, difluoromethyl, trifluoromethyl and ethyl. Exemplary alkyl groups for R² include methyl, ethyl, n-propyl, i-propyl, n-butyl, s-butyl, t-butyl, n-pentyl, 3-pentyl, heptyl, octyl, nonyl, decyl and dodecyl.

25

"Alkylsulphonyl" means an alkyl-SO₂- group in which the alkyl group is as previously described. Preferred groups are those in which the alkyl group is C₁₋₄alkyl.

- 16 -

"Alkylsulphinyl" means an alkyl-SO- group in which the alkyl group is as previously described. Preferred groups are those in which the alkyl group is C₁₋₄alkyl.

5 "Alkylthio" means an alkyl-S- group in which the alkyl group is as previously described. Exemplary alkylthio groups include methylthio, ethylthio, isopropylthio and heptylthio.

10 "Aroyl" means an aryl-CO- group in which the aryl group is as described herein. Exemplary groups include benzoyl and 1- and 2-naphthoyl.

"Aroylamino" is an aroyl-NH- group wherein aroyl is as
15 previously defined.

"Aryl" as a group or part of a group denotes an optionally substituted monocyclic or multicyclic aromatic carbocyclic moiety of about 6 to about 10 carbon atoms.

20 When R³ contains an optionally substituted aryl group this may particularly represent an aromatic carbocyclic moiety of about 6 to about 10 carbon atoms such as phenyl or naphthyl optionally substituted with one or more aryl group substituents which may be the same or different,
25 where "aryl group substituent" includes, for example, acyl, acylamino, alkyl, alkoxy, alkoxycarbonyl, alkylthio, alkylsulphinyl, alkylsulphonyl, aroyl, aroylamino, aryl, arylalkyl, arylalkyloxy, arylalkyloxycarbonyl, arylalkylthio, aryloxy,
30 aryloxycarbonyl, arylsulphinyl, arylsulphonyl, carboxy,

- 17 -

cyano, halo, heteroaroyl, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkyl, heteroarylamino, heteroaryloxy, hydroxy, hydroxyalkyl, nitro, arylthio, Y^7Y^8N- , Y^7Y^8NCO- or $Y^7Y^8NSO_2-$ (where Y^7 and Y^8 are independently hydrogen, alkyl, aryl, and arylalkyl). Preferred aryl group substituents within R^3 include acyl, acylamino, alkoxycarbonyl, alkyl, alkylthio, aroyl, cyano, halo, hydroxy, nitro, Y^7Y^8N- , Y^7Y^8NCO- and $Y^7Y^8NSO_2-$ (where Y^7 and Y^8 are independently hydrogen or alkyl). When R^2 contains an optionally substituted aryl group this may particularly represent a phenyl group optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from the "aryl group substituents" listed above. Preferred aryl group substituents within R^2 include halogen, alkoxy, carboxamido, cyano and heteroaryl.

"Arylalkyl" means an aryl-alkyl- group in which the aryl and alkyl moieties are as previously described. Preferred arylalkyl groups contain a C_{1-4} alkyl moiety. Exemplary arylalkyl groups include benzyl, 2-phenethyl and naphthlenemethyl.

"Arylalkylsulphinyl" means an aryl-alkyl-SO- group in which the aryl and alkyl moieties are as previously described.

- 18 -

"Arylalkylsulphonyl" means an aryl-alkyl-SO- group in which the aryl and alkyl moieties are as previously described.

- 5 "Arylalkyloxy" means an arylalkyl-O- group in which the arylalkyl groups is as previously described. Exemplary arylalkyloxy groups include benzyloxy and 1- or 2-naphthalenemethoxy.
- 10 "Arylalkyloxycarbonyl" means an arylalkyl-O-CO- group in which the arylalkyl groups is as previously described. An exemplary arylalkyloxycarbonyl group is benzyloxycarbonyl.
- 15 "Arylalkylthio" means an arylalkyl-S- group in which the arylalkyl group is as previously described. An exemplary arylalkylthio group is benzylthio.

- "Aryloxy" means an aryl-O- group in which the aryl group
20 is as previously described. Exemplary aryloxy groups include optionally substituted phenoxy and naphthoxy.

- "Aryloxycarbonyl" means an aryl-O-CO- group in which the aryl group is as previously described. Exemplary
25 aryloxycarbonyl groups include phenoxycarbonyl and naphthoxycarbonyl.

"Arylsulphinyl" means an aryl-SO- group in which the aryl group is as previously described.

- 19 -

"Arylsulphonyl" means an aryl-SO₂- group in which the aryl group is as previously described.

"Arylthio" means an aryl-S- group in which the aryl group
5 is as previously described. Exemplary arylthio groups include phenylthio and naphthylthio.

"Azaheterocycle" means a heterocycle of about 5 to about
7 ring members in which one of the ring members is
10 nitrogen and the other ring members are chosen from carbon, oxygen, sulphur, nitrogen and NR⁵, but excluding compounds where two O or S atoms are in adjacent positions. Exemplary azaheterocycles include pyridyl, imidazolyl, pyrrolyl, pyrrolinyl, oxazolyl, thiazolyl,
15 pyrazolyl, pyridazyl, pyrimidinyl, morpholinyl, piperidinyl.

"Azaheteroaryl" means an aromatic carbocyclic moiety of 5
or 6 ring members in which one of the ring members is
20 nitrogen and the other ring members are chosen from carbon, oxygen, sulphur, or nitrogen. Exemplary azaheteroaryl rings include isoxazolyl, pyridyl and pyrimidinyl.

25 "Cycloalkenyl" means a non-aromatic monocyclic ring system containing a carbon-carbon double bond and having about 3 to about 10 carbon atoms. Exemplary monocyclic cycloalkenyl rings include cyclopentenyl, cyclohexenyl and cycloheptenyl.

- 20 -

"Cycloalkenyloxy" means a cycloalkenyl-O- group in which the cycloalkenyl moiety is as previously defined.

Exemplary cycloalkyloxy groups include cyclopentenyl, cyclohexenyl and cycloheptenyl.

5

"Cycloalkyl" means a saturated monocyclic or bicyclic ring system of about 3 to about 10 carbon atoms.

Exemplary monocyclic cycloalkyl rings include cyclopropyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl and cycloheptyl.

10

"Cycloalkyloxy" means a cycloalkyl-O- group in which the cycloalkyl moiety is as previously defined. Exemplary cycloalkyloxy groups include cyclopropyloxy, cyclopentyloxy, cyclohexyloxy and cycloheptyloxy.

15

"Heteroaryl" means a heteroaryl-CO- group in which the heteroaryl group is as described herein. Exemplary groups include pyridylcarbonyl.

20 "Heteroaryl" as a group or part of a group denotes an optionally substituted aromatic monocyclic or multicyclic organic moiety of about 5 to about 10 ring members in which one or more of the ring members is/are element(s) other than carbon, for example nitrogen, oxygen or
25 sulphur. Examples of suitable optionally substituted heteroaryl groups include furyl, isoxazolyl, isoquinolinyl, isothiazolyl, oxadiazole, pyrazinyl, pyridazinyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, quinolinyl, 1,3,4-thiadiazolyl, thiazolyl, thienyl, and
30 1,2,4-triazinyl groups, optionally substituted by one or

- 21 -

more aryl group substituents as defined above. When R^2 or R^3 contains an optionally substituted heteroaryl group this may particularly represent an optionally substituted "azaheteroaryl" group. Optional substituents for the

5 heteroaryl group within R^2 or R^3 include, for example, halogen atoms and alkyl, aryl, arylalkyl, hydroxy, oxo, hydroxyalkyl, haloalkyl (for example trifluoromethyl), alkoxy, haloalkoxy (for example trifluoromethoxy), aryloxy and arylalkyloxy groups. Preferred heteroaryl

10 groups within R^2 or R^3 include optionally substituted pyridyl. Preferred heteroaryl groups represented by R^6 within the groups $-C(=Z)NHR^6$ and $-C(=Z)CH_2R^6$ are optionally substituted pyridyl groups, especially wherein the optional substituents are alkyl groups or, more

15 particularly, halogen atoms. Preferred heteroaryl groups represented by R^6 within the group $-C(=Z)R^6$ are optionally substituted pyridyl groups, especially wherein the optional substituent is an aryloxy group.

20 "Heteroarylalkyl" means a heteroaryl-alkyl- group in which the heteroaryl and alkyl moieties are as previously described. Preferred heteroarylalkyl groups contain a C_{1-4} alkyl moiety. Exemplary heteroarylalkyl groups include pyridylmethyl.

25 "Heteroaryloxy" means an heteroaryl-O- group in which the heteroaryl group is as previously described. Exemplary heteroaryloxy groups include optionally substituted pyridyloxy.

- 22 -

"Heteroarylalkoxy" means an heteroarylalkyl-O- group in which the heteroarylalkyl group is as previously described. Exemplary heteroaryloxy groups include
5 optionally substituted pyridylmethoxy.

"Heterocycloalkyl" means a cycloalkyl group which contains one or more heteroatoms selected from O, S or
10 NY¹.

"Hydroxyalkyl" means a HO-alkyl- group in which alkyl is as previously defined. Preferred hydroxyalkyl groups contain C₁₋₄alkyl. Exemplary hydroxyalkyl groups
15 include hydroxymethyl and 2-hydroxyethyl.

"Y⁷Y⁸N-" means a substituted or unsubstituted amino group, wherein Y⁷ and Y⁸ are as previously described. Exemplary groups include amino (H₂N-), methylamino, ethylmethylamino, dimethylamino and diethylamino.
20

"Y⁷Y⁸NCO-" means a substituted or unsubstituted carbamoyl group, wherein Y⁷ and Y⁸ are as previously described. Exemplary groups are carbamoyl (H₂NCO-) and dimethylcarbamoyl (Me₂NCO-).
25

"Y⁷Y⁸NSO₂-" means a substituted or unsubstituted sulphamoyl group, wherein Y⁷ and Y⁸ are as previously

- 23 -

described. Exemplary groups are sulphamoyl (H_2NSO_2-) and dimethylsulphamoyl (Me_2NSO_2-).

"Halo" or "halogen" means fluoro, chloro, bromo, or iodo.

5 Preferred are fluoro or chloro.

"Prodrug" means a compound which is convertible in vivo by metabolic means (e.g. by hydrolysis) to a compound of formula (I), including N-oxides thereof, for example an
10 ester of a compound of formula (I) containing a hydroxy group.

Suitable esters are of many different types, for example acetates, citrates, lactates, tartrates, malonates,
15 oxalates, salicylates, propionates, succinates, fumarates, maleates, methylene-bis- β -hydroxynaphthoates, gentisates, isethionates, di-p-toluoyletartrates, methanesulphonates, ethanesulphonates, benzenesulphonates, p-toluenesulphonates,
20 cyclohexylsulphamates and quinate.

An especially useful class of esters may be formed from acid moieties selected from those described by Bundgaard et. al., J. Med. Chem., 1989, 32, page 2503-2507, and
25 include substituted (aminomethyl)-benzoates, for example dialkylamino-methylbenzoates in which the two alkyl groups may be joined together and/or interrupted by an oxygen atom or by an optionally substituted nitrogen atom, e.g. an alkylated nitrogen atom, more especially

- 24 -

(morpholino-methyl)benzoates, e.g. 3- or
4-(morpholinomethyl)-benzoates, and
(4-alkylpiperazin-1-yl)benzoates, e.g. 3- or
4-(4-alkylpiperazin-1-yl)benzoates.

5

Some of the compounds of the present invention are basic,
and such compounds are useful in the form of the free
base or in the form of a pharmaceutically acceptable acid
addition salt thereof.

10

Acid addition salts are a more convenient form for use;
and in practice, use of the salt form inherently amounts
to use of the free base form. The acids which can be
used to prepare the acid addition salts include

15 preferably those which produce, when combined with the
free base, pharmaceutically acceptable salts, that is,
salts whose anions are non-toxic to the patient in
pharmaceutical doses of the salts, so that the beneficial
inhibitory effects inherent in the free base are not
20 vitiated by side effects ascribable to the anions.

Although pharmaceutically acceptable salts of said basic
compounds are preferred, all acid addition salts are
useful as sources of the free base form even if the
particular salt, per se, is desired only as an

25 intermediate product as, for example, when the salt is
formed only for purposes of purification, and
identification, or when it is used as intermediate in
preparing a pharmaceutically acceptable salt by ion
exchange procedures. Pharmaceutically acceptable salts
30 within the scope of the invention include those derived

- 25 -

from mineral acids and organic acids, and include hydrohalides, e.g. hydrochlorides and hydrobromides, sulphates, phosphates, nitrates, sulphamates, acetates, citrates, lactates, tartrates, malonates, oxalates, salicylates, propionates, succinates, fumarates, maleates, methylene-bis-b-hydroxynaphthoates, gentisates, isethionates, di-p-toluoyltartrates, methane-sulphonates, ethanesulphonates, benzenesulphonates, p-toluenesulphonates, cyclohexylsulphamates and quinate.

10

Where the compound of the invention is substituted with an acidic moiety, base addition salts may be formed and are simply a more convenient form for use; and in practice, use of the salt form inherently amounts to use of the free acid form. The bases which can be used to prepare the base addition salts include preferably those which produce, when combined with the free acid, pharmaceutically acceptable salts, that is, salts whose cations are non-toxic to the patient in pharmaceutical doses of the salts, so that the beneficial inhibitory effects inherent in the free base are not vitiated by side effects ascribable to the cations. Pharmaceutically acceptable salts, including those derived from alkali and alkaline earth metal salts, within the scope of the invention include those derived from the following bases: sodium hydride, sodium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide, calcium hydroxide, aluminum hydroxide, lithium hydroxide, magnesium hydroxide, zinc hydroxide, ammonia, ethylenediamine, N-methyl-glucamine, lysine, arginine, ornithine, choline, N,N'-dibenzylethylenediamine,

30

- 26 -

chloroprocaine, diethanolamine, procaine,
N-benzylphenethylamine, diethylamine, piperazine,
tris(hydroxymethyl)aminomethane, tetramethylammonium
hydroxide, and the like.

5

As well as being useful in themselves as active
compounds, salts of compounds of the invention are useful
for the purposes of purification of the compounds, for
example by exploitation of the solubility differences
10 between the salts and the parent compounds, side products
and/or starting materials by techniques well known to
those skilled in the art.

It will be appreciated that compounds of the present
15 invention may contain asymmetric centres. These
asymmetric centres may independently be in either the R
or S configuration. It will be apparent to those skilled
in the art that certain compounds of the invention may
also exhibit geometrical isomerism. It is to be
20 understood that the present invention includes individual
geometrical isomers and stereoisomers and mixtures
thereof, including racemic mixtures, of compounds of
formula (I) hereinabove. Such isomers can be separated
from their mixtures, by the application or adaptation of
25 known methods, for example chromatographic techniques and
recrystallization techniques, or they are separately
prepared from the appropriate isomers of their
intermediates. Additionally, in situations where
tautomers of the compounds of formula (I) are possible,

- 27 -

the present invention is intended to include all tautomeric forms of the compounds.

With reference to formula (I) above, the following are
5 particular and preferred groupings:

R¹ preferably represents a C₁₋₄alkyl group optionally substituted by one or more halogen (e.g. chlorine or fluorine) atoms. R¹ more preferably represents methyl or
10 difluoromethyl.

R² may particularly represent C₁₋₇alkyl (for example methyl, ethyl, propyl, butyl, pentyl, hexyl, heptyl).

15 R² may also particularly represent C₁₋₄alkoxy (for example methoxy).

R² may also particularly represent C₃₋₇cycloalkyl (for example cyclopropyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl,
20 cycloheptyl).

R² may also particularly represent aryl (for example optionally substituted phenyl or naphthyl).

25 R² may also particularly represent aryloxy (for example optionally substituted phenoxy).

- 28 -

R² may also particularly represent heteroaryl (for example optionally substituted thienyl, pyridyl, furanyl).

- 5 R² may also particularly represent heterocycloalkyl (for example tetrahydrofuranlyl, tetrahydropyranlyl).

- R² may also particularly represent arylalkylsulphonyl (for example 4-methylphenylsulphonyl and
10 4-methoxyphenylsulphonyl) when the group R²A¹- is attached to a ring nitrogen atom.

- It is to be understood that the aforementioned heteroaryl and heterocycloalkyl moieties represented by R² when
15 containing at least one nitrogen atom may be presented as the corresponding N-oxides.

- R³ may particularly represent -OCH₂R⁶, -C(=Z)-N(R⁷)R⁶, preferably wherein R⁷ represents a hydrogen atom, or
20 -C(=Z)-CHR¹²R⁶ especially where R¹² is hydrogen. Within such groups R⁶ may preferably represent substituted phenyl, especially a phenyl group substituted on one or both, more preferably on both, of the positions adjacent to a position of attachment of R⁶ to the rest of the
25 molecule. It is also preferred that the phenyl substituent is alkyl, especially methyl, or halo, especially chloro or fluoro. Within such groups R⁶ may also preferably represent substituted azaheteroaryl,

- 29 -

where the azaheteroaryl group is preferably substituted on one or both, more preferably on both, of the positions adjacent to a position of attachment of R^6 to the rest of the molecule. It is also preferred that the heteroaryl
5 substituent is alkyl, especially methyl, or halo, especially chloro or fluoro.

R^3 may also particularly represent $-C(=Z)-R^6$ wherein R^6 is preferably azaheteroaryl (e.g. pyridyl), particularly
10 when substituted by aryloxy (e.g. 3-chlorophenoxy).

R^3 may also particularly represent $-CR^8=C(R^9)(CH_2)_p-R^6$ where R^8 is preferably CH_3 or more preferably hydrogen, R^9 is preferably hydrogen, CN or CH_3 and p is zero, 1 or
15 2, especially zero and R^6 is as defined above.

R^3 may also particularly represent $-C(R^{10})=C(R^{11})R^{12}$ where R^{10} and R^{11} are each preferably CH_2R^6 or especially R^6 (where R^6 is as defined above), and R^{12} is hydrogen.
20

R^3 may also particularly represent $-C(R^{13})(R^{10})C(R^{11})(R^{14})R^{12}$ where R^{10} and R^{11} are each preferably CH_2R^6 or especially R^6 (where R^6 is as defined above), R^{13} is preferably hydrogen or hydroxy, R^{12} and
25 R^{14} are preferably methyl or more especially hydrogen.

- 30 -

R³ may also particularly represent

-C(R⁸)(R¹⁵)CH(R⁹)(CH₂)_p-R⁶ where R⁸ is preferably CH₃ or more preferably hydrogen, R⁹ is preferably hydrogen, CN or CH₃, more preferably hydrogen, p is zero, 1 or 2, especially zero, R¹⁵ is preferably hydrogen and R⁶ is as defined above.

R³ may also particularly represent -R⁶ where R⁶ is as defined above.

10

R³ may also particularly represent -N(R¹⁶)C(=Z)R⁶ where R¹⁶ is hydrogen and R⁶ is as defined above.

R³ may also particularly represent -C(R¹⁷)=N-OC(=O)R¹⁸ where R¹⁷ is C₁₋₄alkyl and R¹⁸ is amino.

R³ may also particularly represent -C(=O)-N(R¹⁹)OR²⁰ where R¹⁹ is C₁₋₄alkyl or aryl and R²⁰ is C₁₋₄alkyl or arylalkyl.

20

R³ may also particularly represent -C≡C-R⁶, -CH₂-NHR⁶, -CH₂-SOR⁶, -CH₂-SO₂R⁶, -CF₂-OR⁶, -NH-CH₂R⁶, -SO-CH₂R⁶, -SO₂-CH₂R⁶, -O-CF₂R⁶, -N=N-R⁶, -NH-SO₂R⁶, -NH-CO-OR⁶, -O-CO-NHR⁶, -NH-CO-NHR⁶ or -CH₂-CO-CH₂R⁶ where R⁶ is as defined above.

25

- 31 -

R³ may also particularly represent -SO₂-NR²¹R²² where R²¹ and R²² are as defined above.

R³ may also particularly represent -CH₂-C(=Z)-R⁶,
5 -C(=Z)-C(=Z)R⁶, -CH₂-ZR⁶, -Z-CH₂R⁶, CZ-CZ-NHR⁶ or
-O-C(=Z)R⁶ where Z and R⁶ are as defined above.

R³ may also particularly represent -CX¹=CX²R⁶ where X¹, X² and R⁶ are as defined above.

10

R³ may also particularly represent -C(=NOR²⁴)-(CH₂)_qR⁶
where R²⁴, q and R⁶ are as defined above.

R³ may also particularly represent -CH₂-CO-NH(CH₂)_qR⁶ or
15 -CH₂-NH-CO(CH₂)_qR⁶ where q and R⁶ are as defined above.

R³ may also particularly represent -C(=NR²⁵)-NH(CH₂)_qR⁶
where R²⁵, q and R⁶ are as defined above.

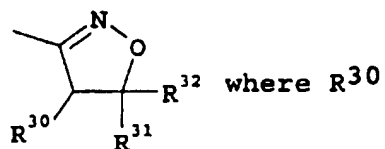
20 R³ may also particularly represent -C(X³)=N-(CH₂)_qR⁶ or
where X³, q and R⁶ are as defined above.

R³ may also particularly represent -CH(X⁴)-CH₂R⁶
where X⁴ and R⁶ are as defined above.

25

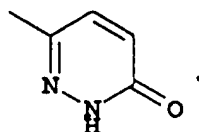
- 32 -

R^3 may also particularly represent



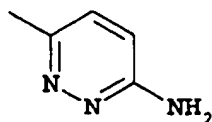
and R^{32} are hydrogen and R^{31} is $-CO_2H$ or $-CONHOH$.

R^3 may also particularly represent

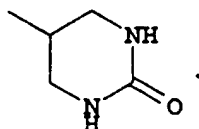


5

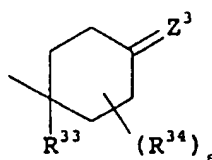
R^3 may also particularly represent



R^3 may also particularly represent



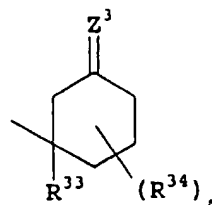
10 R^3 may also particularly represent



where R^{33}

is CN, s is zero and Z^3 is an oxygen atom.

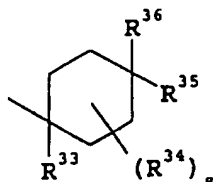
R^3 may also particularly represent



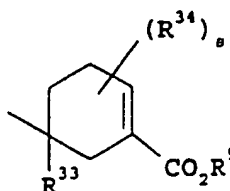
where R^{33}

is CN, s is zero and Z^3 is an oxygen atom.

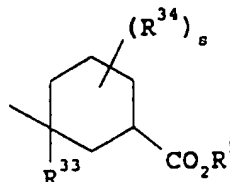
- 33 -

R³ may also particularly represent  where R³³

is CN, s is zero, R³⁵ is hydrogen and R³⁶ is CO₂H.

5 R³ may also particularly represent  where

R³³ is CN, s is zero and R⁵ is hydrogen or C₁₋₄alkyl, especially methyl.

R³ may also particularly represent  where

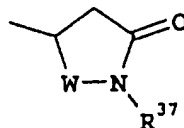
10 R³³ is CN, s is zero and R⁵ is hydrogen or C₁₋₄alkyl, especially methyl.

R³ may also particularly represent  where W is

NR³⁹ [where R³⁹ is C₁₋₄alkyl, especially methyl] and R³⁷
 15 is CONHR⁵ [where R⁵ is heteroarylalkyl, especially pyridylmethyl].

- 34 -

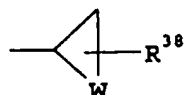
R³ may also particularly represent



where W is

CH₂ and R³⁷ is hydrogen.

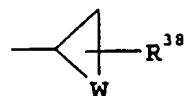
R³ may also particularly represent



where W is

CH₂ and R³⁸ is hydroxymethyl.

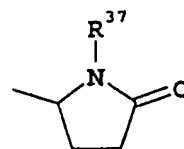
5 R³ may also particularly represent



where W is

CH₂ and R³⁸ is carboxy.

R³ may also particularly represent

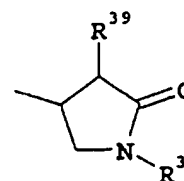


where R³⁷

is hydrogen.

10

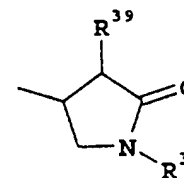
R³ may also particularly represent



where R³⁷

and R³⁹ are alkoxycarbonyl.

R³ may also particularly represent

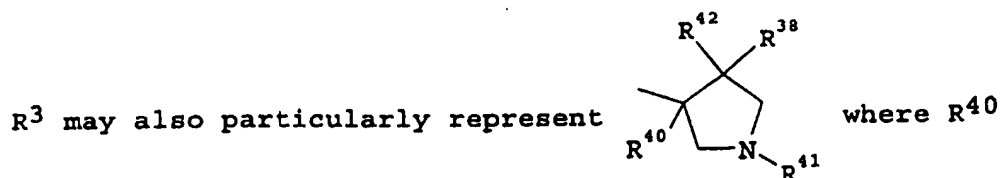


where R³⁷

is hydroxy and R³⁹ is hydrogen.

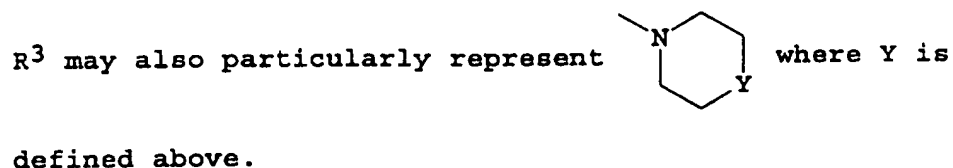
15

- 35 -



is hydrogen, R⁴¹ is C₁₋₄alkoxycarbonyl, especially methyl, R⁴² is C₁₋₄alkyl, especially methyl, and R³⁸ is C₁₋₄acyl, especially acetyl.

5



The moiety A¹ may particularly represent a direct bond or
 10 a straight- or branched-chain alkylene linkage containing from 1 to 6 carbon atoms, optionally substituted by alkoxy.

15 Z¹ may particularly represents an oxygen atom.


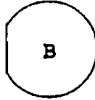
Z¹ may also particularly represents a direct bond.

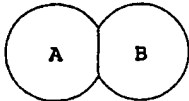
The moiety R³ is preferably -C(=O)-NHR⁶, -C(=O)-CH₂R⁶ or -OCH₂R⁶ wherein R⁶ represents an optionally substituted
 20 azaheteroaryl group, especially a pyridyl or isoxazolyl, substituted (by one or two methyl groups or halogen, e.g. chlorine atoms) on one or both, more preferably both, of the positions adjacent to the position of

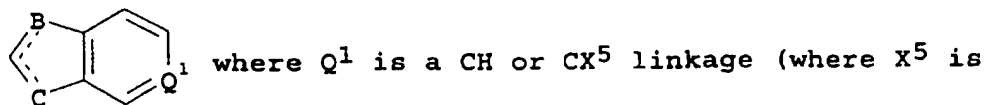
- 36 -

attachment of R^6 to the rest of the molecule. Particular examples of R^6 include a 3,5-dimethyl- or 3,5-dihalopyrid-4-yl moiety (more especially a 3,5-dimethylpyrid-4-yl moiety) or 3,5-dimethyl-isoxazol-
 5 4-yl.

It is to be understood that the aforementioned heteroaryl moieties present within R^3 when containing at least one nitrogen atom may be presented as the corresponding
 10 N-oxides, and such N-oxides are also preferred. Thus, R^3 may preferably contain a 3,5-dialkyl- or 3,5-dihalo-1-oxido-4-pyridinio group, such as a 3,5-dimethyl- or 3,5-dichloro-1-oxido-4-pyridinio group.

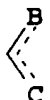
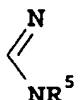
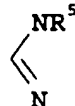
15 In compounds of formula (I) ring  may particularly represent a 5-membered azaheterocycle containing at least one nitrogen atom, and ring  may particularly represent a 6-membered azaheteroaryl or preferably a benzene ring. Such compounds in which n is zero and m is
 20 1 are preferred.

The bicycle  may particularly represent



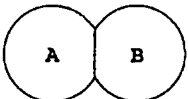
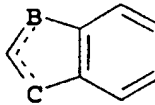
halogen), or a nitrogen atom, or N^+-O^- , especially a CH


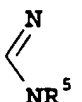
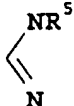
- 37 -

linkage, and the moiety  is  or  especially

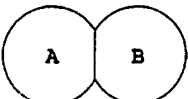
where R^5 represents a hydrogen atom or a methyl group,
more especially where R^5 is hydrogen. Preferred
compounds have R^2A^1 attached to position 2 of the
5 benzimidazole ring.

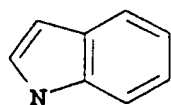
It will be appreciated that compounds of formula (I) in

which the bicycle  represents 

where the moiety  is  or  where R^5

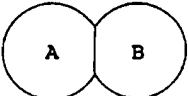
10 represents a hydrogen atom, are tautomers.

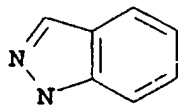
The bicycle  may also particularly represent



especially where R^2A^1 is attached to the ring
nitrogen atom.

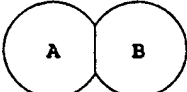
15

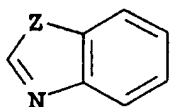
The bicycle  may also particularly represent



especially where R^2A^1 is attached to the ring
nitrogen atom.

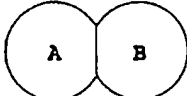
- 38 -

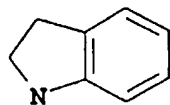
The bicycle  may also particularly represent



(wherein Z is as hereinbefore defined,

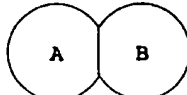
especially an oxygen atom) especially where R^2A^1 is
5 attached to position 2 of the benzoxazole ring.

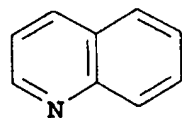
The bicycle  may also particularly represent



especially where R^2A^1 is attached to the ring
nitrogen atom.

10

The bicycle  may also particularly represent

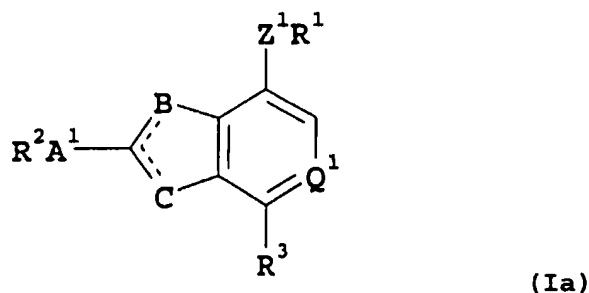



especially where R^2A^1 is attached to position
2 of the quinoline ring.

15 It is to be understood that this invention covers all
appropriate combinations of the particular and preferred
groupings referred to herein.

A further particular group of compounds of the present
20 invention are compounds of formula (Ia):-

- 39 -



wherein R^1 , R^2 , R^3 , A^1 , , Z^1 and Q^1 are as defined

previously, and N-oxides thereof, and their prodrugs, and
 5 pharmaceutically acceptable salts and solvates (e.g.
 hydrates) of the compounds of formula (Ia) and N-oxides
 thereof, and their prodrugs.

Compounds of formula (Ia) in which R^1 represents
 10 C_{1-4} alkyl optionally substituted by one or more halogen
 atoms (especially methyl or difluoromethyl) are
 preferred.

Compounds of formula (Ia) in which R^2 represents a
 15 straight- or branched-chain C_{1-4} alkyl group (e.g.
 isopropyl), or cycloalkyl (e.g. cyclopropyl), alkoxy
 (e.g. methoxy), aryl, aryloxy or heteroaryl (e.g.
 pyridyl) are preferred.

20 Compounds of formula (Ia) in which R^3 represents
 $-C(=O)-NHR^6$, $-C(=O)-CH_2R^6$ or $-O-CH_2R^6$ where R^6 represents

- 40 -

a disubstituted azaheteroaryl group, or an N-oxide thereof, more particularly a dialkyl- or dihalo-azaheteroaryl group or an N-oxide thereof, are preferred. Azaheteroaryl groups substituted on both of
5 the positions adjacent to the position of attachment of R⁶ to the rest of the molecule, for example 3,5-dimethyl-isoxazol-4-yl, or 3,5-dimethyl- or 3,5-dichloro-pyrid-4-yl or an N-oxide thereof, are most preferred.

10


Compounds of formula (Ia) in which A¹ represents a direct bond are a preferred group of compounds.

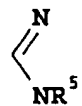
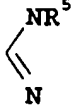
Compounds of formula (Ia) in which A¹ represents a
15 straight or branched chain alkylene linkage containing from 1 to 6 carbon atoms, for example a methylene, ethylene, propylene, methylenemethylene, or butylenemethylene linkage, (especially methylene) are also a preferred group of compounds.

20

Compounds of formula (Ia) in which A¹ represents a straight or branched chain alkylene linkage containing from 1 to 6 carbon atoms which is substituted by alkoxy, for example a methoxymethylene or methoxypropylmethylene,
25 are a further preferred group of compounds.

- 41 -

Compounds of formula (Ia) in which the moiety 



represents  or  where R⁵ represents a hydrogen atom or a methyl group (especially a hydrogen atom) are preferred.

5

Compounds of formula (Ia) in which Q¹ is a CH linkage are preferred.

Compounds of formula (Ia) in which Z¹ is an oxygen atom
10 are preferred.

A preferred group of compounds of the invention are compounds of formula (Ia) in which: R¹ is methyl or difluoromethyl; R² is C₁₋₄alkyl (e.g. isopropyl),
15 C₃₋₆cycloalkyl (e.g. cyclopropyl), C₁₋₄alkoxy (e.g. methoxy), aryl, aryloxy or azaheteroaryl; R³ represents -C(=O)-NHR⁶, -C(=O)-CH₂R⁶ or -O-CH₂R⁶ where R⁶ is a dimethyl- or dihalo-azaheteroaryl (e.g. 3,5-dimethyl-isoxazol-4-yl, or 3,5-dimethyl- or 3,5-dichloro-
20 pyrid-4-yl, or an N-oxide thereof); A¹ is a direct bond

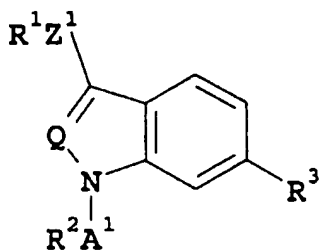
or a methylene linkage;  is ; Q¹ is a CH linkage

and Z¹ is an oxygen atom, and N-oxides thereof, and their prodrugs, and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and

- 42 -

solvates (e.g. hydrates) of the compounds of formula (Ia) and N-oxides thereof, and their prodrugs.

A further particular group of compounds of the present
5 invention are compounds of formula (Ib):-



(Ib)

wherein R¹, R², R³, A¹ and Z¹ are as defined previously,
10 and Q represents a CH linkage or a nitrogen atom, and
N-oxides thereof, and their prodrugs, and
pharmaceutically acceptable salts and solvates (e.g.
hydrates) of the compounds of formula (Ib) and N-oxides
thereof, and their prodrugs.

15

Compounds of formula (Ib) in which R¹ represents methyl
is preferred.

Compounds of formula (Ib) in which R² represents a
20 straight- or branched-chain C₄₋₉alkyl group (e.g.
heptyl), a cycloalkyl group (e.g. cyclopentyl,
cyclohexyl), an aryl (e.g. optionally substituted
phenyl), a heteroaryl (e.g. optionally substituted
thienyl) or heterocycloalkyl (e.g. tetrahydrofuranyl,
25 tetrahydropyranylmethyl) are preferred.

- 43 -

Compounds of formula (Ib) in which R^3 represents
-C(=O)-NHR⁶, -C(=O)-CH₂R⁶ or -O-CH₂R⁶ where R⁶ represents
a disubstituted azaheteroaryl group, or a N-oxide
thereof, more particularly a dialkyl- or
5 dihalo-azaheteroaryl group or an N-oxide thereof, are
preferred. Azaheteroaryl groups substituted on both of
the positions adjacent to the position of attachment of
R⁶ to the rest of the molecule, for example
3,5-dimethyl-isoxazolyl, or 3,5-dimethyl- or 3,5-chloro-
10 pyridyl or an N-oxide thereof, are most preferred.

Compounds of formula (Ib) in which A¹ represents a direct
bond are a preferred group of compounds.

15 Compounds of formula (Ib) in which A¹ represents a
straight or branched chain alkylene linkage containing
from 1 to 6 carbon atoms, for example a methylene,
ethylene, propylene, methylenemethylene, butylenemethylene
linkage, (especially methylene) are also a preferred
20 group of compounds.

Compounds of formula (Ib) in which Q represents a CH
linkage or a nitrogen atom are preferred.

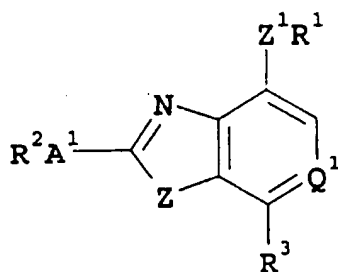
25 Compounds of formula (Ib) in which Z¹ represents a direct
bond are preferred.

A preferred group of compounds of the invention are
compounds of formula (Ib) in which: R¹ is hydrogen or

- 44 -

methyl; R^2 is C_{4-9} alkyl (e.g. heptyl), C_{3-7} cycloalkyl
 (e.g. cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl), aryl, heteroaryl (e.g.
 optionally substituted thienyl), heterocycloalkyl (e.g.
 tetrahydrofuranyl, tetrahydropyranylmethyl); R^3 represents
 5 -C(=O)-NHR⁶, -C(=O)-CH₂R⁶ or -O-CH₂R⁶ where R^6 is a
 dimethyl- or dihalo-azaheteroaryl (e.g. 3,5-dimethyl-
 isoxazol-4-yl, or 3,5-dimethyl- or 3,5-dichloro-
 pyrid-4-yl, or an N-oxide thereof); A^1 is a direct bond
 or a methylene linkage and Z^1 is a direct bond and Q is a
 10 CH linkage or a nitrogen atom, and N-oxides thereof, and
 their prodrugs, and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and
 solvates (e.g. hydrates) of the compounds of formula (Ib)
 and N-oxides thereof, and their prodrugs.

15 A further particular group of compounds of the present
 invention are compounds of formula (Ic):-



(Ic)

wherein R^1 , R^2 , R^3 , A^1 , Q^1 , Z and Z^1 are as defined
 20 previously, and N-oxides thereof, and their prodrugs, and
 pharmaceutically acceptable salts and solvates (e.g.
 hydrates) of the compounds of formula (Ic) and N-oxides
 thereof, and their prodrugs.

- 45 -

Compounds of formula (Ic) in which R^1 represents methyl or difluoromethyl are preferred.

Compounds of formula (Ic) in which R^2 represents a
5 straight- or branched-chain C_{1-4} alkyl group (e.g. isopropyl), a cycloalkyl group (e.g. cyclopropyl), alkoxy (e.g. methoxy), aryl, aryloxy, heteroaryl (e.g. pyridyl) are preferred.

10 Compounds of formula (Ic) in which R^3 represents $-C(=O)-NHR^6$, $-C(=O)-CH_2R^6$ or $-O-CH_2R^6$ where R^6 represents a disubstituted azaheteroaryl group, or a N-oxide thereof, more particularly a dialkyl- or dihalo-azaheteroaryl group or an N-oxide thereof, are
15 preferred. Azaheteroaryl groups substituted on both of the positions adjacent to the position of attachment of R^6 to the rest of the molecule, for example 3,5-dimethyl-isoxazol-4-yl, or 3,5-dimethyl- or 3,5-dichloro-pyrid-4-yl or an N-oxide thereof, are most
20 preferred.

Compounds of formula (Ic) in which A^1 represents a direct bond are a preferred group of compounds.

25 Compounds of formula (Ic) in which A^1 represents a straight or branched chain alkylene linkage containing from 1 to 6 carbon atoms, for example a methylene, ethylene, propylene, methylenemethylene, or butylenemethylene

- 46 -

linkage, (especially methylene) are also a preferred group of compounds.

Compounds of formula (Ic) in which A¹ represents a
5 straight or branched chain alkylene linkage containing
from 1 to 6 carbon atoms which is substituted by alkoxy,
for example a methoxymethylene or methoxypropylmethylene,
are a further preferred group of compounds.

10 Compounds of formula (Ic) in which Q¹ is a CH linkage are
preferred.

Compounds of formula (Ic) in which Z is an oxygen atom
are preferred.

15

Compounds of formula (Ic) in which Z¹ is an oxygen atom
are preferred.

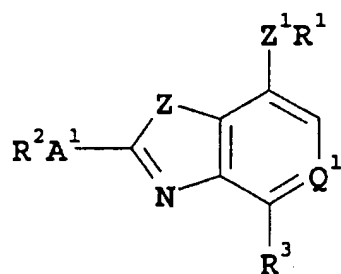
A preferred group of compounds of the invention are
20 compounds of formula (Ic) in which: R¹ is methyl or
difluoromethyl; R² is C₁₋₄alkyl (e.g. isopropyl),
C₃₋₆cycloalkyl (e.g. cyclopropyl), C₁₋₄alkoxy (e.g.
methoxy), aryl, aryloxy or azaheteroaryl; R³ represents
-C(=O)-NHR⁶, -C(=O)-CH₂R⁶ or -O-CH₂R⁶ where R⁶ is a
25 dimethyl- or dihalo-azaheteroaryl (e.g. 3,5-dimethyl-
isoxazol-4-yl, or 3,5-dimethyl- or 3,5-dichloro-
pyrid-4-yl, or an N-oxide thereof); A¹ is a direct bond
or a methylene linkage; Q¹ is a CH linkage; and Z and Z¹

- 47 -

are both oxygen atoms, and N-oxides thereof, and their prodrugs, and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and solvates (e.g. hydrates) of the compounds of formula (Ic) and N-oxides thereof, and their prodrugs.

5

A further particular group of compounds of the present invention are compounds of formula (Id):-



(Id)

10 wherein R¹, R², R³, A¹, Q¹, Z and Z¹ are as defined previously, and N-oxides thereof, and their prodrugs, and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and solvates (e.g. hydrates) of the compounds of formula (Id) and N-oxides thereof, and their prodrugs.

15

Compounds of formula (Id) in which R¹ represents methyl or difluoromethyl are preferred.

Compounds of formula (Id) in which R² represents a
 20 straight- or branched-chain C₁₋₄alkyl group (e.g. isopropyl), a cycloalkyl group (e.g. cyclopropyl), alkoxy (e.g. methoxy), aryl, aryloxy, heteroaryl (e.g. pyridyl) are preferred.

- 48 -

Compounds of formula (Id) in which R^3 represents
-C(=O)-NHR⁶, -C(=O)-CH₂R⁶ or -O-CH₂R⁶ where R⁶ represents
a disubstituted azaheteroaryl group, or a N-oxide
thereof, more particularly a dialkyl- or
5 dihalo-azaheteroaryl group or an N-oxide thereof, are
preferred. Azaheteroaryl groups substituted on both of
the positions adjacent to the position of attachment of
R⁶ to the rest of the molecule, for example
3,5-dimethyl-isoxazol-4-yl, or 3,5-dimethyl- or
10 3,5-dichloro-pyrid-4-yl or an N-oxide thereof, are most
preferred.

Compounds of formula (Id) in which A¹ represents a direct
bond are a preferred group of compounds.
15

Compounds of formula (Id) in which A¹ represents a
straight or branched chain alkylene linkage containing
from 1 to 6 carbon atoms, for example a methylene,
ethylene, propylene, methylenemethylene, or butylenemethylene
20 linkage, (especially methylene) are also a preferred
group of compounds.

Compounds of formula (Id) in which A¹ represents a
straight or branched chain alkylene linkage containing
25 from 1 to 6 carbon atoms which is substituted by alkoxy,
for example a methoxymethylene or methoxypropylenemethylene,
are a further preferred group of compounds.

- 49 -

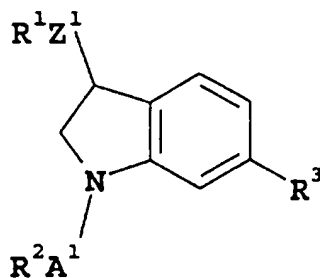
Compounds of formula (Id) in which Q^1 is a CH linkage are preferred.

Compounds of formula (Id) in which Z is an oxygen atom
5 are preferred.

Compounds of formula (Id) in which Z^1 is an oxygen atom are preferred.

- 10 A preferred group of compounds of the invention are compounds of formula (Id) in which: R^1 is methyl or difluoromethyl; R^2 is C_{1-4} alkyl (e.g. isopropyl), C_{3-6} cycloalkyl (e.g. cyclopropyl), C_{1-4} alkoxy (e.g. methoxy), aryl, aryloxy or azaheteroaryl; R^3 represents
15 $-C(=O)-NHR^6$, $-C(=O)-CH_2R^6$ or $-O-CH_2R^6$ where R^6 is a dimethyl- or dihalo-azaheteroaryl (e.g. 3,5-dimethyl-isoxazol-4-yl, or 3,5-dimethyl- or 3,5-dichloro-pyrid-4-yl, or an N-oxide thereof); A^1 is a direct bond or a methylene linkage; Q^1 is a CH linkage; and Z and Z^1
20 are both oxygen atoms, and N-oxides thereof, and their prodrugs, and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and solvates (e.g. hydrates) of the compounds of formula (Id) and N-oxides thereof, and their prodrugs.
- 25 A further particular group of compounds of the present invention are compounds of formula (Ie):-

- 50 -



(Ie)

wherein R¹, R², R³, A¹ and Z¹ are as defined previously,
and N-oxides thereof, and their prodrugs, and

- 5 pharmaceutically acceptable salts and solvates (e.g. hydrates) of the compounds of formula (Ie) and N-oxides thereof, and their prodrugs.

- 10 Compounds of formula (Ie) in which R¹ represents methyl are preferred.

- Compounds of formula (Ie) in which R² represents a straight- or branched-chain C₄₋₉alkyl group (e.g. heptyl), a cycloalkyl group (e.g. cyclopentyl,
15 cyclohexyl), an aryl (e.g. optionally substituted phenyl), a heteroaryl (e.g. optionally substituted thienyl) or heterocycloalkyl (e.g. tetrahydrofuranyl, tetrahydropyranylmethyl) are preferred.

- 20 Compounds of formula (Ie) in which R³ represents -C(=O)-NHR⁶, -C(=O)-CH₂R⁶ or -O-CH₂R⁶ where R⁶ represents a disubstituted azaheteroaryl group, or a N-oxide thereof, more particularly a dialkyl- or dihalo-azaheteroaryl group or an N-oxide thereof, are

- 51 -

preferred. Azaheteroaryl groups substituted on both of the positions adjacent to the position of attachment of R^6 to the rest of the molecule, for example 3,5-dimethyl-isoxazolyl, or 3,5-dimethyl- or 3,5-chloro-
5 pyridyl or an N-oxide thereof, are most preferred.

Compounds of formula (Ie) in which A^1 represents a direct bond are a preferred group of compounds.

10 Compounds of formula (Ie) in which A^1 represents a straight or branched chain alkylene linkage containing from 1 to 6 carbon atoms, for example a methylene, ethylene, propylene, methylenemethylene, butylenemethylene linkage, (especially methylene) are also a preferred
15 group of compounds.

Compounds of formula (Ie) in which Z^1 represents a direct bond are preferred.

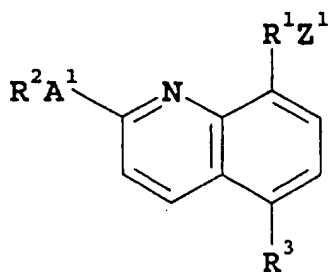
20 A preferred group of compounds of the invention are compounds of formula (Ie) in which: R^1 is hydrogen or methyl; R^2 is C_{4-9} alkyl (e.g. heptyl), C_{3-7} cycloalkyl (e.g. cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl), aryl, heteroaryl (e.g. optionally substituted thienyl) or heterocycloalkyl (e.g.
25 tetrahydrofuranyl, tetrahydropyranylmethyl); R^3 represents $-C(=O)-NHR^6$, $-C(=O)-CH_2R^6$ or $-O-CH_2R^6$ where R^6 is a dimethyl- or dihalo-azaheteroaryl (e.g. 3,5-dimethyl-isoxazol-4-yl, or 3,5-dimethyl- or 3,5-dichloro-

- 52 -

pyrid-4-yl, or an N-oxide thereof); A^1 is a direct bond
 or a methylene linkage and Z^1 is a direct bond, and
 N-oxides thereof, and their prodrugs, and
 pharmaceutically acceptable salts and solvates (e.g.
 5 hydrates) of the compounds of formula (Ie) and N-oxides
 thereof, and their prodrugs.

A further particular group of compounds of the present
 invention are compounds of formula (If):-

10



(If)

wherein R^1 , R^2 , R^3 , A^1 and Z^1 are as defined previously,
 and N-oxides thereof, and their prodrugs, and
 15 pharmaceutically acceptable salts and solvates (e.g.
 hydrates) of the compounds of formula (If) and N-oxides
 thereof, and their prodrugs.

Compounds of formula (If) in which R^1 represents methyl
 20 or difluoromethyl are preferred.

Compounds of formula (If) in which R^2 represents a
 straight- or branched-chain C_{1-4} alkyl group (e.g.

- 53 -

propyl), a cycloalkyl group (e.g. cyclopropyl), aryl, heteroaryl, or heterocycloalkyl are preferred.

Compounds of formula (If) in which R^3 represents
5 -C(=O)-NHR⁶, -C(=O)-CH₂R⁶ or -O-CH₂R⁶ where R⁶ represents
a disubstituted azaheteroaryl group, or a N-oxide
thereof, more particularly a dialkyl- or
dihalo-azaheteroaryl group or an N-oxide thereof, are
preferred. Azaheteroaryl groups substituted on both of
10 the positions adjacent to the position of attachment of
R⁶ to the rest of the molecule, for example
3,5-dimethyl-isoxazolyl, or 3,5-dimethyl- or 3,5-chloro-
pyridyl or an N-oxide thereof, are most preferred.

15 Compounds of formula (If) in which A¹ represents a direct
bond are a preferred group of compounds.

Compounds of formula (If) in which A¹ represents a
straight or branched chain alkylene linkage containing
20 from 1 to 6 carbon atoms, for example a methylene,
ethylene, propylene, methylenemethylene, butylenemethylene
linkage, (especially methylene) are also a preferred
group of compounds.

25 Compounds of formula (If) in which Z¹ represents an
oxygen atom are preferred.

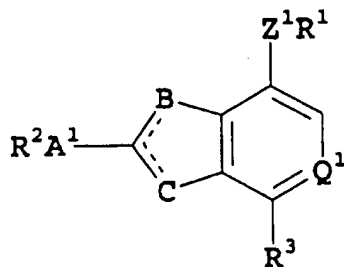
A preferred group of compounds of the invention are
compounds of formula (If) in which: R¹ is hydrogen or

- 54 -

methyl; R^2 is C_{1-4} alkyl (e.g. propyl), C_{3-7} cycloalkyl
 (e.g. cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl), aryl, heteroaryl or
 heterocycloalkyl; R^3 represents $-C(=O)-NHR^6$, $-C(=O)-CH_2R^6$
 or $-O-CH_2R^6$ where R^6 is dimethyl- or dihalo-azaheteroaryl
 5 (e.g. 3,5-dimethyl-isoxazol-4-yl, or 3,5-dimethyl- or
 3,5-dichloro-pyrid-4-yl, or an N-oxide thereof); A^1 is a
 direct bond or a methylene linkage and Z^1 is an oxygen
 atom, and N-oxides thereof, and their prodrugs, and
 pharmaceutically acceptable salts and solvates (e.g.
 10 hydrates) of the compounds of formula (If) and N-oxides
 thereof, and their prodrugs.

A further preferred group of compounds of the invention
 are compounds of formula (Ig):-

15



(Ig)

wherein

R^1 represents hydrogen, or a straight- or
 branched-chain alkyl group of 1 to about 4 carbon atoms,
 20 optionally substituted by one or more halogen atoms;

R^2 represents hydrogen, alkoxy, alkyl,
 alkylsulphinyl, alkylsulphonyl, alkylthio, aryl,
 arylalkyloxy, arylalkylsulphinyl, arylalkylsulphonyl,

- 55 -

arylalkylthio, aryloxy, arylsulphinyl, arylsulphonyl,
 arylthio, cycloalkenyl, cycloalkenyloxy, cycloalkyl,
 cycloalkyloxy, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkyloxy,
 heteroaryloxy, hydroxy, $-\text{SO}_2\text{NR}^4\text{R}^5$, $-\text{NR}^4\text{SO}_2\text{R}^5$, $-\text{NR}^4\text{R}^5$,

- 5 $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{R}^5$, $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{R}^5$, $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^4\text{R}^5$, $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{OR}^5$,
 $-\text{O}(\text{C}=\text{O})\text{NR}^4\text{R}^5$, or $-\text{NR}^4\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{R}^5$ where R^4 and R^5 , which may
 be the same or different, each represent a hydrogen atom,
 or an alkyl, aryl, heteroaryl, arylalkyl or
 heteroarylalkyl group;

10 R^3 represents a group selected from :

- (i) $-\text{C}(=\text{Z})-\text{N}(\text{R}^a)\text{R}^6$
- (ii) $-\text{C}(=\text{Z})-\text{CH}_2\text{R}^6$
- (iii) $-\text{C}(=\text{Z})-\text{R}^6$
- (iv) $-\text{CR}^7=\text{C}(\text{R}^8)(\text{CH}_2)_n-\text{R}^6$
- 15 (v) $-\text{C}(\text{R}^9)=\text{C}(\text{R}^{10})\text{R}^{11}$
- (vi) $-\text{C}(\text{R}^{12})(\text{R}^9)\text{C}(\text{R}^{10})(\text{R}^{13})\text{R}^{11}$
- (vii) $-\text{C}(\text{R}^7)(\text{R}^{14})\text{CH}(\text{R}^8)(\text{CH}_2)_n-\text{R}^6$
- (viii) $-\text{R}^6$
- (ix) $-\text{N}(\text{R}^{15})\text{C}(=\text{Z})\text{R}^6$
- 20 (x) $-\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)=\text{N}-\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{NH}_2$
- (xi) $-\text{C}(=\text{O})-\text{N}(\text{CH}_3)\text{OCH}_3$
- (xii) $-\text{C}\equiv\text{C}-\text{R}^6$
- (xiii) $-\text{CH}_2-\text{C}(=\text{Z})-\text{R}^6$
- (xiv) $-\text{C}(=\text{Z})-\text{C}(=\text{Z})\text{R}^6$
- 25 (xv) $-\text{CH}_2-\text{NHR}^6$
- (xvi) $-\text{CH}_2-\text{ZR}^6$

- 56 -

- (xvii) $-\text{CF}_2-\text{OR}^6$
- (xviii) $-\text{NH}-\text{CH}_2\text{R}^6$
- (xix) $-\text{Z}-\text{CH}_2\text{R}^6$
- (xx) $-\text{SO}-\text{CH}_2\text{R}^6$
- 5 (xxi) $-\text{SO}_2-\text{CH}_2\text{R}^6$
- (xxii) $-\text{O}-\text{CF}_2\text{R}^6$
- (xxiii) $-\text{O}-\text{C}(=\text{Z})\text{R}^6$
- (xxiv) $-\text{N}=\text{N}-\text{R}^6$
- (xxv) $-\text{NH}-\text{SO}_2\text{R}^6$
- 10 (xxvi) $-\text{SO}_2-\text{NHR}^6$
- (xxvii) $-\text{CZ}-\text{CZ}-\text{NHR}^6$
- (xxviii) $-\text{NH}-\text{CO}-\text{OR}^6$
- (xxix) $-\text{O}-\text{CO}-\text{NHR}^6$
- (xxx) $-\text{NH}-\text{CO}-\text{NHR}^6$
- 15 (xxxi) $-\text{R}^{16}$
- (xxxii) $-\text{CX}^2=\text{CX}^3\text{R}^6$

[where R^a is a hydrogen atom or alkyl, hydroxy or amino;

R^6 is aryl or heteroaryl;

20 R^7 and R^8 , which may be the same or different, is each a hydrogen atom or alkyl, $-\text{CO}_2\text{R}^{17}$ (where R^{17} is hydrogen or an alkyl, arylalkyl or aryl group), $-\text{C}(=\text{Z})\text{NR}^{18}\text{R}^{19}$ (where R^{18} and R^{19} may be the same or different and each is as described for R^{17}), $-\text{CN}$ or $-\text{CH}_2\text{CN}$;

25 n is zero or an integer 1, 2 or 3;

- 57 -

R^9 and R^{10} , which may be the same or different, is each a group $-(CH_2)_nR^6$;

R^{11} is a hydrogen atom or alkyl;

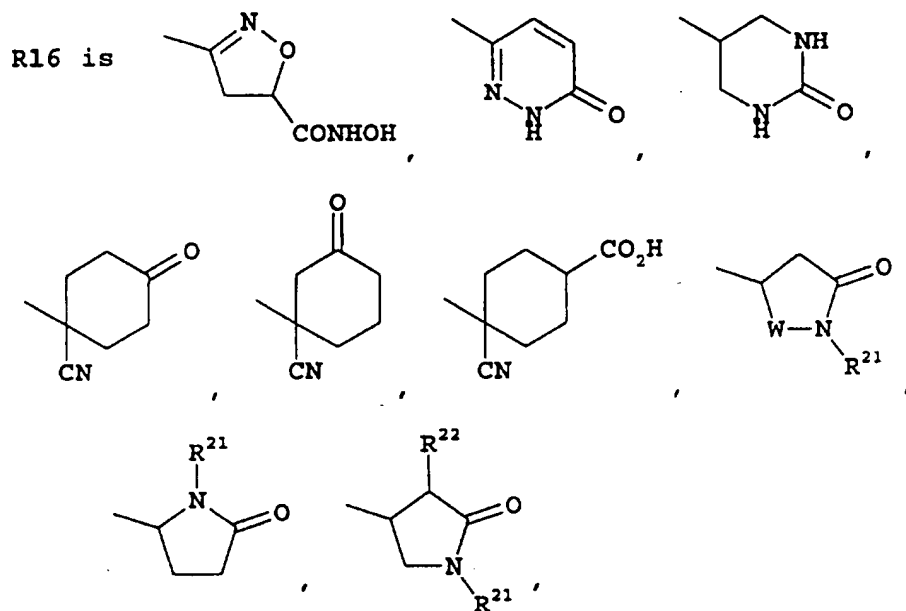
R^{12} is a hydrogen or halogen atom or an $-OR^{20}$ group

5 (where R^{20} is a hydrogen atom or an alkyl, alkenyl, alkoxyalkyl or acyl group, or carboxamido or thiocarboxamido group);

R^{13} represents hydrogen or alkyl;

R^{14} is hydrogen or hydroxyl;

10 R^{15} is hydrogen, alkyl, amino, aryl, arylalkyl, or hydroxy;



15 where W is $(CH_2)_m$ or NR^{22} ;

R^{21} and R^{22} which may be the same or different is each a hydrogen atom, alkyl, acyl, arylalkyl, $-CO_2R^{17}$, heteroarylalkyl, aryl, or heteroaryl;

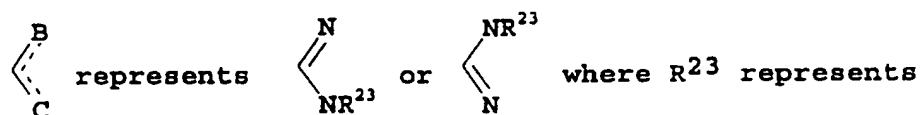
- 58 -

m is 1 to 4;

X^2 and X^3 which may be the same or different is each a hydrogen or fluorine atom;

Z represents an oxygen or sulphur atom];

- 5 A^1 represents a direct bond, or a straight or branched C_{1-6} alkylene chain optionally substituted by hydroxyl, alkoxy, oxo, cycloalkyl, aryl or heteroaryl.



- a hydrogen atom or a C_{1-4} straight- or branched-chain
 10 alkyl, aryl, aryl C_{1-4} alkyl, heteroaryl or heteroaryl C_{1-4} alkyl group;

Z^1 represents a direct bond, or an oxygen or sulphur atom, or NH ;

- Q^1 represents a CH or CX^1 linkage or a nitrogen
 15 atom; and

X^1 represents a halogen atom;

and N-oxides thereof, and their prodrugs, pharmaceutically acceptable salts, and solvates (e.g. hydrates), thereof.

20

Particular compounds of the invention are selected from the following:

N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-2-methoxymethyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;

- 25 N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-2-phenyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;

- N- (3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl) -7-methoxy-2-phenethyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
2-benzyl-N- (3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl) -7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
- 5 (RS) -N- (3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl) -7-methoxy-2-(1-phenylethyl) -3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
(R) -N- (3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl) -7-methoxy-2-(1-phenylethyl) -3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
(S) -N- (3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl) -7-methoxy-2-(1-phenylethyl) -3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
- 10 (1-phenylethyl) -3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
N- (3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl) -7-methoxy-2- (4-methoxybenzyl) -3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
(RS) -2- (cyclohexyl-phenyl-methyl) -N- (3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl) -7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
- 15 (R) -2- (cyclohexyl-phenyl-methyl) -N- (3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl) -7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
(S) -2- (cyclohexyl-phenyl-methyl) -N- (3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl) -7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
(RS) -N- (3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl) -2- (1,2-diphenylethyl) -7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
- 20 (R) -N- (3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl) -2- (1,2-diphenylethyl) -7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
(S) -N- (3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl) -2- (1,2-diphenylethyl) -7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
- 25 (RS) -N- (3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl) -7-methoxy-2-(2-phenylpropyl) -3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
(R) -N- (3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl) -7-methoxy-2-(2-phenylpropyl) -3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
(S) -N- (3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl) -7-methoxy-2-(2-phenylpropyl) -3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
- 30 (2-phenylpropyl) -3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;

- N- (3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl) -7-methoxy-2-
(4-methoxyphenoxy)methyl) -3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
(RS) -N- (3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl) -7-methoxy-2-
(1-phenylbutyl) -3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
5 (R) -N- (3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl) -7-methoxy-2-
(1-phenylbutyl) -3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
(S) -N- (3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl) -7-methoxy-2-
(1-phenylbutyl) -3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
2- (4-bromobenzyl) -N- (3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl) -7-methoxy-
10 3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
(RS) -N- (3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl) -7-methoxy-2- [3-methoxy-1-
phenylpropyl] -3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
(R) -N- (3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl) -7-methoxy-2- [3-methoxy-1-
phenylpropyl] -3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
15 (S) -N- (3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl) -7-methoxy-2- [3-methoxy-1-
phenylpropyl] -3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
2- (4-cyanobenzyl) -N- (3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl) -7-methoxy-
3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
N- (3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl) -7-methoxy-2- [4-
20 (3-pyridyl)benzyl] -3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
N- (3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl) -7-methoxy-2- (2-methoxybenzyl) -
3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
(RS) -N- (3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl) -7-methoxy-2- (methoxy-
phenyl)methyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
25 (R) -N- (3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl) -7-methoxy-2- (4-methoxy-
phenyl)methyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
(S) -N- (3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl) -7-methoxy-2- (4-methoxy-
phenyl)methyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
N- (3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl) -7-methoxy-2-
30 (2-methoxyphenoxy)methyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;

- 61 -

- N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-2-(3-pyridyl)-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
- N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-2-isopropyl-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
- 5 N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-2-methyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
- N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-2-phenoxy-methyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
- 2-cyclopentyl-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
- 10 2-benzyl-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
- 2-cyclopentyl-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-1-methyl-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
- 15 2-cyclopentyl-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-3-methyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
- N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-2,7-dimethoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
- 2-cyclopropyl-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
- 20 2-cyclopropyl-N-(2,6-difluorophenyl)-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
- 2-cyclopropyl-N-(2,6-dibromophenyl)-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
- 25 2-cyclopropyl-N-(2,6-dimethylphenyl)-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
- 2-cyclopropyl-N-(2,4,6-trifluorophenyl)-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
- 2-cyclopropyl-N-(2,6-dichlorophenyl)-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
- 30 benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;

- 2-cyclopropyl-N-(3,5-dimethyl-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-
3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
2-cyclopropyl-N-(3,5-dimethyl-4-isoxazolyl)-7-methoxy-3H-
benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
- 5 N-(3,5-dimethyl-4-isoxazolyl)-7-methoxy-
2-methoxymethyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
2-cyclopropyl-N-(4-carboxy-2,6-dimethylphenyl)-7-methoxy-
3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
N-(4-carboxy-2,6-dimethylphenyl)-
- 10 7-methoxy-2-methoxymethyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
N-(3-chloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-2-propyl-3H-
benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-8-methoxy-2-n-propyl
quinoline-5-carboxamide;
- 15 N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-
carboxamide;
1-butyloxycarbonyl-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-3-methyl-
indole-6-carboxamide;
N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
- 20 1-(6,6-dimethyl-bicyclo[3.1.1]hept-2-ylmethyl)-3-methyl-
N-(4-pyridyl)-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
1-benzyl-N-(4-hydroxyphenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-
carboxamide;
1-(2-cyclohexyl)ethyl-3-methyl-N-(4-pyrimidinyl)-1H-
- 25 indole-6-carboxamide;
1-(6,6-dimethyl-bicyclo[3.1.1]hept-2-ylmethyl)-N-(3,5-
dimethyl-[1,2,4]-triazol-4-yl)-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-
carboxamide;
1-benzyl-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-3-methyl-1H-indoline-
- 30 6-carboxamide;

- 1-(2-cyclopentyl-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazol-4-yl)-2-(4-pyridyl)ethanone;
- 2-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-1-[1-(4-methoxybenzyl)-3-methyl-1H-indol-6-yl]-ethanone;
- 5 2-(3,5-dichloro-pyridin-4-yl)-1-[1-(1-toluene-4-sulphonyl)-3-methyl-1H-indol-6-yl]-ethanone;
- 1-[1-(4-methoxybenzyl)-3-methyl-1H-indol-6-yl]-2-(4-pyridyl)-ethanone;
- 1-(7-methoxy-2-methoxymethyl-3H-benzimidazol-4-yl)-2-(4-pyridyl)ethanone;
- 10 1,3-bis-(4-pyridyl)-2-(7-methoxy-2-methoxymethyl-3H-benzimidazol-4-yl)-propan-2-ol;
- 7-methoxy-2-methoxymethyl-4-[2-(4-pyridyl)ethyl]-3H-benzimidazole;
- 15 2-(4-carboxamidobenzyl)-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
- [2-(3-chlorophenoxy)-pyridin-3-yl]-(7-methoxy-2-methoxymethyl-3H-benzimidazol-4-yl)-methanone;
- 2-cyclopropyl-4-(3,5-dimethyl-4-pyridylmethoxy)-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole;
- 20 4-(3,5-dimethyl-4-pyridylmethoxy)-7-methoxy-2-methoxymethyl-3H-benzimidazole;
- ethyl 5-(2-cyclopropyl-7-methoxy-benzimidazole-4-yl)pyridine-2-carboxylate;
- 25 2-cyclopropyl-7-methoxy-4-(4-morpholinosulphonyl)-3H-benzimidazole;
- 1-benzyl-7-methoxy-2-methoxymethyl-4-(2-(4-pyridyl)ethyl)-1H-benzimidazole;
- 1-cyclohexylmethyl-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
- 30

- 64 -

- 1- (2-cyclohexyl)ethyl-N- (3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl) -3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
- 1- [3- (cyclohexyl)propyl] -N- (3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl) -3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
- 5 N- (3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl) -3-methyl-1-heptyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
- N- (3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl) -3-methyl-1- (tetrahydro-2H-pyran-2-yl)methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
- N- (3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl) -3-methyl-1- (tetrahydrofuran-2-yl)methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
- 10 N- (3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl) -3-methyl-1- (toluene-4-sulphonyl) -1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
- N- (3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl) -3-methyl-1- (tetrahydrofuran-3-yl) -1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
- 15 N- (3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl) -3-methyl-1- (3-methoxy) cyclopentyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
- N- (3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl) -3-methyl-1- (5-chlorothiophen-2-yl)methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
- N- (3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl) -3-methyl-1- (3,5-dimethylisoxazol-4-yl)methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
- 20 N- (3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl) -3-methyl-1- (2-methyl-thiazol-4-yl)methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
- methyl 5- [6- (3,5-dichloro-pyridin-4-ylcarbamoyl) -3-methyl-indol-1-ylmethyl] -furan-2-carboxylate;
- 25 N- (3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl) -3-methyl-1- (5-phenyl- [1,2,4] oxadiazol-3-yl)methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
- N- (3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl) -3-methyl-1- (2-morpholin-4-yl)ethyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
- methyl 5- [6- (3,5-dichloro-pyridin-4-ylcarbamoyl) -3-methyl-indole-1-yl] -pentanoate;
- 30

- 65 -

- N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-1-(4-trifluorobenzyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
- N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-3-methyl-1-(4-methylsulphonylbenzyl)-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
- 5 N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-1-(4-methoxycarbonylbenzyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
- N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-3-methyl-1-(3-nitrobenzyl)-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
- N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-1-(naphthalen-2-yl)methyl-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
- 10 N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-1-(biphenyl-4-yl)methyl-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
- N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-3-methyl-1-(1-benzyl-imidazol-2-yl)methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
- 15 N-(3,5-dichloro-pyridin-4-yl)-3-ethyl-1-(toluene-4-sulphonyl)-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
- N-(3,5-dichloro-pyridin-4-yl)-3-isopropyl-1-(toluene-4-sulphonyl)-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
- N-(3,5-dichloro-pyridin-4-yl)-3-(1-hydroxyethyl)-1-(toluene-4-sulphonyl)-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
- 20 N-(3,5-dichloro-pyridin-4-yl)-3-(1-hydroxyisopropyl)-1-(toluene-4-sulphonyl)-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
- N-(3,5-dichloro-pyridin-4-yl)-3-formyl-1-(toluene-4-sulphonyl)-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
- 25 N-(3,5-dichloro-pyridin-4-yl)-3-formyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
- 1-benzyl-4-[3-methyl-1-(3-phenyl-propyl)-1H-indole-6-yl]-pyrrolidine-2-one;
- 4-[3-methyl-1-(3-phenyl-propyl)-1H-indole-6-yl]-pyrrolidine-2-one;
- 30

- 66 -

- 1- (4-methoxybenzyl) -3-methyl-6- (1-phenyl-2-pyridin-4-yl-ethyl) -1H-indole;
cis- and trans- [1- (4-methoxybenzyl) -3-methyl-6- (1-phenyl-2-pyridin-4-yl-vinyl) -1H-indole;
5 6- (1-hydroxy-1-phenyl-2-pyridin-4-yl) ethyl-1- (4-methoxybenzyl) -3-methyl-1H-indole;
[1- (4-methoxy-benzyl) -3-methyl-1H-indol-6-yl] -phenyl methanone;
N-methoxy-1- (4-methoxybenzyl) -3-methyl-N-methyl-1H-
10 indole-6-carboxamide;
1-benzyl-N- (3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl) -3-methyl-1H-indazole-6-carboxamide;
N- (3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl) -1- (4-methoxybenzyl) -3-methyl-1H-indazole-6-carboxamide;
15 N- (3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl) -4-methoxy-2-methoxymethyl-benzoxazole-7-carboxamide;
N- (3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl) -3-isopropyl-1-methyl-1H-indole-5-carboxamide; and the corresponding pyridine N-oxides, and their prodrugs and pharmaceutically
20 acceptable salts and solvates (e.g. hydrates) thereof.

Preferred compounds of the invention include:

- N- (3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl) -7-methoxy-2-methoxymethyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
25 N- (3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl) -2,7-dimethoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
2-cyclopropyl-N- (3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl) -7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
N- (3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl) -2-isopropyl-7-methoxy-3H-
30 benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;

- 67 -

- 2-cyclopropyl-N-(3,5-dimethyl-4-isoxazolyl)-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
N-(3,5-dimethyl-4-isoxazolyl)-7-methoxy-2-methoxymethyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
- 5 2-cyclopropyl-4-(3,5-dimethyl-4-pyridylmethoxy)-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole;
4-(3,5-dimethyl-4-pyridylmethoxy)-7-methoxy-2-methoxymethyl-3H-benzimidazole; and the corresponding
pyridine N-oxides, and their prodrugs, and
- 10 pharmaceutically acceptable salts and solvates (e.g. hydrates) thereof.

- A more preferred compound of the invention is:
2-cyclopropyl-4-(3,5-dimethyl-4-pyridylmethoxy)-7-
- 15 methoxy-3H-benzimidazole; and its corresponding pyridine N-oxide, and its prodrugs, and pharmaceutically acceptable salts, and solvates (e.g. hydrates) thereof.

- The compounds of the invention exhibit useful
- 20 pharmacological activity and accordingly are incorporated into pharmaceutical compositions and used in the treatment of patients suffering from certain medical disorders. The present invention thus provides, according to a further aspect, compounds of the invention
- 25 and compositions containing compounds of the invention for use in therapy.

- Compounds within the scope of the present invention exhibit marked pharmacological activities according to
- 30 tests described in the literature which tests results are

- 68 -

believed to correlate to pharmacological activity in humans and other mammals. Detailed in vitro and in vivo procedures are described hereinafter.

5 Compounds of the invention are inhibitors of tumor necrosis factor, especially TNF-alpha. Thus, in a further embodiment, the present invention provides compounds of the invention and compositions containing compounds of the invention for use in the treatment of a
10 patient suffering from, or subject to, conditions which can be ameliorated by the administration of an inhibitor of TNF, especially of TNF-alpha. For example, compounds of the present invention are useful in joint inflammation, including arthritis, rheumatoid arthritis
15 and other arthritic conditions such as rheumatoid spondylitis and osteoarthritis. Additionally, the compounds are useful in the treatment of sepsis, septic shock, gram negative sepsis, toxic shock syndrome, adult respiratory distress syndrome, asthma and other chronic
20 pulmonary diseases, bone resorption diseases, reperfusion injury, graft vs. host reaction, allograft rejection and leprosy. Furthermore, the compounds are useful in the treatment of infections such as viral infections and parasitic infections, for example malaria such as
25 cerebral malaria, fever and myalgias due to infection, HIV, AIDS, cachexia such as cachexia secondary to AIDS or to cancer.

Compounds of the invention are also cyclic AMP
30 phosphodiesterase inhibitors, in particular type IV

- 69 -

cyclic AMP phosphodiesterase inhibitors. Thus, in another embodiment of the invention, we provide compounds of the invention and compositions containing compounds of the invention for use in the treatment of a patient suffering from, or subject to, conditions which can be ameliorated by the administration of an inhibitor of cyclic AMP phosphodiesterase, especially type IV cyclic AMP phosphodiesterase. For example, compounds within the present invention are useful as bronchodilators and asthma-prophylactic agents and agents for the inhibition of eosinophil accumulation and of the function of eosinophils, e.g. for the treatment of inflammatory airways disease, especially reversible airway obstruction or asthma, and for the treatment of other diseases and conditions characterised by, or having an etiology involving, morbid eosinophil accumulation. As further examples of conditions which can be ameliorated by the administration of inhibitors of cyclic AMP phosphodiesterase such as compounds of the invention there may be mentioned inflammatory diseases, such as atopic dermatitis, urticaria, allergic rhinitis, psoriasis, rheumatoid arthritis, inflammatory diseases (e.g. ulcerative colitis and Crohn's disease), adult respiratory distress syndrome and diabetes insipidus, other proliferative skin diseases such as keratosis and various types of dermatitis, conditions associated with cerebral metabolic inhibition, such as cerebral senility, multi-infarct dementia, senile dementia (Alzheimer's disease), and memory impairment associated with Parkinson's disease, and conditions ameliorated by

- 70 -

neuroprotectant activity, such as cardiac arrest, stroke, and intermittent claudication.

Another group of conditions which may be treated with the
5 compounds of the present invention includes diseases and disorders of the central nervous system such as brain trauma, ischaemia, Huntington's disease and tardive dyskinesia.

10 Other disease states which may be treated with the compounds of the present invention include pyresis, autoimmune diseases (e.g. systemic lupus erythematosus, allergic erythematosus, multiple sclerosis), type I diabetes mellitus, psoriasis, Beçhet's disease,
15 anaphylactoid purpura nephritis, chronic glomerulonephritis and leukemia.

A special embodiment of the therapeutic methods of the present invention is the treating of asthma.

20 Another special embodiment of the therapeutic methods of the present invention is the treating of joint inflammation.

According to a further feature of the invention there is
25 provided a method for the treatment of a human or animal patient suffering from, or subject to, conditions which can be ameliorated by the administration of an inhibitor of cyclic AMP phosphodiesterase or of TNF, especially TNF-alpha, for example conditions as hereinbefore
30 described, which comprises the administration to the

- 71 -

patient of an effective amount of compound of the invention or a composition containing a compound of the invention. "Effective amount" is meant to describe an amount of compound of the present invention effective in
5 inhibiting cyclic AMP phosphodiesterase and/or TNF and thus producing the desired therapeutic effect.

According to another aspect of the invention, there is provided the use of a compound of the invention in the
10 manufacture of a medicament for the treatment of a patient suffering from, or subject to, conditions which can be ameliorated by the administration of an inhibitor of cyclic AMP phosphodiesterase, especially type IV cyclic AMP phosphodiesterase.

15

According to a further aspect of the invention, there is provided the use of a compound of the invention in the manufacture of a medicament for the treatment of a patient suffering from, or subject to, conditions which
20 can be ameliorated by the administration of an inhibitor of TNF, especially of TNF-alpha.

References herein to treatment should be understood to include prophylactic therapy as well as treatment of
25 established conditions.

The present invention also includes within its scope pharmaceutical compositions comprising at least one of the compounds of the invention in association with a
30 pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or excipient.

- 72 -

Compounds of the invention may be administered by any suitable means. In practice compounds of the present invention may generally be administered parenterally, topically, rectally, orally or by inhalation, especially
5 by the oral route.

Compositions according to the invention may be prepared according to the customary methods, using one or more pharmaceutically acceptable adjuvants or excipients.

10 The adjuvants comprise, inter alia, diluents, sterile aqueous media and the various non-toxic organic solvents. The compositions may be presented in the form of tablets, pills, granules, powders, aqueous solutions or suspensions, injectable solutions, elixirs or syrups, and
15 can contain one or more agents chosen from the group comprising sweeteners, flavourings, colourings, or stabilisers in order to obtain pharmaceutically acceptable preparations. The choice of vehicle and the content of active substance in the vehicle are generally
20 determined in accordance with the solubility and chemical properties of the active compound, the particular mode of administration and the provisions to be observed in pharmaceutical practice. For example, excipients such as lactose, sodium citrate, calcium carbonate, dicalcium
25 phosphate and disintegrating agents such as starch, alginic acids and certain complex silicates combined with lubricants such as magnesium stearate, sodium lauryl sulphate and talc may be used for preparing tablets. To prepare a capsule, it is advantageous to use lactose
30 and high molecular weight polyethylene glycols. When

- 73 -

aqueous suspensions are used they can contain emulsifying agents or agents which facilitate suspension. Diluents such as sucrose, ethanol, polyethylene glycol, propylene glycol, glycerol and chloroform or mixtures thereof may
5 also be used.

For parenteral administration, emulsions, suspensions or solutions of the products according to the invention in vegetable oil, for example sesame oil, groundnut oil or
10 olive oil, or aqueous-organic solutions such as water and propylene glycol, injectable organic esters such as ethyl oleate, as well as sterile aqueous solutions of the pharmaceutically acceptable salts, are used. The solutions of the salts of the products according to the
15 invention are especially useful for administration by intramuscular or subcutaneous injection. The aqueous solutions, also comprising solutions of the salts in pure distilled water, may be used for intravenous administration with the proviso that their pH is suitably
20 adjusted, that they are judiciously buffered and rendered isotonic with a sufficient quantity of glucose or sodium chloride and that they are sterilised by heating, irradiation or microfiltration.

25 For topical administration, gels (water or alcohol based), creams or ointments containing compounds of the invention may be used. Compounds of the invention may also be incorporated in a gel or matrix base for application in a patch, which would allow a controlled
30 release of compound through the transdermal barrier.

- 74 -

For administration by inhalation compounds of the invention may be dissolved or suspended in a suitable carrier for use in a nebuliser or a suspension or
5 solution aerosol, or may be absorbed or adsorbed onto a suitable solid carrier for use in a dry powder inhaler.

Solid compositions for rectal administration include suppositories formulated in accordance with known methods
10 and containing at least one compound of the invention. The percentage of active ingredient in the compositions of the invention may be varied, it being necessary that it should constitute a proportion such that a suitable dosage shall be obtained. Obviously, several unit dosage
15 forms may be administered at about the same time. The dose employed will be determined by the physician, and depends upon the desired therapeutic effect, the route of administration and the duration of the treatment, and the condition of the patient. In the adult, the doses are
20 generally from about 0.001 to about 50, preferably about 0.001 to about 5, mg/kg body weight per day by inhalation, from about 0.01 to about 100, preferably 0.1 to 70, more especially 0.5 to 10, mg/kg body weight per day by oral administration, and from about 0.001 to about
25 10, preferably 0.01 to 1, mg/kg body weight per day by intravenous administration. In each particular case, the doses will be determined in accordance with the factors distinctive to the subject to be treated, such as age, weight, general state of health and other characteristics

- 75 -

which can influence the efficacy of the medicinal product.

The compounds according to the invention may be administered as frequently as necessary in order to obtain the desired therapeutic effect. Some patients may respond rapidly to a higher or lower dose and may find much weaker maintenance doses adequate. For other patients, it may be necessary to have long-term treatments at the rate of 1 to 4 doses per day, in accordance with the physiological requirements of each particular patient. Generally, the active product may be administered orally 1 to 4 times per day. Of course, for some patients, it will be necessary to prescribe not more than one or two doses per day.

The compounds of the present invention may also be formulated for use in conjunction with other therapeutic agents such as agents which increase cyclic AMP production including β -agonists and PGE₂. It is to be understood that the present invention includes combinations of compounds of the present invention with one or more of the aforementioned therapeutic agents.

Compounds of the invention may be prepared by the application or adaptation of known methods, by which is meant methods used heretofore or described in the literature.

- 76 -

In particular, compounds of the invention in which the moiety R^3 is group (iv) may be prepared by methods similar to those described in WO 94/20455.

- 5 Compounds of the invention in which the moiety R^3 is group (v) may be prepared by methods similar to those described in WO 94/14800.

- 10 Compounds of the invention in which the moiety R^3 is group (vi) may be prepared by methods similar to those described in WO 94/14742.

- 15 Compounds of the invention in which the moiety R^3 is group (vii) may be prepared by methods similar to those described in WO 94/20446.

- 20 Compounds of the invention in which the moiety R^3 is group (viii) may be prepared by methods similar to those described in WO 94/10118 and WO 95/22520.

- ✓ 20 Compounds of the invention in which the moiety R^3 is group (ix) may be prepared by methods similar to those described in WO 93/25517.

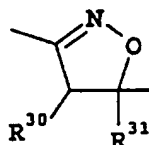
- 25 Compounds of the invention in which the moiety R^3 is group (x) may be prepared by methods similar to those described in EP-A-0470805.

- 77 -

Compounds of the invention in which the moiety R^3 is group (xxviii) may be prepared by methods similar to those described in WO 96/36595, WO 96/36596 and WO 96/36611.

- 5 Compounds of the invention in which the moiety R^3 is

group (xxxiii) wherein R^{23} is

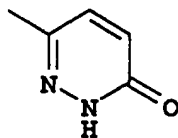


may be

prepared by methods similar to those described in WO 95/14681.

Compounds of the invention in which moiety R^3 is group

- 10 (xxxiii) wherein R^{23} is

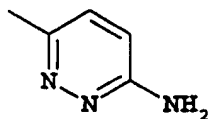


may be prepared by

methods similar to those described in EP-A-0523513.

Compounds of the invention in which moiety R^3 is group

(xxxiii) wherein R^{23} is

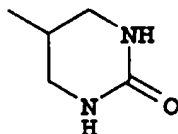


may be prepared by

methods similar to those described in EP-A-0510562.

- 15 Compounds of the invention in which moiety R^3 is group

(xxxiii) wherein R^{23} is

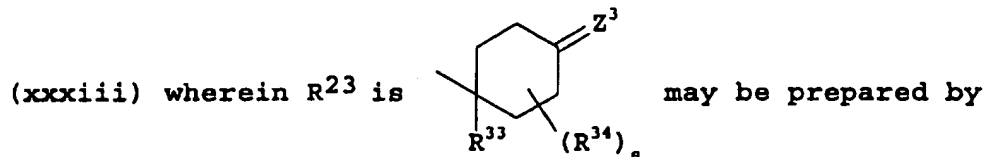


may be prepared by

methods similar to those described in EP-A-0428313.

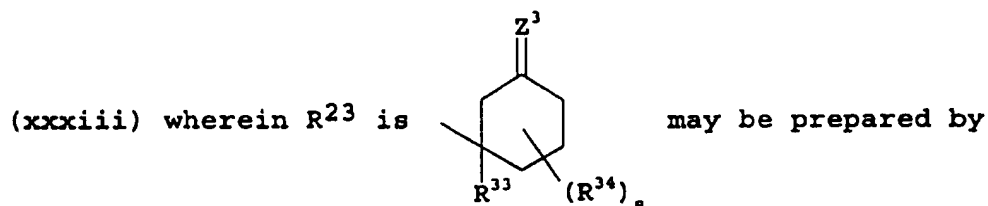
- 78 -

Compounds of the invention in which moiety R^3 is group



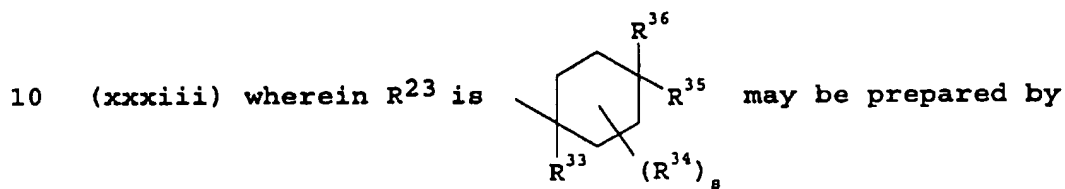
methods similar to those described in US 5449686.

5 Compounds of the invention in which moiety R^3 is group



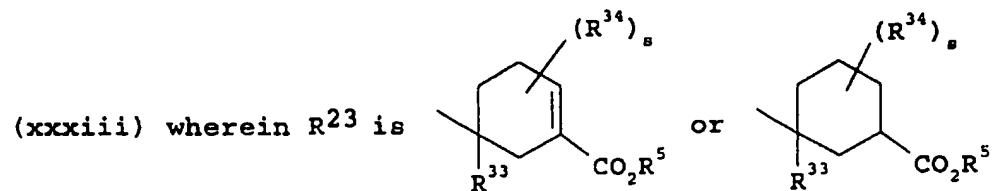
methods similar to those described in WO 95/09624.

Compounds of the invention in which moiety R^3 is group



methods similar to those described in WO 93/19749.

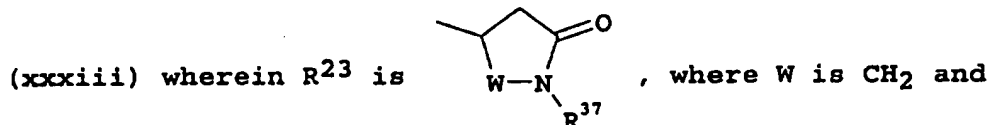
Compounds of the invention in which moiety R^3 is group



15 may be prepared by methods similar to those described in WO 95/03794.

- 79 -

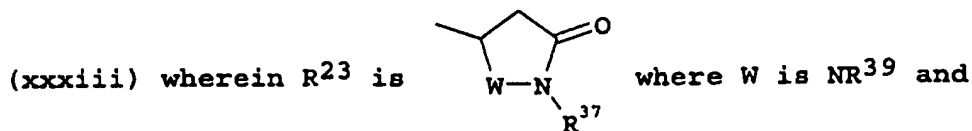
Compounds of the invention in which moiety R^3 is group



R^{37} is hydrogen, may be prepared by methods similar to those described in US 5420154.

5

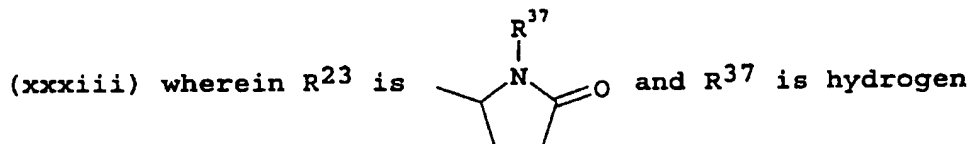
Compounds of the invention in which moiety R^3 is group



R^{37} and R^{39} are as hereinbefore defined, may be prepared by methods similar to those described in EP-A-0511865.

10

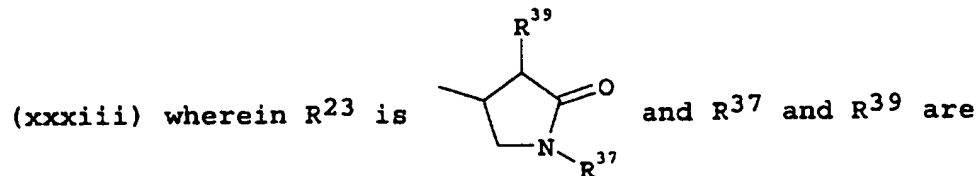
Compounds of the invention in which moiety R^3 is group



or $-CO_2Me$, may be prepared by methods similar to those described by R.D.Miller and P.Goelitz, J.Org.Chem., 1981,

15 46, page 1616-1618.

Compounds of the invention in which moiety R^3 is group



- 80 -

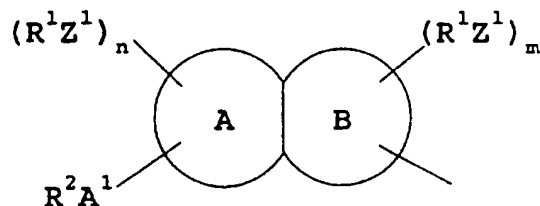
as hereinbefore defined, may be prepared by methods similar to those described in WO 95/08534.

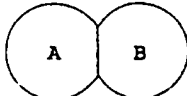
In the reactions described hereinafter it may be
 5 necessary to protect reactive functional groups, for example hydroxy, amino, imino, thio or carboxy groups, where these are desired in the final product, to avoid their unwanted participation in the reactions.
 Conventional protecting groups may be used in accordance
 10 with standard practice, for examples see T.W. Green and P.G.M. Wuts in "Protective Groups in Organic Chemistry" John Wiley and Sons, 1991.

Compounds of this invention may be represented by the
 15 formula (Iz):-



wherein R^3 is as hereinbefore defined and T^1 represents a
 20 group of the formula:-



wherein , R^1 , R^2 , A^1 , Z^1 , n and m are as

25 hereinbefore defined.

- 81 -

In a process (A), compounds of formula (I) wherein R^3 represents a $-C(=O)-NHR^6$ group in which R^6 is as hereinbefore defined may be prepared by the reaction of
5 compounds of the general formula (II):-



wherein T^1 is as hereinbefore defined and X^6 represents
10 an azido, O-benzotriazol-1-yl, or alkoxy group, such as methoxy, or a halogen atom, such as a bromine, or preferably, a chlorine atom, with compounds of the general formula (III):-



wherein R^6 is as hereinbefore described, including N-oxides of heteroaryl groups, and R^{48} represents a hydrogen atom or an alkanoyl, e.g. acetyl group. The
20 reaction may be carried out in the presence of a base such as an alkali metal dialkyldihydroaluminate, e.g. sodium diethyldihydroaluminate or an alkali metal hydride, e.g. sodium hydride, or in the presence of trimethylaluminium, optionally in an inert solvent, or
25 mixture of inert solvents, chosen from for example a halogenated hydrocarbon (such as dichloromethane), toluene, dimethylformamide, or an ether (e.g. diethyl ether or tetrahydrofuran), preferably at a temperature from 0°C to the reflux temperature or at the melting

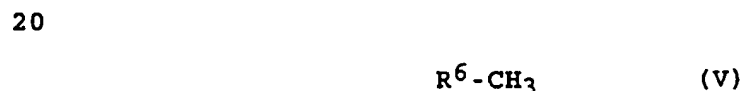
- 82 -

point of the reaction mixture. The use of sodium diethyldihydroaluminate is preferred when R^6 represents a heteroaryl group containing at least one nitrogen atom.

- 5 As another example, in a process (B), compounds of formula (I) wherein R^3 represents a $-C(=O)-CH_2R^6$ group in which R^6 is as hereinbefore defined, together with compounds of formula (I) wherein R^3 represents a $-C(R^{13})(R^{10})C(R^{11})(R^{14})R^{12}$ group in which R^{10} and R^{11}
10 each represents a $-(CH_2)_pR^6$ group (where R^6 is as hereinbefore defined and p is 1), R^{12} and R^{14} represent hydrogen atoms and R^{13} represents a hydroxy group, may be prepared by the reaction of compounds of the general formula (IV):-



wherein T^1 is as hereinbefore defined and R^{49} represents a C_{1-5} alkyl group with compounds of the general formula (V):-

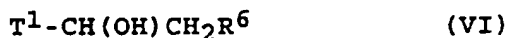


- wherein R^6 is as hereinbefore defined, in the presence of a strong base such as lithium diisopropylamide (usually
25 prepared in situ from butyl lithium and diisopropylamine), in an inert solvent, for example an

- 83 -

ether, e.g. tetrahydrofuran, preferably at a temperature from -65°C to 0°C.

Alternatively compounds of formula (I) wherein R³ represents a -C(=O)-CH₂R⁶ group and R⁶ is as hereinbefore defined, may be prepared by the oxidation of compounds of the general formula (VI):-



10

wherein T¹ and R⁶ are as hereinbefore defined, by the application or adaptation of known methods. The oxidation can be carried out, for example, by reaction with oxalyl chloride and dimethyl sulphoxide, in a solvent such as dichloromethane, and preferably at a temperature lower than -65°C. These conditions are especially convenient for the preparation of compounds wherein Z¹ represents a direct bond or an oxygen atom.

20 As another example, in a process (C), compounds of formula (I) wherein R³ represents a -C(=O)-R⁶ group and R⁶ is as hereinbefore defined may be prepared by reaction of compounds of formula (I), wherein R³ represents a group -C(=O)-N(CH₃)OCH₃, with compounds of the general
25 formula (VII):-



- 84 -

wherein R^6 is as hereinbefore defined, in an inert solvent, for example an ether, e.g. tetrahydrofuran, preferably at a temperature from about 0°C to about reflux temperature.

5

Alternatively, in a process (D), compounds of formula (I) wherein R^3 represents a $-\text{C}(=\text{O})-\text{R}^6$ group and R^6 is as hereinbefore defined may be prepared by reaction of compounds of formula (II), especially where X^6 represents
 10 O-benzotriazolyl, with the anion derived from reaction of compounds of formula $\text{R}^6\text{-Br}$ (where R^6 is as hereinbefore defined) and butyllithium. The reaction is carried out in an inert solvent such as an ether, e.g. tetrahydrofuran, and at a temperature at about -70°C .

15

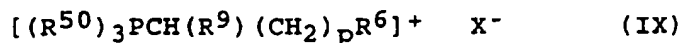
As another example, compounds of formula (I), wherein R^3 represents a $-\text{CR}^8=\text{C}(\text{R}^9)(\text{CH}_2)_p-\text{R}^6$ group and R^6 , R^8 , R^9 and p are as hereinbefore defined, may be prepared by the reaction of compounds of formula (VIII):-

20



wherein T^1 and R^8 are as hereinbefore defined, with the reaction product of a compound of the formula (IX):-

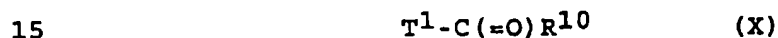
25



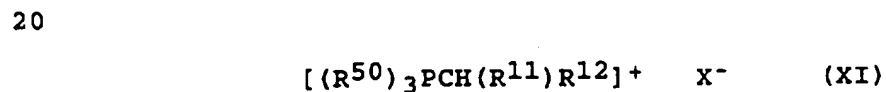
- 85 -

wherein R^9 , R^6 and p are as hereinbefore defined, R^{50} represents an aryl, such as phenyl group, and X represents halo, preferably bromo, with a base such as an alkali metal alkoxide (for example potassium *t*-butoxide),
 5 or an alkali metal hydride (for example sodium hydride), or butyl lithium. The reaction is preferably carried out in a solvent such as dimethylformamide or tetrahydrofuran.

10 Compounds of formula (I) wherein R^3 represents a $-C(R^{10})=C(R^{11})R^{12}$ group and R^{10} , R^{11} and R^{12} are as hereinbefore defined, may be similarly prepared by the reaction of compounds of formula (X):-



wherein T^1 and R^{10} are as hereinbefore defined, with the phosphorane obtained by treating a compound of the formula (XI):-



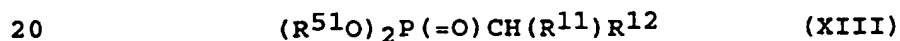
wherein R^{11} and R^{12} and R^{50} are as hereinbefore defined with a base as described above.

25 As another example, compounds of formula (I) wherein R^3 represents a $-CR^8=C(R^9)(CH_2)_p-R^6$ group, where R^6 , R^8 , R^9 and p are as hereinbefore defined, may be prepared by the

reaction of compounds of formula (VIII), wherein T^1 is as hereinbefore defined, with the reaction product of a compound of the formula (XII):-



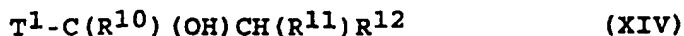
wherein R^6 , R^9 and p are as hereinbefore defined and R^{51} represents a C_{1-4} alkyl group, with a base such as an alkali metal alkoxide (for example potassium t-butoxide),
10 or an alkali metal hydride (for example sodium hydride). The reaction is preferably carried out in a solvent such as dimethylformamide or tetrahydrofuran. Compounds of formula (I) wherein R^3 represents a $-C(R^{10})=C(R^{11})R^{12}$ group and R^{10} , R^{11} and R^{12} are as hereinbefore defined
15 may be prepared in a similar manner to that described above from compounds of formula (X), wherein T^1 and R^{10} are as hereinbefore defined, and compounds of formula (XIII):-



wherein R^{11} , R^{12} and R^{51} are as hereinbefore defined.

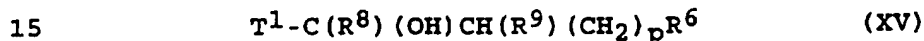
As another example, compounds of formula (I) wherein R^3
25 represents a $-C(R^{10})=C(R^{11})R^{12}$ group where R^{10} , R^{11} and R^{12} are as hereinbefore defined may also conveniently be prepared from compounds of formula (XIV):-

- 87 -



wherein T^1 , R^{10} , R^{11} and R^{12} are as hereinbefore defined, by dehydration using an acid such as a Lewis acid (e.g. thionyl bromide) at an elevated temperature, for example the reflux temperature, optionally in the presence of a suitable base such as 1,8-diazabicyclo-[5.4.0]undec-7-ene.

10 Compounds of formula (I) wherein R^3 represents $-C(R^8)=C(R^9)(CH_2)_pR^6$ where R^6 , R^8 , R^9 and p are as hereinbefore defined may be prepared by dehydration of compounds of formula (XV):-



wherein T^1 , R^6 , R^8 , R^9 and p are as hereinbefore defined, using an acid such as a Lewis acid (e.g. thionyl bromide) at an elevated temperature, for example the reflux temperature, optionally in the presence of a suitable base such as 1,8-diazabicyclo-[5.4.0]undec-7-ene. Alternatively the dehydration may be carried out using an acid catalyst, such as 4-toluenesulphonic acid, in an inert solvent, such as benzene, at a temperature from 20 about 0°C to about reflux temperature.

As another example, compounds of formula (I) wherein R^3 represents a $-C(R^{13})(R^{10})C(R^{11})(R^{14})R^{12}$ group where R^{10} ,

- 88 -

- R¹¹ and R¹² are as hereinbefore defined, and R¹³ and R¹⁴ each represent a hydrogen atom, may be prepared by hydrogenation of compounds of the general formula (I) wherein R³ represents a -C(R¹⁰)=C(R¹¹)R¹² where R¹⁰, R¹¹ and R¹² are as hereinbefore defined. The hydrogenation may be carried out using hydrogen in the presence of a suitable metal catalyst, e.g. platinum or palladium optionally supported on an inert carrier such as carbon, preferably in a solvent such as methanol or ethanol.
- 10 Compounds of formula (I) wherein R³ represents a -C(R⁸)(R¹⁵)CH(R⁹)(CH₂)_p-R⁶ group where R⁸, R⁹ and p are as hereinbefore defined and R¹⁵ represents a hydrogen atom, may be prepared in a similar manner to that described above by hydrogenation of compounds of the
- 15 general formula (I) wherein R³ represents a -C(R⁸)=C(R⁹)(CH₂)_pR⁶ where R⁸, R⁹ and p are as hereinbefore defined.

- Compounds of formula (I), wherein R³ represents a
- 20 -C(R⁸)(R¹⁵)CH(R⁹)(CH₂)_p-R⁶ group where R⁶ is as hereinbefore defined and R⁸, R⁹ and R¹⁵ represent hydrogen atoms and p is zero, may be prepared by reduction of compounds of the general formula (I) wherein R³ represents a -C(=O)-CH₂R⁶, where R⁶ is as hereinbefore
- 25 defined. The reduction may be carried out with hydrazine hydrate, in the presence of an alkali metal hydroxide, such as potassium hydroxide, in an inert

- 89 -

solvent, such as diethylene glycol, at a temperature up to about 100°C.

As another example, compounds of formula (I) wherein R³
5 represents a R⁶ group may be prepared by the reaction of compounds of the general formula (XVI):-



10 wherein T¹ is as hereinbefore defined, with a compound of the general formula (XVII):-



15 wherein R⁶ is as hereinbefore described and X⁷ represents a halogen atom for example a bromine or chlorine atom, or a triflate group, in the presence of a complex metal catalyst such as tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(0).

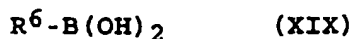
20

Alternatively compounds of formula (I) wherein R³ represents a R⁶ group may be similarly prepared by the reaction of compounds of the general formula (XVIII):-



wherein T¹ and X⁷ are as hereinbefore defined, with a compound of the general formula (XIX):-

- 90 -



wherein R^6 is as hereinbefore defined in the presence of
5 a complex metal catalyst such as
tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(0).

Compounds of formula (I) wherein R^3 represents a R^6 group
may also be prepared by reaction of compounds of formula
10 (XVIII) wherein T^1 is as hereinbefore defined and X^7 is a
bromine atom, with a solution of butyllithium in hexane,
in an inert solvent such as tetrahydrofuran, at a
temperature at about -70°C , followed by reaction with
tributyltin chloride and subsequent reaction of the
15 tributyltin intermediate with compounds of formula (XVII)
wherein R^6 is as hereinbefore defined and X^7 is a bromine
atom, in the presence of bis(dibenzylidene)acetone
palladium(0) and triphenylphosphine in dimethylformamide
at a temperature up to about 120°C .

20

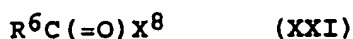
As another example, compounds of formula (I) wherein R^3
represents a $-NHC(=O)R^6$ group where R^6 is as hereinbefore
defined, may be prepared by the reaction of compounds of
the general formula (XX):-

25



- 91 -

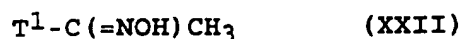
wherein T^1 is as hereinbefore defined with compounds of formula (XXII):-



5

wherein R^6 is as hereinbefore defined and X^8 represents an azido group or a halogen atom, e.g. bromine or, preferably, chlorine atom, are as hereinbefore defined, preferably in the presence of a base such as a tertiary amine, e.g. triethylamine, preferably in a solvent such as dichloromethane.

As another example, compounds of formula (I) wherein R^3 represents a $-C(CH_3)=N-OC(=O)NH_2$ group may be prepared by the reaction of compounds of the general formula (XXII):-



wherein T^1 is as hereinbefore defined, with sodium cyanate in an inert solvent such as dichloromethane in the presence of an acid such as acetic acid or trifluoroacetic acid at a temperature at about ambient temperature.

As another example, compounds of formula (I) wherein R^3 represents a $-C(=O)-N(Me)OCH_3$ group may be prepared by the reaction of compounds of the general formula (II), wherein T^1 is as hereinbefore defined and X^6 is a halogen

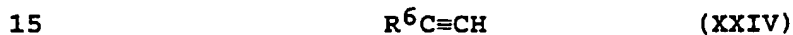
- 92 -

atom, such as a chlorine atom, with
N-methyl-O-methylhydroxylamine in an inert solvent such
as dimethylformamide.

- 5 As another example, compounds of formula (I) wherein R^3
represents a $-C\equiv C-R^6$ group where R^6 is as hereinbefore
defined, may be prepared by the reaction of compounds of
the general formula (XXIII):-

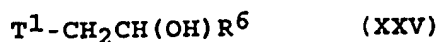


wherein T^1 , is as hereinbefore defined, with acetylenes
of the general formula (XXIV):-



- wherein R^6 is as hereinbefore defined. Preferably the
reaction is carried out with the aid of a catalyst, e.g.
palladium on carbon and cuprous iodide, preferably with
20 the aid of a base such as a tertiary amine, e.g.
triethylamine, preferably in a solvent such as
dimethylformamide.

- As another example, compounds of formula (I) wherein R^3
25 represents a $-CH_2-C(=O)-R^6$ group where R^6 is as
hereinbefore defined may be prepared by oxidation of
compounds of the general formula (XXV):-



wherein T^1 and R^6 are as hereinbefore defined. The oxidation may conveniently be carried out, for example, by reaction with oxalyl chloride and dimethyl sulphoxide, in a solvent such as dichloromethane, and preferably at a temperature lower than -65°C . Alternatively, the oxidation may be carried out by reaction with chromium trioxide in the presence of 3,5-dimethylpyrazole.

10

As another example, compounds of formula (I) wherein R^3 represents a $-C(=O)-C(=O)R^6$ group where R^6 is as hereinbefore defined may be prepared by the oxidation of compounds of formula (I) wherein R^3 represents a $-C(=O)-CH_2R^6$ group where R^6 is as hereinbefore defined.

15

The oxidation may be carried out, for example, by reaction with pyridinium dichromate, preferably in a solvent such as dichloromethane. This reaction is particularly suitable for the preparation of compounds wherein R^6 represents a heteroaryl, for example an optionally substituted pyridyl, group.

20

As another example, compounds of formula (I) wherein R^3 represents $-CH_2-NHR^6$ group where R^6 is as hereinbefore defined may be prepared by the reaction of compounds of the general formula (XXVI):-

25



- 94 -

wherein T^1 is as hereinbefore defined, with compounds of formula (III) wherein R^6 is as hereinbefore defined and R^{48} is hydrogen, followed by reduction with sodium cyanoborohydride. This reaction is especially suitable for the preparation of compounds wherein R^6 represents an optionally substituted phenyl or naphthyl group.

Alternatively, compounds of formula (I) wherein R^3 represents $-CH_2-NHR^6$ group where R^6 is as hereinbefore defined may be prepared by the reaction of compounds of the general formula (XXVII):-



wherein T^1 is as hereinbefore defined and X^9 represents halogen, preferably a bromine atom, with compounds of formula (III) wherein R^6 is as hereinbefore defined and R^{48} is hydrogen. The reaction preferably takes place in the presence of a base such as sodium hydride. The reaction is especially suitable for the preparation of compounds wherein R^6 represents an optionally substituted heteroaryl group.

As another example, compounds of formula (I) wherein R^3 represents $-CH_2-OR^6$ group where R^6 is as hereinbefore defined may be prepared by the reaction of compounds of

- 95 -

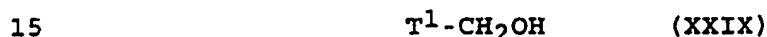
the general formula (XXVII) wherein T^1 and X^9 are as hereinbefore defined with compounds of formula (XXVIII):-



5

wherein R^6 is as hereinbefore defined, preferably with the aid of a base such as an alkali metal alkoxide, e.g. potassium t-butoxide.

10 Alternatively compounds of formula (I) wherein R^3 represents a $-CH_2-OR^6$ group where R^6 is as hereinbefore defined may be prepared by the reaction of compounds of the general formula (XXIX):-



wherein T^1 is as hereinbefore defined, with compounds of formula (XVII) wherein R^6 and X^7 are as hereinbefore defined, preferably with the aid of a base such as an alkali metal alkoxide, e.g. potassium t-butoxide. The
20 reaction is preferably carried out in a solvent such as tetrahydrofuran.

Alternatively compounds of formula (I) wherein R^3 represents a $-CH_2-OR^6$ group where R^6 is as hereinbefore
25 defined may be prepared by reaction of compounds of the general formula (XXIX) with compounds of formula (XXVIII) wherein R^6 is as hereinbefore defined, in the presence of a dialkyl azodicarboxylate, such as diethyl

- 96 -

azodicarboxylate, and triphenylphosphine, preferably in a dry ethereal solvent, e.g. diethyl ether or tetrahydrofuran, preferably at or near room temperature.

- 5 As another example, compounds of formula (I) wherein R^3 represents a $-CH_2-SR^6$ group where R^6 is as hereinbefore defined may be prepared by the reaction of compounds of the general formula (XXVII), wherein T^1 and X^9 are as hereinbefore defined with compounds of the general
10 formula (XXX):-



- wherein R^6 is as hereinbefore defined, preferably with
15 the aid of a base such as an alkali metal carbonate, e.g. potassium carbonate.

- As another example, compounds of formula (I) wherein R^3 represents a $-CF_2-OR^6$ group where R^6 is as hereinbefore
20 defined may be prepared by the reaction of compounds of the general formula (XXXI):-



- 25 with compounds of the general formula (XXVIII) wherein R^6 is as hereinbefore defined, preferably with the aid of a base such as sodium hydride, preferably in a solvent such as dimethylformamide.

- 97 -

As another example, compounds of formula (I) wherein R^3 represents a $-NH-CH_2R^6$ group where R^6 is as hereinbefore defined may be prepared by the reaction of compounds of the general formula (XX) wherein T^1 is as hereinbefore defined, with compounds of the general formula (XXXII):-



10 wherein R^6 is as hereinbefore defined, in the presence of a reducing agent such as sodium cyanoborohydride.

As another example, compounds of formula (I) wherein R^3 represents a $-O-CH_2R^6$ group where R^6 is as hereinbefore defined may be prepared by the reaction of compounds of the general formula (XXXIII):-



20 wherein T^1 is as hereinbefore defined, with compounds of the general formula (XXXIV):-



25 wherein R^6 is as hereinbefore defined and X^{10} represents hydroxy or a halogen atom. When X^{10} represents hydroxy the reaction is conveniently carried out in the presence of a dialkyl azodicarboxylate, such as diethyl

- 98 -

azodicarboxylate, and triphenylphosphine, preferably in a dry ethereal solvent, e.g. diethyl ether or tetrahydrofuran, preferably at or near room temperature. When X^{10} represents a halogen atom, especially a chlorine atom, the reaction is preferably carried out in the presence of a base such as an alkali metal carbonate, e.g. potassium carbonate, preferably in a solvent such as dimethylformamide, and at a temperature from about room temperature to about 80°C.

10

As another example, compounds of formula (I) wherein R^3 represents a $-S-CH_2R^6$ group where R^6 is as hereinbefore defined may be prepared by the reaction of compounds of the general formula (XXXV):-

15



wherein T^1 is as hereinbefore defined, with compounds of formula (XXXIV) wherein R^6 is as hereinbefore defined and X^{10} is a halogen atom, preferably a bromine atom. The reaction is preferably carried out in the presence of a base such as an alkali metal alkoxide, e.g. sodium methoxide.

25 As another example, compounds of formula (I) wherein R^3 represents a $-O-CF_2R^6$ group where R^6 is as hereinbefore defined may be prepared by the reaction of compounds of the general formula (XXXIII) wherein T^1 is as

- 99 -

hereinbefore defined with compounds of the general formula (XXXVI):-



5

wherein R^6 is as hereinbefore defined, preferably with the aid of a base such as sodium hydride, preferably in a solvent such as dimethylformamide.

- 10 As another example, compounds of formula (I) wherein R^3 represents a $-O-C(=O)R^6$ group where R^6 is as hereinbefore defined may be prepared by the reaction of compounds of the general formula (XXXIII), wherein T^1 is as hereinbefore defined, with compounds of the general
- 15 formula (XXI) wherein R^6 is as hereinbefore defined, and X^8 represents a halogen atom, for example a bromine or, preferably, a chlorine atom, preferably in the presence of a base such as a tertiary amine, e.g. triethylamine, preferably in a solvent such as dichloromethane.

20

As another example, compounds of formula (I) wherein R^3 represents a trans $-N=N-R^6$ group where R^6 is as hereinbefore defined may be prepared by the reaction of compounds of the general formula (XXXVII):-

25



wherein T^1 is as hereinbefore defined, with compounds of the general formula (XXXVIII):-

- 100 -



wherein R^6 is as hereinbefore defined, preferably with
5 the aid of a base such as lithium diisopropylamide.

As another example, compounds of formula (I) wherein R^3
represents a $-NH-SO_2R^6$ group where R^6 is as hereinbefore
defined may be prepared by the reaction of compounds of
10 the general formula (XX), wherein T^1 is as hereinbefore
defined, with compounds of the general formula (XXXIX):-



15 wherein R^6 is as hereinbefore defined and X^{11} represents
a halogen, preferably chlorine, atom, preferably with the
aid of a base such as a tertiary amine, e.g.
triethylamine, preferably in a solvent such as
tetrahydrofuran.

20

As another example, compounds of formula (I) wherein R^3
represents a $-SO_2-NR^{21}R^{22}$ group where R^{21} and R^{22} are as
hereinbefore defined may be prepared by the reaction of
compounds of the general formula (XXXX):-

25



- 101 -

wherein T^1 is as hereinbefore defined with compounds of the general formula (XXXXI):-



5

wherein R^{21} and R^{22} are as hereinbefore defined, preferably with the aid of a base such as a tertiary amine, e.g. triethylamine, preferably in a solvent such as tetrahydrofuran.

10

As another example, compounds of formula (I) wherein R^3 represents a $-C(=O)-C(=O)-NHR^6$ group where R^6 is as hereinbefore defined may be prepared by the reaction of compounds of the general formula (XXXXII):-

15



wherein T^1 is as hereinbefore defined, with thionyl chloride in an inert solvent such as dichloromethane, followed by reaction with compounds of formula (III) wherein R^6 is as hereinbefore defined and R^{48} is hydrogen.

20

As another example, compounds of formula (I) wherein R^3 represents a $-NH-CO-OR^6$ group where R^6 is as hereinbefore defined may be prepared by the reaction of compounds of the general formula (XXXXIII):-

25

- 102 -



wherein T^1 is as hereinbefore defined, with compounds of formula (XXVIII) wherein R^6 is as hereinbefore defined, preferably with the aid of a base such as a tertiary amine, e.g. triethylamine, preferably in a solvent such as dichloromethane.

As another example, compounds of formula (I) wherein R^3 represents a $-O-CO-NHR^6$ group where R^6 is as hereinbefore defined may be prepared by the reaction of compounds of the general formula (XXXIII) wherein T^1 is as hereinbefore defined, with compounds of formula (III) wherein R^6 is as hereinbefore defined and R^{48} is hydrogen, together with phosgene or a source thereof, preferably, bis(trichloromethyl)carbonate, preferably with the aid of a base such as a tertiary amine, e.g. triethylamine, preferably in a solvent such as dichloromethane.

20

As another example, compounds of formula (I) wherein R^3 represents a $-NH-CO-NHR^6$ group where R^6 is as hereinbefore defined may be prepared by the reaction of compounds of the general formula (XX), wherein T^1 is as hereinbefore defined with compounds of the general formula (XXXXIV):-





- 103 -

wherein R^6 is as hereinbefore defined, preferably in the presence of a base such as a tertiary amine, e.g. triethylamine, preferably in a solvent such as
 5 dichloromethane.

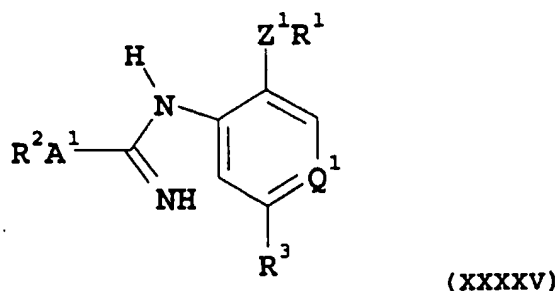
According to a further feature of the present invention, compounds of formula (I) wherein R^3 represents a $-NH-CO-NHR^6$ group where R^6 is as hereinbefore defined may
 10 be prepared by the reaction of compounds of formula (XX) wherein T^1 is as hereinbefore defined with compounds of formula (III) wherein R^6 is as hereinbefore defined and R^{48} is hydrogen, together with phosgene or a source thereof. The reaction is preferably carried out by
 15 reacting the compound of formula (XX) with phosgene or, preferably, bis(trichloromethyl) carbonate, and by then reacting the product of that reaction with the anion derived from the compound of formula (III), for example by reaction with a base such as sodium hydride. The
 20 reactions may be preferably carried out in suitable solvents such as dichloromethane and tetrahydrofuran.

According to a further feature of the present invention,

compounds of formula (Ia) wherein  represents ,

25 A^1 , R^1 , R^2 , R^3 , Q^1 and Z^1 are as hereinbefore defined, (with the proviso that when A^1 is a direct bond then R^2

is alkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl, or heteroaryl), may be prepared by reaction of compounds of formula (XXXXV):-





5

wherein A^1 , R^1 , R^2 , R^3 , Q^1 and Z^1 are as hereinbefore defined, (with the proviso that when A^1 is a direct bond then R^2 is alkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl, or heteroaryl), with sodium hypochlorite in the presence of an aqueous acid
 10 such as dilute hydrochloric acid, in an alcohol, such as methanol, and at a temperature at about ambient temperature, followed by treatment with an alkali metal carbonate, such as sodium carbonate, at a temperature of about reflux temperature.

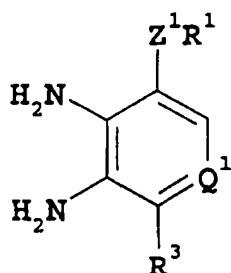
15

According to a further feature of the present invention,

compounds of formula (Ia), wherein  represents ,

A^1 , R^1 , R^2 , R^3 , Q^1 and Z^1 are as hereinbefore defined, (with the proviso that when A^1 is a direct bond then R^2
 20 is alkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl, or heteroaryl), may be prepared by reaction of compounds of formula (XXXXVI):-

- 105 -



(XXXXVI)

wherein R^1 , R^3 , Q^1 and Z^1 are as hereinbefore described,
with compounds of formula (XXXXVII):-

5



wherein R^2 and A^1 are as hereinbefore defined, (with the proviso that when A^1 is a direct bond then R^2 is alkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl, or heteroaryl), and X^{12} represents a hydroxy group or a halogen atom, preferably a chlorine atom. When X^{12} represents a hydroxy group the reaction is preferably carried out in the hydrochloric acid at a temperature at about 125°C. When X^{12} represents a halogen atom the reaction is preferably carried out in an inert solvent, such as dichloromethane, optionally in the presence of triethylamine and at a temperature from about 0°C to about ambient temperature, followed by reaction of the product with acetic acid at a temperature at about reflux.

According to a further feature of the present invention, compounds of formula (Ia), wherein R^1 , R^3 , Q^1 and Z^1 are

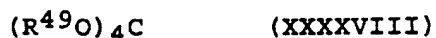
- 106 -

as hereinbefore defined, R^2 represents a C_{1-5} alkoxy group optionally substituted by one or more fluorine atoms, A^1

represents a direct bond and $\begin{array}{c} \diagup B \\ \diagdown C \end{array}$ represents $\begin{array}{c} \diagup N \\ \diagdown NH \end{array}$, may be

prepared by reaction of compounds of formula (XXXXVI)

- 5 wherein R^1 , R^3 , Q^1 and Z^1 are as hereinbefore described, with compounds of formula (XXXXVIII):-



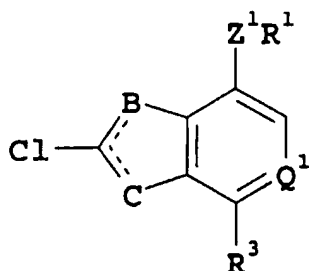
- 10 wherein R^{49} is a C_{1-5} alkyl group optionally substituted by one or more fluorine atoms. The reaction may conveniently be carried out in acetic acid at a temperature up to about reflux temperature.

- 15 As another example, compounds of formula (Ia) wherein


$\begin{array}{c} \diagup B \\ \diagdown C \end{array}$, R^1 , R^3 , Q^1 and Z^1 are as hereinbefore described, R^2

is alkylthio, arylthio or arylalkylthio and A^1 represents a direct bond, may be prepared by reaction of compounds of formula (XXXXIX):-

- 107 -




(XXXXIX)

wherein , R¹, R³, Q¹ and Z¹ are as hereinbefore

described, with the appropriate alkyl- or aryl- or
 5 arylalkylthiol. The reaction may conveniently be
 carried out in an inert solvent such as methanol or
 dimethylformamide, at a temperature from about room
 temperature to about 80°C, optionally in the presence of
 an alkali metal carbonate, such as potassium carbonate.

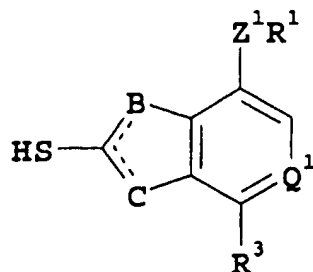
10

Alternatively compounds of formula (Ia) wherein , R¹,


R³, Q¹ and Z¹ are as hereinbefore described, R²
 represents alkylthio or arylalkylthio and A¹ represents a
 direct bond, may be prepared by reaction of compounds of

15 formula (L):-

- 108 -



(L)

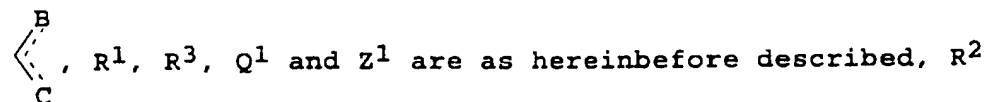
wherein R^1 , R^3 , , Q^1 and Z^1 are as hereinbefore

described, with the appropriate alkyl- or

5 arylalkylhalide. The reaction may conveniently be carried out in an inert solvent such as methanol or dimethylformamide, at a temperature from about room temperature to about 80°C, optionally in the presence of an alkali metal carbonate, such as potassium carbonate.


10

As another example, compounds of formula (Ia) wherein



represents NR^4R^5 where R^4 and R^5 are as hereinbefore described and A^1 represents a direct bond, may be

15 prepared by reaction of compounds of formula (XXXXIX)

wherein , R^1 , R^3 , Q^1 and Z^1 are as hereinbefore

described, with compounds of formula (LI):-



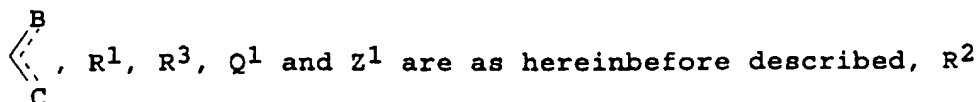
(LI)

20

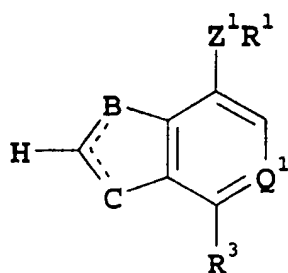
- 109 -

wherein R^4 and R^5 are as hereinbefore described. The reaction may conveniently be carried out in an inert solvent for example an alcohol such as isopropanol, at a temperature from about room temperature to about 80°C ,
 5 optionally in the presence of an alkali metal carbonate, such as potassium carbonate.

As another example, compounds of formula (Ia) wherein




10 represents $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{R}^5$, in which R^5 is aryl or heteroaryl, and A^1 represents a direct bond, may be prepared by reaction of compounds of formula (LII):-



(LII)

15

wherein R^1 , R^3 , , Q^1 and Z^1 are as hereinbefore

described, with compounds of formula (LIII):-



20

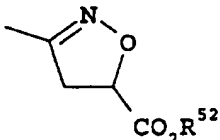
- 110 -

wherein R^5 is aryl or heteroaryl and X^{13} is a chlorine atom. The reaction may conveniently be carried out in an inert solvent for example dimethylformamide, at a temperature up to about 150°C , under vacuo, optionally in
 5 the presence of triethylamine.

As another example, compounds of formula (I) wherein R^3

represents a  group may be prepared by

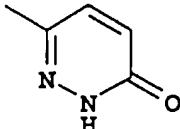
reaction of compounds of formula (I) wherein R^3

10 represents a  in which R^{52} is a methyl or

ethyl group, with hydroxylamine hydrochloride in the presence of sodium methoxide, in a solvent such as an alcohol, for example methanol, and at a temperature at about room temperature.

15

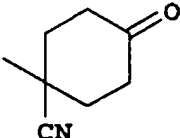
As another example, compounds of formula (I) wherein T^1 is as hereinbefore described and the moiety R^3 represents

a  group may be prepared by reaction of

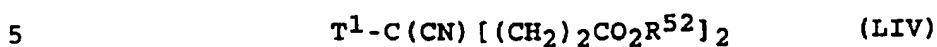
compounds of formula (VIII) wherein R^8 is methyl, with
 20 glyoxylic acid monohydrate at about 100°C to 150°C , followed by treatment with hydrazine hydrate at reflux.

- 111 -

As another example, compounds of formula (I) wherein R^3

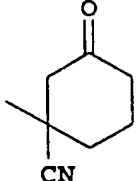
represents a  group may be prepared by

reaction of compounds of formula (LIV):-

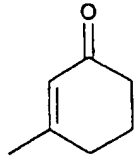


wherein T^1 is as hereinbefore described and R^{52} is a methyl or an ethyl group, with an alkali metal hydride, for example sodium hydride, in an inert solvent, such as
 10 1,2-dimethoxyethane, at a temperature at about reflux temperature, followed by heating the product with a mixture of concentrated hydrochloric acid and 20% sulphuric acid in ethanol at reflux temperature.

15 As another example, compounds of formula (I) wherein R^3

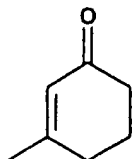
represents a  group may be prepared by reaction

of compounds of formula (I), wherein T^1 is as hereinbefore described and the moiety R^3 represents a

 group, with diethyl aluminium cyanide in an
 20 inert solvent, such as toluene, and at a temperature at about room temperature.

- 112 -

Compounds of formula (I), wherein R^3 represents a

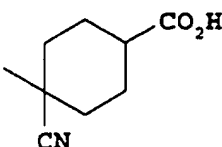


group may be prepared by reaction of compounds

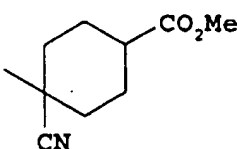
of formula (XVIII), wherein T^1 is as hereinbefore

5 described and X^7 is a bromine atom, with an alkyl
lithium, such as n-butyl lithium at -78°C , in an inert
solvent, such as tetrahydrofuran, followed by reaction
with 3-methoxycyclohex-2-enone (prepared according to the
method of A.J.Pearson et al., J.Org.Chem., 1984, 49,
10 pages 3887-3891) at a temperature at about 0°C .

As another example, compounds of formula (I) wherein R^3

represents a  group may be prepared by

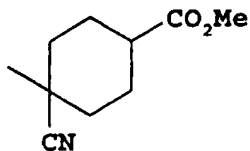
hydrolysis of compounds of formula (I) wherein R^3

15 represents a  group, with an alkali metal

hydroxide such as potassium hydroxide in an aqueous
alcohol such as aqueous methanol and at a temperature
from about room temperature to about reflux.

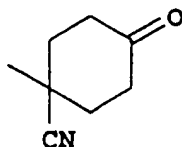
- 113 -

Compounds of formula (I), wherein R³ represents a



group, may be prepared by reaction of

compounds of formula (I), wherein R³ represents a



group, with triflic anhydride in the presence

5 of an appropriate tertiary amine base, or with lithium diisopropylamide at -78°C, in an inert solvent such as tetrahydrofuran, followed by treatment with N-phenyl trifluorosulphonimide. The resulting enol triflate may then be reacted with carbon monoxide in an alcohol such
10 as methanol, optionally mixed with dimethylformamide, in the presence of an amine, such as triethylamine, and an appropriate palladium catalyst, such as tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium, at a temperature at about room temperature.

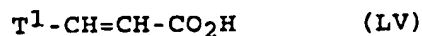
15

As another example, compounds of formula (I) wherein R³

represents a  group, in which R³⁹ is hydrogen,

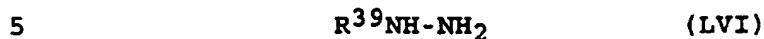
alkyl, aryl, arylalkyl, heteroaryl, or heteroarylalkyl, may be prepared by reaction of compounds of formula

20 (LV) :-



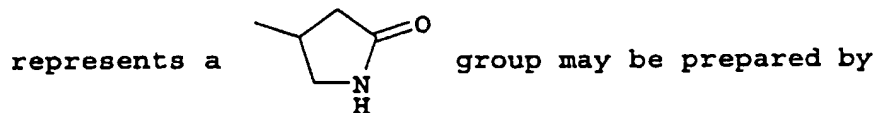
- 114 -

wherein T^1 is as hereinbefore described, with a hydrazine of formula (LVI):-



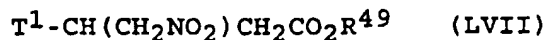
wherein R^{39} is hydrogen, alkyl, aryl, arylalkyl, heteroaryl, or heteroarylalkyl. The reaction is preferably carried out in an inert solvent, such as
10 toluene, at a temperature at about $100^\circ C$.

As another example, compounds of formula (I) wherein R^3



reduction of compounds of the general formula (LVII):-

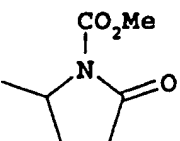
15



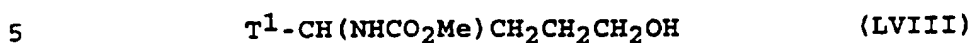
wherein T^1 and R^{49} are as hereinbefore described, followed by hydrolysis with sodium hydroxide. The
20 reduction may be carried out using hydrogen in the presence of Raney Nickel preferably in a solvent such as methanol or ethanol and at a temperature at about room temperature.

- 115 -

As another example, compounds of formula (I) wherein R^3


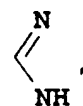
represents a group , may be prepared by

oxidation of compounds of formula (LVIII):-



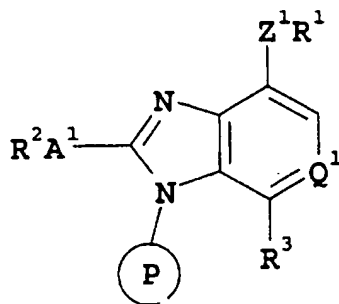
wherein T^1 is as hereinbefore described, with Jones reagent in acetone at room temperature.

10 According to a further feature of the present invention, in a process (E), compounds of the present invention of formula (Ia) wherein R^1 , R^2 , R^3 , A^1 , Q^1 and Z^1 are as


hereinbefore defined, and  represents , may be

prepared by deprotection of compounds of formula (LIX):-

15



(LIX)

wherein R^1 , R^2 , R^3 , A^1 , Q^1 and Z^1 are as hereinbefore defined and  is a suitable protecting group, for



- 116 -

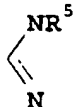
example a 2-trimethylsilanyl-ethoxymethyl group. When

(P) is a 2-trimethylsilanyl-ethoxymethyl group the deprotection reaction may conveniently be carried out by treatment with hydrochloric acid, in an alcohol, such as
 5 ethanol, and at a temperature at about reflux temperature. This process is particularly convenient for compounds of formula (Ia) wherein R^3 is a group $-O-CH_2-R^6$ in which R^6 is as hereinbefore defined.



10 According to a further feature of the present invention, in a process (F) compounds of the invention may be prepared by interconversion of other compounds of the invention.

15 For example compounds of the invention containing an imino group may be alkylated with an alkyl halide, arylalkyl halide or heteroarylalkyl halide. Thus

compounds of formula (Ia) wherein  represents 

or , and R^5 represents C_{1-4} straight- or

20 branched-chain alkyl, an aryl C_{1-4} alkyl or a heteroaryl C_{1-4} alkyl group may be prepared by reaction of

compounds of formula (Ia) wherein  represents ,

with a C_{1-4} straight- or branched-chain alkyl halide, an

- 117 -

arylC₁₋₄alkyl halide or a heteroarylC₁₋₄alkyl halide.

The alkylation may for example be carried out in the presence of a base, such as an alkali metal hydride, e.g.

sodium hydride, in dimethylformamide, or dimethyl

5 sulphoxide, at a temperature from about 0°C to about 100°C.

As another example of the interconversion process,

compounds of the invention containing an imino group may

10 be acylated with an acyl halide, aroyl halide or

heteroaroyl halide. The acylation may for example be

carried out in the presence of a suitable base, such as triethylamine or pyridine, optionally in

dimethylformamide, at a temperature from about 0°C to

15 about 100°C.

As another example of the interconversion process,

compounds of the invention containing a heterocyclic

group wherein the hetero atom is a nitrogen atom may be

20 oxidised to their corresponding N-oxides. This

interconversion is especially convenient for the

preparation of compounds of the invention wherein Z¹

represents an oxygen atom and wherein neither R² or R³

contain an oxidisable groups such as a thioether. The

25 oxidation may conveniently be carried out by means of

reaction with a mixture of hydrogen peroxide and an

organic acid, e.g. acetic acid, preferably at or above

room temperature, for example at a temperature of about

60-90°C. Alternatively, the oxidation may be carried out

- 118 -

by reaction with a peracid, for example peracetic acid or m-chloroperoxybenzoic acid, in an inert solvent such as chloroform or dichloromethane, at a temperature from about room temperature to reflux, preferably at elevated
5 temperature. The oxidation may alternatively be carried out by reaction with hydrogen peroxide in the presence of sodium tungstate at temperatures between room temperature and about 60°C.

10 As another example of the interconversion process, an N-oxide group within a compound of formula (I) may be reduced to a nitrogen atom. More particularly, one or more of the N-oxide groups in a compound of formula (I) wherein Q¹ represents a nitrogen atom in its oxidised
15 form and R² and/or R³ represents a heteroaryl group containing one or more nitrogen ring atoms in its oxidised form, may be reduced to a nitrogen atom. The reduction of an N-oxide group may be carried out by reaction with diphosphorus tetraiodide in an inert
20 solvent, such as dichloromethane, preferably at or near room temperature, or by reaction with a chlorotrialkylsilane, preferably chlorotrimethylsilane, in the presence of zinc and an alkali metal iodide, e.g. potassium iodide, in an inert solvent, e.g. acetonitrile,
25 at a temperature between about 0°C and about room temperature, preferably below room temperature.

According to a further example of the interconversion process, compounds of the invention containing hydroxy

- 119 -

moieties may be converted to esters by the application or adaptation of known methods of esterification, for example, by reaction with an acid chloride (prepared by treatment of the appropriate acid with thionyl chloride or oxalyl chloride), preferably in the presence of a base, for example a tertiary amine, e.g. triethylamine. Alternatively, compounds of the invention containing hydroxy moieties may be reacted with the appropriate acid in the presence of a dialkyl azodicarboxylate, such as diethyl azodicarboxylate, and triphenylphosphine, preferably in a dry ethereal solvent, e.g. diethyl ether or tetrahydrofuran, preferably at or near room temperature.

As another example of the interconversion process, compounds of the invention containing hydroxy moieties may be prepared by hydrolysis of corresponding esters of the invention. The hydrolysis may conveniently be carried out by alkaline hydrolysis using a base, such as an alkali metal hydroxide or carbonate, in the presence of an aqueous/organic solvent mixture, using organic solvents such as dioxan, tetrahydrofuran or methanol, at a temperature from about ambient to about reflux. The hydrolysis of the esters may also be carried out by acid hydrolysis using an inorganic acid, such as hydrochloric acid, in the presence of an aqueous/inert organic solvent mixture, using organic solvents such as dioxan or tetrahydrofuran, at a temperature from about 50°C to about 80°C.

- 120 -

As another example of the interconversion process, compounds of formula (I) wherein R^3 represents a group containing R^6 which is substituted by a formyl group may be prepared by oxidising the corresponding compounds of formula (I) wherein R^3 represents a group containing R^6 which is substituted by a hydroxymethyl group for example with oxalyl chloride and dimethyl sulphoxide, in a solvent such as dichloromethane, and preferably at a temperature lower than about -65°C , or, preferably, by reaction with a complex of sulphur trioxide with an amine such as pyridine, preferably in the presence of an amine such as triethylamine, preferably at about room temperature.

As another example of the interconversion process, compounds of formula (I) wherein R^3 represents a group containing R^6 which is substituted by an amino group may be prepared by reducing the corresponding compounds of formula (I) wherein R^3 represents a group containing R^6 which is substituted by a nitro group, preferably with iron in acidic conditions, such as in acetic acid, preferably at or above room temperature, more especially at the reflux temperature. Alternatively the reduction may be carried out by reaction with hydrazine hydrate in the presence of ferric chloride and activated carbon, conveniently in a solvent such as methanol, at temperatures from about 25°C to about 80°C .

- 121 -

As another example of the interconversion process, compounds of formula (I) wherein R^3 represents a group containing R^6 which is substituted by an acylamino or aroylamino group may be prepared from compounds of

5 formula (I) wherein R^3 represents a group containing R^6 which is substituted by an amino group, preferably by means of reaction with the appropriate acid halide or acid anhydride in the presence of a tertiary base, such as triethylamine, optionally in an inert solvent, and

10 preferably at a temperature from about 0°C to reflux.

As another example of the interconversion process, compounds of formula (I) wherein R^3 represents a group containing R^6 which is substituted by a carboxamido group

15 may be prepared from compounds of formula (I) wherein R^3 represents a group containing R^6 which is substituted by a cyano group, by means of reaction with hydrogen peroxide and potassium carbonate in dimethyl sulphoxide.

20 As another example of the interconversion process, compounds of formula (I) wherein R^3 represents a group containing R^6 which is substituted by a cyano group may be prepared from compounds of formula (I) wherein R^3 represents a group containing R^6 which is substituted by

25 a bromine atom, by means of reaction with zinc cyanide in the presence of tetrakis(triphenylphosphine) palladium(0) in an inert solvent, such as dimethylformamide, at a temperature at about 100°C .

- 122 -

As another example of the interconversion process, compounds of formula (I) wherein R^1 is substituted by fluorine on a carbon atom thereof alpha to the attachment of R^1 to Z^1 as sulphur, may be prepared by reacting xenon difluoride with corresponding compound of formula (I) wherein said alpha-carbon atoms carry hydrogen atoms instead of said fluorine atoms. The reaction is conveniently carried out in a solvent, such as dichloromethane, in the presence of a molecular sieve, and in an inert atmosphere, at a low temperature, such as at about 0°C.

As another example of the interconversion process, compounds of formula (I) wherein R^1 is a difluoromethyl group and Z^1 is an oxygen or sulphur atom, may be prepared by reacting a compound of formula (I) wherein R^1 is a hydrogen atom and Z^1 is an oxygen or sulphur atom, with $H\text{CBrF}_2$ in the presence of a strong base in an inert solvent.

As another example, compounds of formula (I) wherein R^3 represents a group containing R^6 which is a heteroaryl group containing one or more nitrogen ring atoms but carrying no halogen substituents may be prepared by the reduction of the corresponding compounds of formula (I) wherein R^3 represents a group containing R^6 which does carry one or more halo, such as chloro, substituents, for

- 123 -

example by means of ammonium formate in the presence of a palladium catalyst.

As another example, compounds of formula (I) wherein the moiety R^3 contains a cis alkenyl group may be prepared by the action of ultraviolet radiation upon the trans-isomer.

As another example of the interconversion process, compounds of formula (I) wherein R^3 contains a cis -N=N- linkage may be prepared by the action of ultraviolet radiation upon their trans-isomers.

As another example of the interconversion process, compounds of formula (I) containing sulphoxide linkages may be prepared by the oxidation of corresponding compounds containing -S- linkages. For example, the oxidation may conveniently be carried out by means of reaction with a peroxyacid, e.g. 3-chloroperbenzoic acid, preferably in an inert solvent, e.g. dichloromethane, preferably at or near room temperature, or alternatively by means of potassium hydrogen peroxomonosulphate in a medium such as aqueous methanol, buffered to about pH5, at temperatures between about 0°C and room temperature. This latter method is preferred for compounds containing an acid-labile group.

As another example of the interconversion process, compounds of formula (I) containing sulphone linkages may

- 124 -

be prepared by the oxidation of corresponding compounds containing -S- or sulfoxide linkages. For example, the oxidation may conveniently be carried out by means of reaction with a peroxyacid, e.g. 3-chloroperbenzoic acid, preferably in an inert solvent, e.g. dichloromethane, preferably at or near room temperature.

As another example of the interconversion process, compounds of formula (I) wherein R^3 represents a group containing a -CSCH₂- linkage may be prepared from compounds of formula (I) wherein R^3 represents a group containing a -COCH₂- linkage by reaction with phosphorus pentasulphide or 2,4-bis(4-methoxyphenyl)-1,3-dithia-2,4-diphosphetane-2,4-disulphide, preferably in a solvent such as pyridine or toluene, and preferably at a temperature from 0°C to the reflux temperature.

As another example of the interconversion process, compounds of formula (I) containing a hydroxymethyl group may be prepared by the reduction of the corresponding compounds of formula (I) containing an aryloxy carbonyl or, particularly, alkoxycarbonyl group, preferably by means of reaction with an alkali metal borohydride, preferably in an inert solvent, e.g. tetrahydrofuran, and preferably at or near room temperature.

As another example of the interconversion process, compounds of formula (Ib) in which R^2 is hydrogen and A^1 is a direct bond may be prepared by heating compounds of

- 125 -

formula (Ib) in which the group R^2 is a butyloxycarbonyl group and A^1 is a direct bond.

According to a further feature of the invention, acid
5 addition salts of the compounds of this invention may be prepared by reaction of the free base with the appropriate acid, by the application or adaptation of known methods. For example, the acid addition salts of the compounds of this invention may be prepared either by
10 dissolving the free base in water or aqueous alcohol solution or other suitable solvents containing the appropriate acid and isolating the salt by evaporating the solution, or by reacting the free base and acid in an organic solvent, in which case the salt separates
15 directly or can be obtained by concentration of the solution.

The acid addition salts of the compounds of this invention can be regenerated from the salts by the
20 application or adaptation of known methods. For example, parent compounds of the invention can be regenerated from their acid addition salts by treatment with an alkali, e.g. aqueous sodium bicarbonate solution or aqueous ammonia solution.

25

According to a further feature of the invention, base
addition salts of the compounds of this invention may be prepared by reaction of the free acid with the appropriate base, by the application or adaptation of
30 known methods. For example, the base addition salts of

- 126 -

the compounds of this invention may be prepared either by dissolving the free acid in water or aqueous alcohol solution or other suitable solvents containing the appropriate base and isolating the salt by evaporating
5 the solution, or by reacting the free acid and base in an organic solvent, in which case the salt separates directly or can be obtained by concentration of the solution.

10 Compounds of this invention can be regenerated from their base addition salts by the application or adaptation of known methods. For example, parent compounds of the invention can be regenerated from their base addition salts by treatment with an acid, e.g. hydrochloric acid.

15

Compounds of the present invention may be conveniently prepared, or formed during the process of the invention, as solvates (e.g. hydrates). Hydrates of compounds of the present invention may be conveniently prepared by
20 recrystallisation from water.

The starting materials and intermediates may be prepared by the application or adaptation of known methods, for example methods as described in the Reference Examples or
25 their obvious chemical equivalents.

Intermediates of formula (II, $T^1-C(=O)X^6$) wherein T^1 is as hereinbefore defined and X^6 represents an O-benzotriazol-1-yl group may be prepared by reaction of
30 compounds of formula (1):-

- 127 -



wherein T^1 is as hereinbefore defined, with

- 5 O-benzotriazol-1-yl-N,N,N',N',-bis(tetramethylene)uronium tetrafluoroborate in an inert solvent, for example dichloromethane, at a temperature at about ambient temperature.
- 10 Intermediates of formula (II, $T^1-C(=O)X^6$) wherein T^1 is as hereinbefore defined and X^6 represents an azido group may be prepared from compounds of formula (1) wherein T^1 is as hereinbefore defined by the application or adaptation of known methods for the preparation of acid
- 15 azides from carboxylic acids. For example, the reaction may be carried out by means of diphenylphosphoryl azide in the presence of triethylamine in dimethylformamide.

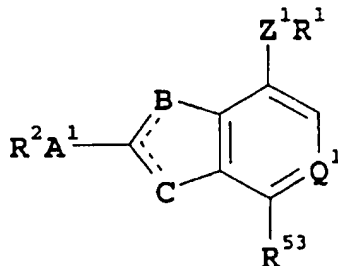
- Intermediates of formula (II, $T^1-C(=O)X^6$) wherein T^1 is
- 20 as hereinbefore defined and X^6 represents a halogen atom may be prepared from compounds of the general formula (1) wherein T^1 is as hereinbefore defined, by the application or adaptation of known methods for the preparation of acid halides from carboxylic acids. For example, when X^6
- 25 represents a chlorine atom, the reaction may be carried out by means of thionyl chloride or, preferably, oxalyl chloride, optionally in the presence of a small amount of dimethylformamide.

- 128 -

Compounds of formula (1, $T^1\text{-CO}_2\text{H}$), wherein T^1 is as hereinbefore defined may be prepared by hydrolysis of compounds of formula (IV, $T^1\text{-CO}_2\text{R}^{49}$) wherein T^1 and R^{49} are as hereinbefore defined. The hydrolysis may for example be carried out by reaction with a base, such as an alkali metal hydroxide, e.g. sodium or lithium hydroxide, or an alkali metal carbonate, e.g. potassium carbonate, in the presence of water, in an alcohol such as methanol and at a temperature from about ambient to about reflux, followed by reaction with an aqueous acid such as dilute hydrochloric acid.



Intermediates of the general formula (III, $R^6\text{NHR}^{48}$) wherein R^6 is as hereinbefore described, including N-oxides of heteroaryl groups, and R^{48} represents an alkanoyl group, e.g. acetyl group may be prepared for example, by the application or adaptation of known methods for the acylation or aromatic amines.

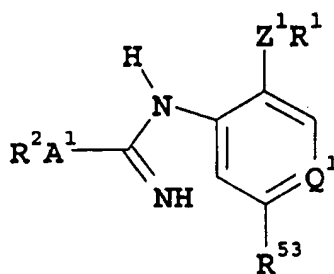
Intermediates of formula (IV) represented by the formula (2):-



(2)

- 129 -

wherein  represents , R⁵³ represents CO₂R⁴⁹ (in which R⁴⁹ is as hereinbefore defined), and R¹, A¹, Q¹ and Z¹ are as hereinbefore defined (with the proviso that when A¹ is a direct bond then R² is alkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl, or heteroaryl), may be prepared by reaction of compounds of formula (3):-



(3)

10

wherein R¹, R², A¹, Q¹ and Z¹ are as hereinbefore described (with the proviso that when A¹ is a direct bond then R² is alkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl, or heteroaryl), and R⁵³ represents -CO₂R⁴⁹ (in which R⁴⁹ is as hereinbefore defined), with sodium hypochlorite in the presence of an aqueous acid such as dilute hydrochloric acid, in an alcohol, such as methanol, and at a temperature at about ambient temperature, followed by treatment of the resultant chloroimine with an alkali metal carbonate, such as sodium carbonate, at a temperature of about reflux temperature.

20

- 130 -

Intermediates of formula (VIII) represented by the

formula (2), wherein $\begin{array}{c} \text{B} \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{C} \end{array}$ represents $\begin{array}{c} \text{N} \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{NH} \end{array}$, R^{53} represents

$-\text{C}(=\text{O})-\text{R}^8$ (in which R^8 is optionally substituted alkyl),

and R^1 , R^2 and A^1 are as hereinbefore defined, Q^1 is CH

5 and Z^1 is an oxygen atom (with the proviso that when A^1 is a direct bond then R^2 is alkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl, or heteroaryl), may be similarly prepared from compounds of formula (3) wherein R^1 , R^2 and A^1 are as hereinbefore defined, R^{53} is a group $-\text{C}(=\text{O})-\text{R}^8$ (in which R^8 is

10 optionally substituted alkyl), Q^1 is a CH linkage and Z^1 is an oxygen atom (with the proviso that when A^1 is a direct bond then R^2 is alkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl, or heteroaryl).

15 Intermediates of formula (X) represented by the formula

(2), wherein $\begin{array}{c} \text{B} \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{C} \end{array}$ represents $\begin{array}{c} \text{N} \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{NH} \end{array}$; R^{53} represents

$-\text{C}(=\text{O})-\text{R}^{10}$ (in which R^{10} is a group $-(\text{CH}_2)_p\text{R}^6$ where R^6

and n are as hereinbefore defined); R^1 , R^2 and A^1 are as

hereinbefore defined; Q^1 is CH and Z^1 is an oxygen atom

20 (with the proviso that when A^1 is a direct bond then R^2

is alkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl, or heteroaryl), may be

similarly prepared from compounds of formula (3) wherein

R^1 , R^2 and A^1 are as hereinbefore defined, R^{53} is a group

$-\text{C}(=\text{O})-\text{R}^{10}$ (in which R^{10} is a group $-(\text{CH}_2)_p\text{R}^6$ in which R^6

- 131 -

and n are as hereinbefore defined), Q^1 is a CH linkage and Z^1 is an oxygen atom (with the proviso that when A^1 is a direct bond then R^2 is alkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl, or heteroaryl).

5

Intermediates of formula (XVIII) represented by the

formula (2), wherein $\begin{array}{c} B \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ C \end{array}$ represents $\begin{array}{c} N \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ NH \end{array}$, R^{53} represents

a halogen atom, Q^1 is a CH linkage, Z^1 is an oxygen atom and R^1 , R^2 and A^1 are as hereinbefore defined, (with the
10 proviso that when A^1 is a direct bond then R^2 is alkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl, or heteroaryl), may be similarly

prepared from compounds of formula (3) wherein $\begin{array}{c} B \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ C \end{array}$

represents $\begin{array}{c} N \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ NH \end{array}$, R^{53} is a halogen atom, Q^1 is a CH

linkage, Z^1 is an oxygen atom and R^1 , R^2 and A^1 are as
15 hereinbefore defined (with the proviso that when A^1 is a direct bond then R^2 is alkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl, or heteroaryl).

Compounds of formula (18) represented by the formula (2),


20 wherein R^{53} is a nitro group and $\begin{array}{c} B \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ C \end{array}$, R^1 , R^2 , A^1 , Q^1 and

Z^1 are as hereinbefore defined (with the proviso that when A^1 is a direct bond then R^2 is alkyl, cycloalkyl,

- 132 -

aryl, or heteroaryl), may be similarly prepared from compounds of formula (3) wherein R^{53} is a nitro group and R^1 , R^2 , A^1 , Q^1 and Z^1 are as hereinbefore defined (with the proviso that when A^1 is a direct bond then R^2 is
5 alkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl, or heteroaryl).

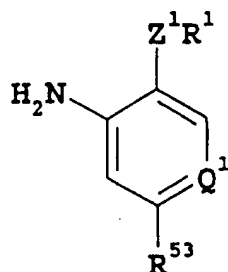
Compounds of formula (19), represented by the formula

(2), wherein R^{53} is a methyl group and , R^1 , R^2 , A^1 ,
 Q^1 and Z^1 are as hereinbefore defined (with the proviso

10 that when A^1 is a direct bond then R^2 is alkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl, or heteroaryl), may be similarly prepared from compounds of formula (3) wherein R^{53} is a methyl group and R^1 , R^2 , A^1 , Q^1 and Z^1 are as hereinbefore defined (with the proviso that when A^1 is a
15 direct bond then R^2 is alkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl, or heteroaryl).

Compounds of formula (3), wherein R^1 , R^2 , R^{53} , A^1 , Q^1 and Z^1 are as hereinbefore defined (with the proviso that
20 when A^1 is a direct bond then R^2 is alkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl, or heteroaryl), may be prepared by reaction of compounds of formula (4):-

- 133 -



(4)

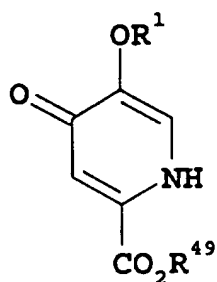
wherein R^1 , R^{53} , Q^1 and Z^1 are as hereinbefore defined,
 with compounds of formula $\text{R}^2\text{A}^1\text{C}\equiv\text{N}$, wherein R^2 and A^1 are
 5 as hereinbefore defined (with the proviso that when A^1 is
 a direct bond then R^2 is alkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl, or
 heteroaryl), in the presence of an acid catalyst, such
 as 4-toluenesulphonic acid, at a temperature up to about
 180°C.

10

Intermediates of formula (XXXXV) wherein R^1 , R^2 , R^3 , A^1 ,
 Q^1 and Z^1 are as hereinbefore defined (with the proviso
 that when A^1 is a direct bond then R^2 is alkyl,
 cycloalkyl, aryl, or heteroaryl), may be similarly
 15 prepared by reaction of compounds of formula (4) wherein
 R^1 , Q^1 and Z^1 are as hereinbefore defined and R^{53} is a
 group $-\text{R}^3$, with compounds of formula $\text{R}^2\text{A}^1\text{C}\equiv\text{N}$, wherein R^2
 and A^1 are as hereinbefore defined (with the proviso that
 when A^1 is a direct bond then R^2 is alkyl, cycloalkyl,
 20 aryl, or heteroaryl), in the presence of an acid
 catalyst, such as 4-toluenesulphonic acid, at a
 temperature up to about 180°C.

- 134 -

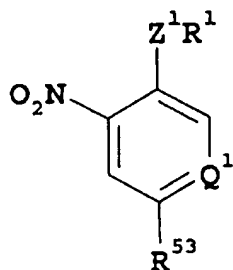
Compounds of formula (4) wherein R^1 is as hereinbefore defined, R^{53} represents a group $-CO_2R^{49}$ in which R^{49} is as hereinbefore defined, Z^1 represents an oxygen atom and Q^1 represents a nitrogen atom, may be prepared by
 5 reaction of compounds of formula (5):-



(5)

wherein R^1 and R^{49} are as hereinbefore defined,
 with ammonium hydroxide in the presence of sulphur
 10 dioxide according to the procedure of H.King,
 J.Chem.Soc, 1946, page 523.

Compounds of formula (4) wherein R^1 and R^{53} are as
 hereinbefore defined, Z^1 represents an oxygen atom or a
 15 direct bond and Q^1 represents a CH or a CF linkage, may
 be prepared by reduction of compounds of formula (6):-

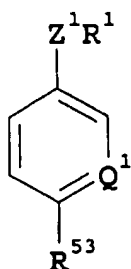


(6)

- 135 -

wherein R^1 and R^{53} are as hereinbefore defined, Z^1 represents an oxygen atom or a direct bond and Q^1 represents a CH or a CF linkage. The reduction may conveniently be carried out using hydrogen in the presence of a suitable metal catalyst, e.g. platinum or palladium optionally supported on an inert carrier such as carbon, preferably in a solvent such as methanol or ethanol. Alternatively the reduction may be carried out ammonium chloride and iron, in an aqueous/organic solvent mixture, for example aqueous methanol, at a temperature at about reflux.

Compounds of formula (6), wherein R^1 and R^{53} are as hereinbefore defined, Z^1 represents an oxygen atom or a direct bond and Q^1 represents a CH or a CF linkage, may be prepared by nitration of compounds of formula (7):-



(7)

20

wherein R^1 and R^{53} are as hereinbefore defined, Z^1 represents an oxygen atom or a direct bond and Q^1 represents a CH or a CF linkage, with fuming nitric acid

- 136 -

at a temperature from about ambient temperature to about 60°C, and separation of the required nitro-isomer (6).

Compounds of formula (6), wherein R^1 is C_{1-4} alkyl, R^{53} is
5 a bromine atom, Q^1 represents a CH linkage and Z^1
represents an oxygen atom, may be prepared by bromination
of the appropriate 2-(C_{1-4} alkoxy)nitrobenzene according
to the procedure of S.Kajigaeshi et.al. J.C.S.Perkin
Trans.I, 1990, page 897.

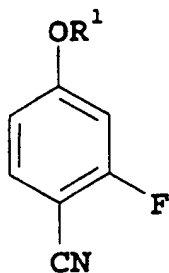
10

Compounds of formula (6), wherein R^1 is C_{1-4} alkyl, R^{53} is
an iodine atom, Q^1 represents a CH linkage and Z^1
represents an oxygen atom, may be prepared by thallation
of the appropriate 2-(C_{1-4} alkoxy)-nitrobenzene with
15 thallium trifluoroacetate in trifluoroacetic acid
followed by iodination with aqueous potassium iodide
according to the procedure of A.Mckillop et.al.
Tetrahedron. Letters, 1969, page 2427.

20 Compounds of formula (4), wherein R^1 is as hereinbefore
defined and R^{53} is a group $-SO_2NR^{21}R^{22}$ in which R^{21} and
 R^{22} are as hereinbefore described, Q^1 is a CH linkage and
 Z^1 is an oxygen atom, may be prepared from reaction of
3-acetamido-4-methoxybenzene sulphonyl chloride (prepared
25 according to the procedure of B.M.Culbertson,
J.Chem.Soc., 1968, page 992) with amines of formula
 $R^{21}R^{22}NH$ wherein R^{21} and R^{22} are as hereinbefore
described and subsequent treatment with sodium hydroxide.

- 137 -

Compounds of formula (7), wherein R^1 is as hereinbefore defined, R^{53} represents $-CO_2R^{49}$ (in which R^{49} is as hereinbefore defined), Z^1 represents an oxygen atom and
5 Q^1 represents a CF linkage may be prepared by reaction of compounds of formula (8):-



(8)

10 wherein R^1 is as hereinbefore defined, with the appropriate C_{1-5} alkyl alcohol, in the presence of hydrogen chloride at a temperature up to about reflux.

Compounds of formula (8), wherein R^1 is as hereinbefore
15 defined, may be prepared by reaction of 4-hydroxy-2-fluorobenzonitrile with compounds of the formula (9):-




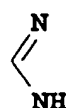
20

wherein R^1 is as hereinbefore described and X^{12} is a bromine or chlorine atom, or a triflate group. The reaction may be carried out in the presence of an alkali

- 138 -

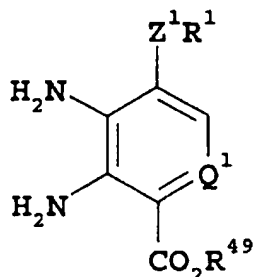
metal carbonate, such as potassium carbonate, in an inert solvent such as dimethylformamide, and at a temperature from about room temperature to about 80°C.

5 Intermediates of formula (2), wherein  represents

, R^{53} represents $-\text{CO}_2R^{49}$ (in which R^{49} is as

hereinbefore defined), A^1 is a direct bond, R^2 is an alkoxy group, and R^1 , Q^1 and Z^1 are as hereinbefore defined, may be prepared by reaction of compounds of


10 formula (10):-

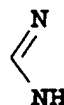


(10)

wherein R^1 , R^{49} , Q^1 and Z^1 are as hereinbefore described,
 15 with compounds of formula (XXXXVIII), wherein R^{49} is as hereinbefore defined. The reaction is carried out in acetic acid at a temperature up to about reflux temperature.

- 139 -

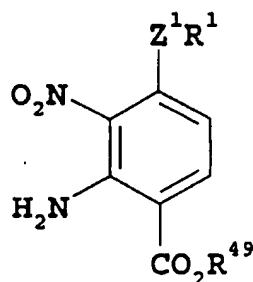
Intermediates of formula (2), wherein  represents

, R⁵³ represents -CO₂R⁴⁹ (in which R⁴⁹ is as

hereinbefore defined), and R¹, A¹, Q¹ and Z¹ are as hereinbefore defined (with the proviso that when A¹ is a direct bond then R² is alkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl, or heteroaryl), may be prepared by reaction of compounds of formula (10), wherein R¹, R⁴⁹, Q¹ and Z¹ are as hereinbefore described, with compounds of formula (XXXXVII, R²A¹C(=O)X¹⁰), wherein R² and A¹ are as hereinbefore defined (with the proviso that when A¹ is a direct bond then R² is alkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl, or heteroaryl), and X¹⁰ represents a hydroxy group or a halogen atom, preferably a chlorine atom. When X¹⁰ represents a hydroxy group the reaction is preferably carried out in the hydrochloric acid at a temperature at about 125°C. When X¹⁰ represents a chlorine atom the reaction is preferably carried out in an inert solvent, such as dichloromethane, optionally in the presence of triethylamine and at a temperature from about 0°C to about ambient temperature, followed by reaction of the product with acetic acid at a temperature at about reflux.

- 140 -

Compounds of formula (10), wherein R^1 , R^{49} and Z^1 are as hereinbefore defined and Q^1 represents a CH linkage, may be prepared by reduction of compounds of formula (11):-



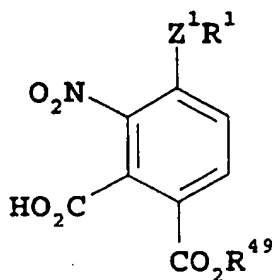
(11)

5

wherein R^1 , R^{49} and Z^1 are as hereinbefore described.

The reduction may be carried out using hydrogen in the presence of a suitable metal catalyst, e.g. platinum or
 10 palladium optionally supported on an inert carrier such as carbon, preferably in a solvent such as methanol or ethanol.

Compounds of formula (11) wherein R^1 , R^{49} and Z^1 are as
 15 hereinbefore described may be prepared by conversion of the carboxy group in compounds of formula (12):-

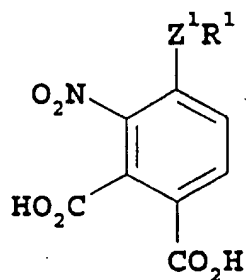


(12)

- 141 -

wherein R^1 , R^{49} and Z^1 are as hereinbefore described, into an amino group. The process involves initial reaction with thionyl chloride, in an inert solvent such as toluene, in the presence of dimethylformamide and at a temperature at about reflux, to form the corresponding acid chloride. The acid chloride is then reacted with a sodium azide in aqueous acetone at a temperature from about 0°C to about ambient temperature to form the corresponding acid azide, which is heated in an aqueous alcohol, such as t-butanol, at a temperature at about reflux.

Compounds of formula (12) wherein R^1 , R^{49} and Z^1 are as hereinbefore described may be prepared by esterification of the corresponding phthalic acid of formula (13):-

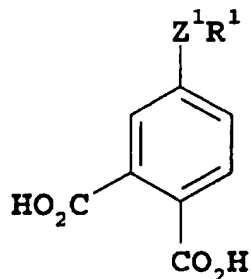


(13)

wherein R^1 and Z^1 are as hereinbefore described with the appropriate C_{1-5} alkyl alcohol.


Compounds of formula (13) wherein R^1 and Z^1 are as hereinbefore described may be prepared by nitration of the corresponding phthalic acid of formula (14):-

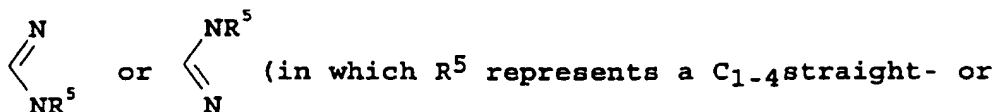
- 142 -



(14)


wherein R^1 and Z^1 are as hereinbefore described, with
 5 fuming nitric acid at a temperature from about ambient
 temperature to about 60°C .

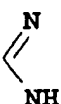
Intermediates of formula (2), wherein  represents



10 branched-chain alkyl, an aryl C_{1-4} alkyl or a

heteroaryl C_{1-4} alkyl group), R^{53} represents $-\text{CO}_2\text{R}^{49}$ (in
 which R^{49} is as hereinbefore defined), and R^1 , R^2 , A^1 , Q^1
 and Z^1 are as hereinbefore defined, may be prepared by

reaction of compounds of formula (2), wherein 

15 represents , R^{53} represents $-\text{CO}_2\text{R}^{49}$ (in which R^{49} is

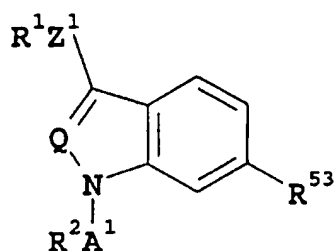
as hereinbefore defined), and R^1 , R^2 , A^1 , Q^1 and Z^1 are
 as hereinbefore defined, with a C_{1-4} straight- or

- 143 -

branched-chain alkyl halide or a arylC₁₋₄alkyl halide or a heteroarylC₁₋₄alkyl halide respectively. The alkylation may for example be carried out in the presence of a base, such as an alkali metal hydride, e.g. sodium hydride, in dimethylformamide at a temperature from about 0°C to about ambient temperature.

Intermediates of formula (IV) or (XXXIII) represented by formula (15):-

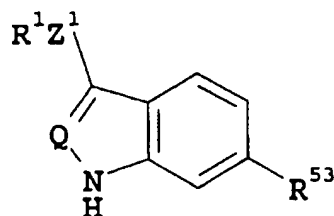
10



(15)

wherein R¹, R², A¹, and Z¹ are as hereinbefore defined, R⁵³ represents -CO₂R⁴⁹ (in which R⁴⁹ is as hereinbefore defined) or OH, and Q is CH or N, may be prepared for example by the application or adaptation of known methods for the substitution of the imino (NH) group in indoles or indazines of general formula (16):-

20



(16)

- 144 -

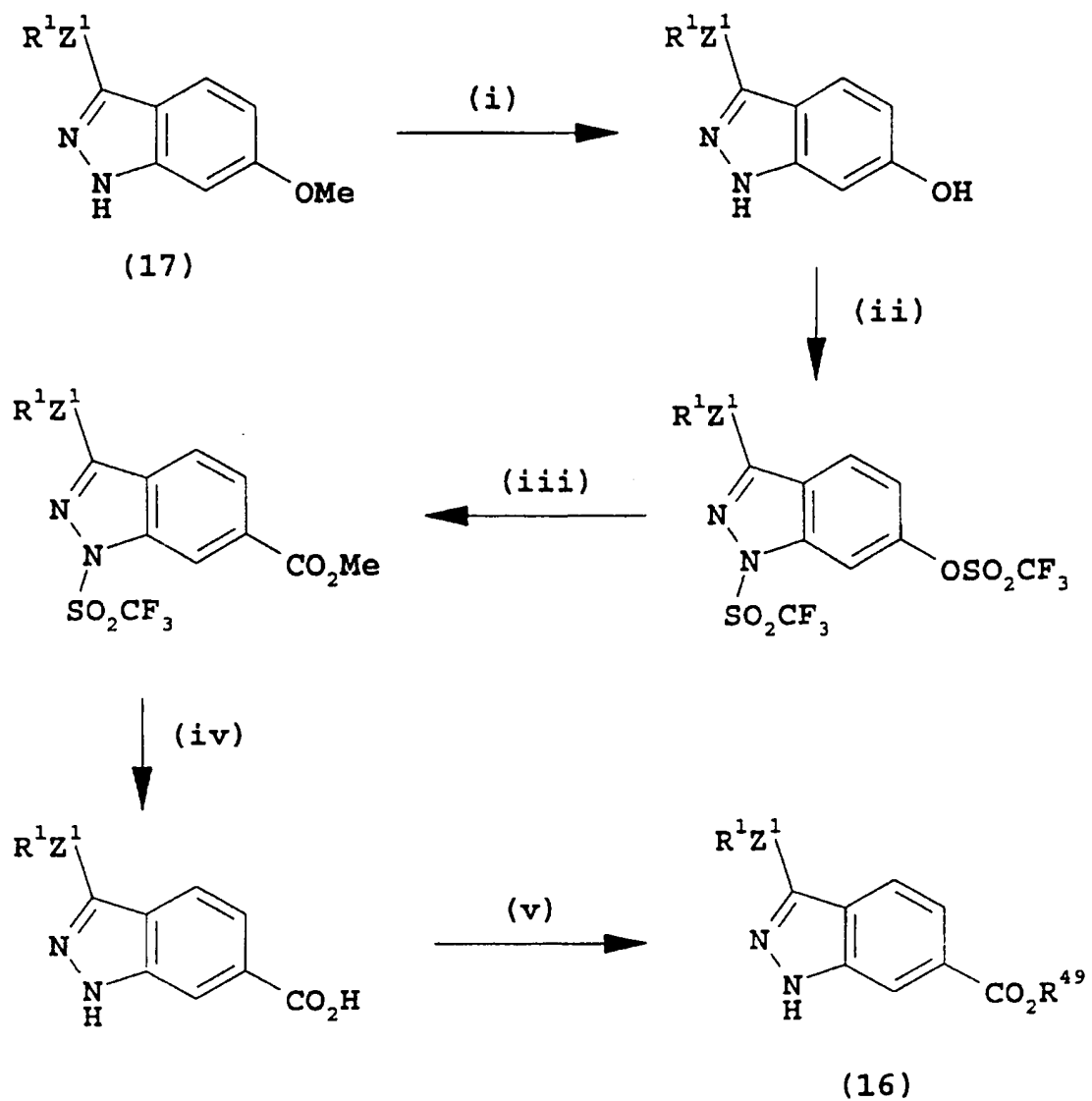
wherein R^1 and Z^1 are as defined previously, R^{53} represents $-CO_2R^{49}$ (in which R^{49} is as hereinbefore defined), and Q is CH or N.

5

Intermediates of formula (16) wherein R^1 and Z^1 are as defined previously, R^{53} represents CO_2R^{49} (in which R^{49} is as hereinbefore defined) and Q is N may be prepared from compounds of general formula (17), wherein R^1 and Z^1 are as hereinbefore defined, as shown in Scheme (I):

10

- 145 -

Scheme (I)

5 Reaction conditions:

(i) treatment with boron tribromide in an inert solvent, such as dichloromethane, at a temperature from about 0°C to about reflux temperature.

- 146 -

(ii) treatment with N-phenyltrifluoromethane sulphonimide in the presence of a suitable base such as sodium hydride in an inert solvent, such as tetrahydrofuran, at a temperature at about 50°C.

5 (iii) treatment with carbon monoxide in the presence of palladium acetate, diphenylphosphine ferrocene, triethylamine and methanol.

(iv) treatment with a suitable base, e.g. an alkali metal carbonate, such as potassium carbonate, in a mixture of
10 an alcohol, such as methanol, and water at a temperature up to about reflux temperature.

(v) treatment with the appropriate alcohol R⁴⁹-OH in the presence of hydrogen chloride at room temperature.

15 Compounds of general formula (17), wherein R¹ is methyl and Z¹ is a direct bond may be prepared by treatment of 2-fluoro-4-methoxyacetophenone with hydrazine at a temperature up to about reflux temperature.

20 Compounds of formula (16) wherein R¹ and Z¹ are as defined previously, R⁵³ represents OH and Q is N may be prepared from compounds of general formula (17), wherein R¹ and Z¹ are as hereinbefore defined, as shown in the first step of Scheme (I).

25

Intermediates of formula (VI), wherein T¹ and R⁶ are as hereinbefore defined, may be prepared by reaction of compounds of formula (XXVI) wherein T¹ is as hereinbefore

- 147 -

defined with compounds of general formula (V), wherein R^6 is as hereinbefore described, in the presence of a strong base such as lithium diisopropylamine, in an inert solvent, for example an ether such as tetrahydrofuran, preferably at a temperature from -65°C to 0°C .

Intermediates of formula (VIII), wherein T^1 is as hereinbefore defined, and R_8 is hydrogen [i.e. $T^1\text{-C(=O)H}$, compounds of formula (XXVI)] may be prepared by oxidation of compounds of formula (XXIX) with manganese dioxide in an inert solvent, such as dichloromethane or toluene (or a mixture of both), and at a temperature from about room temperature to about 85°C .

Intermediates of formula (XIV), wherein T^1 , R^{10} , R^{11} and R^{12} are as hereinbefore defined, may be prepared by reaction of compounds of formula (X) wherein T^1 and R^{10} are as hereinbefore defined, with an organometallic reagent $R^{11}(R^{12})\text{CHM}$ [where M is a metal atom, for example a lithium atom] in a solvent such as an ether (e.g. tetrahydrofuran) at a low temperature, e.g. about -78°C to ambient temperature. Reagents $R^{11}(R^{12})\text{CHM}$ are either known compounds or may be prepared, preferably in situ during the above process, by reaction of a compound AlkCH_2M or $[\text{Alk}]_2\text{NM}$ [where Alk is an alkyl group such as n-propyl or i-propyl] with a compound $R^{11}\text{CH}_2R^{12}$ using the just mentioned conditions. Intermediates of formula (XV, $T^1\text{-C(R}^8\text{)(OH)CH(R}^9\text{)(CH}_2\text{)}_pR^6$), wherein T^1 , R^6 , R^8 and

- 148 -

R^9 are as hereinbefore defined, may be similarly prepared by reaction of compounds of formula (VIII) wherein T^1 and R^8 are as hereinbefore defined, with an organometallic reagent $R^6(CH_2)_p(R^9)CHM$ [where M is a metal atom, for example a lithium atom].

Intermediates of formula (XVI, $T^1-B(OH)_2$), wherein T^1 is as hereinbefore defined, may be prepared by reaction of compounds of formula (XVIII), wherein T^1 is as hereinbefore defined, with *n*-butyl lithium, in an inert solvent such as tetrahydrofuran, at a temperature about $-78^\circ C$, followed by reaction with a trialkylborate, such as triethyl borate, and subsequent hydrolysis with a dilute mineral acid such as hydrochloric acid.

Intermediates of formula (XX, T^1-NH_2), wherein T^1 is as hereinbefore defined, may be prepared by hydrogenation of compounds of formula (18):-



wherein T^1 is as hereinbefore defined. The hydrogenation may be carried out using hydrogen in the presence of a suitable metal catalyst, e.g. palladium optionally supported on an inert carrier such as carbon, preferably in a solvent such as methanol or ethanol.

- 149 -

Intermediates of formula (XXII, $T^1-C(=NOH)CH_3$), wherein T^1 is as hereinbefore defined, may be prepared by reaction of compounds of formula (VIII) wherein T^1 is as hereinbefore described and R^8 is methyl, with
5 hydroxylamine hydrochloride in the presence of pyridine, in an inert solvent, such as dichloromethane, at a temperature at about room temperature.

Intermediates of formula (XXV, $T^1-CH_2CH(OH)R^6$), wherein
10 T^1 and R^6 are as hereinbefore defined, may be prepared by reaction of compounds of formula (19):-



15 wherein T^1 is as hereinbefore described, with a strong base such as lithium diisopropylamide, in an inert solvent, such as tetrahydrofuran at a temperature at about $-78^\circ C$ followed by reaction of with compounds of formula (XXXII, R^6CHO) wherein R^6 is as hereinbefore
20 described.

Intermediates of formula (XXVII, $T^1-CH_2X^7$), wherein T^1 is as hereinbefore described and X^7 is a bromine atom, may be prepared by bromination of compounds of formula (19),
25 wherein T^1 is as hereinbefore described, with N-bromosuccinimide, optionally in the presence of a catalyst, such as benzoyl peroxide, in an inert solvent

- 150 -

such as dichloromethane and at a temperature at about room temperature.

Alternatively intermediates of formula (XXVII, $T^1-CH_2X^7$),
5 wherein T^1 is as hereinbefore described and X^7 is a
bromine atom, may be prepared by reaction of compounds of
formula (XXIX, T^1-CH_2OH), wherein T^1 is as hereinbefore
described, with N-bromosuccinimide, optionally in the
presence of a catalyst, such as benzoyl peroxide, in an
10 inert solvent such as dichloromethane and at a
temperature at about room temperature.

Intermediates of formula (XXIX, T^1-CH_2OH), wherein T^1 is
as hereinbefore described may be prepared by reduction of
15 compounds of formula (IV, $T^1-CO_2R^{49}$) wherein T^1 and R^{49}
are as hereinbefore described. The reduction may
conveniently be carried out with diisobutylaluminium
hydride in an inert solvent, such as tetrahydrofuran, at
a temperature from about $-78^\circ C$ to about room temperature.
20 The reduction may also be carried out with lithium
aluminium hydride in an inert solvent, such as an ether,
for example diethyl ether, at a temperature from about
room temperature to about reflux.

25 Intermediates of formula (XXXI) wherein T^1 is as
hereinbefore defined may be prepared from compounds of
the general formula (20):-

- 151 -



wherein T^1 is as hereinbefore defined, by reaction with
bromine in carbon tetrachloride and ultraviolet
5 radiation, at a temperature from about ambient to about
reflux.

Compounds of formula (20) wherein T^1 is as hereinbefore
defined may be prepared by the action of sulphur
10 tetrafluoride and hydrofluoric acid on compounds of
formula (XXVI) wherein T^1 is as hereinbefore defined,
optionally in the presence of pyridine, at a temperature
from about room temperature to about 125°C, or
alternatively by the action of diethylaminosulphur
15 trifluoride, preferably in an inert solvent, such as
dichloromethane, preferably at a temperature from about
0°C to about room temperature.

Intermediates of formula (XXXVII, $T^1-N_2^+ BF_4^-$), wherein
20 T^1 is as hereinbefore defined may be prepared by
diazotisation of compounds of formula (XX) with sodium
nitrite in the presence of hydrochloric acid, followed by
treatment with sodium tetrafluoroborate.

25 Intermediates of formula (XXXX, T^1-SO_2Cl), wherein T^1 is
as hereinbefore defined may be prepared by reaction of
compounds of formula (XVIII, T^1-X^7), wherein T^1 is as
hereinbefore defined and X^7 is a bromine atom with

- 152 -


butyllithium in tetrahydrofuran at a temperature at about
 -70°C followed by treatment with sulphur dioxide at about
 the same temperature and subsequent reaction of the
 resulting lithium sulphinate salt with sulphuryl chloride
 5 in an inert solvent such as dichloromethane at a
 temperature at about 0°C.

Intermediates of formula (XXXXII, $T^1-C(=O)CO_2H$), wherein
 T^1 is as hereinbefore defined may be prepared by the
 10 oxidation of compounds of formula (VIII, $T^1-C(=O)R_8$)
 wherein T^1 is as hereinbefore described and R_8 is methyl,
 by reaction with selenium dioxide in the presence of
 pyridine, using mild conditions, e.g. in a solvent such
 as ethanol, at or below room temperature.

15

Intermediates of the general formula (XXXXIII) wherein T^1
 is as hereinbefore defined may be prepared by treatment
 of compounds of formula (XX) wherein T^1 is as
 hereinbefore defined with the phosgene equivalent
 20 ($ClC(=O)OCCl_3$) in an inert solvent such as dioxan at a
 temperature at about 60°C.

Intermediates of formulae (XXXXIX), (L) and (LII) wherein

R^1 , R^3 , , Q^1 and Z^1 are as hereinbefore described, may

25 be prepared by the application or adaptation of methods
 for the reactions of o-arylenediamines described in
 Comprehensive Heterocyclic Chemistry, page 470.

- 153 -

Intermediates of formula (LIV, $T^1-C(CN)[(CH_2)_2CO_2R^{52}]_2$), wherein T^1 is as hereinbefore described, may be prepared by reaction of compounds of formula (21):-

5



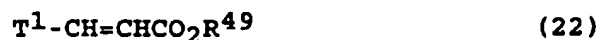
wherein T^1 is as hereinbefore described, with methyl (or ethyl) acrylate in methanol, in the presence of a
10 suitable catalyst, such as Triton-B, and at reflux temperature.

Compounds of formula (21), wherein T^1 is as hereinbefore described, may be prepared by reaction of compounds of
15 formula (XXVII), wherein T^1 is as hereinbefore described and X^7 represents a chlorine atom, with sodium cyanide in dimethylformamide.

Intermediates of the general formula (LV, $T^1-CH=CH-CO_2H$)
20 wherein T^1 is as hereinbefore described may be prepared by reaction of compounds of formula (XXVI, T^1-CHO) with malonic acid in the presence of piperidine in a solvent such as pyridine at a temperature up to about reflux.

25 Intermediates of the general formula (LVII), wherein T^1 is as hereinbefore described may be prepared by reaction of compounds of formula (22):-

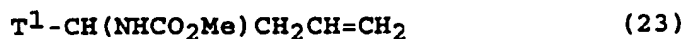
- 154 -



wherein T^1 and R^{49} are as hereinbefore described, with an
nitromethane in the presence of tetramethylguanidine at a
5 temperature at about 65°C.

Compounds of formula (22), wherein T^1 and R^{49} are as
hereinbefore described may be prepared by reaction of
compounds of formula (XXVI) with a carboalkoxymethylene
10 triphenylphosphorane, e.g. carbomethoxymethylene
triphenylphosphorane, in an inert solvent, such as
toluene, and at a temperature from about room temperature
to about 80°C.

15 Intermediates of formula (LVIII), wherein T^1 is as
hereinbefore described, may be prepared from compounds of
formula (23):



20

wherein T^1 is as hereinbefore described, following
hydroboration of the double bond with for example
diisoamylborane in tetrahydrofuran at 0°C and subsequent
treatment with sodium hydroxide and hydrogen peroxide at
25 0°C.

- 155 -

Compounds of formula (23), wherein T^1 is as hereinbefore described, may be prepared by reaction of compounds of formula (24):-



wherein T^1 is as hereinbefore described, with thionyl chloride, at room temperature, followed by reaction of the resulting acid chloride with sodium azide in acetone
10 at 0°C to room temperature then thermolysis by refluxing in an inert solvent such as benzene to furnish the isocyanate which may be converted to the required urethane by refluxing in methanol.

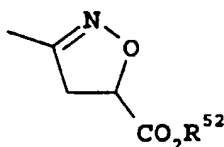
15 Compounds of formula (24, $T^1-CH(CO_2H)CH_2CH=CH_2$), wherein T^1 is as hereinbefore described, may be prepared by alkylation of the acid dianion (obtained following treatment with two equivalents of lithium diisopropylamine in tetrahydrofuran) derived from
20 compounds of formula (25):-



wherein T^1 is as hereinbefore described, with allyl
25 bromide.

Intermediates of formula (Iz) wherein T^1 is as hereinbefore described and the moiety R^3 represents a

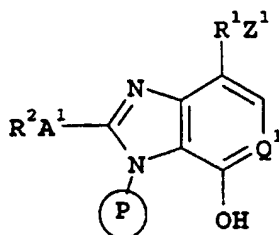
- 156 -



group in which R⁵² is a methyl or ethyl

group, may be prepared from compounds of formula (XXVI) by reaction with hydroxylamine hydrochloride in the presence of pyridine, followed by treatment of the so
 5 formed oxime with N-chlorosuccinimide and pyridine in an inert solvent, such as dichloromethane, and subsequent reaction of the chloroamidoxime with methyl or ethyl acrylate in the presence of triethylamine.

10 Intermediates of formula (LIX), wherein R¹, R², A¹, Q¹ and Z¹ are as hereinbefore defined, R³ represents a -O-CH₂-R⁶ group where R⁶ is as hereinbefore defined, and
 (P) is a suitable protecting group, for example a 2-trimethylsilanyl-ethoxymethyl group, may be prepared by
 15 reaction of compounds of formula (26):-



(26)

wherein R¹, R², A¹, Q¹ and Z¹ are as hereinbefore
 20 defined, and (P) is a suitable protecting group, for example a 2-trimethylsilanyl-ethoxymethyl group, with compounds of formula (27):-

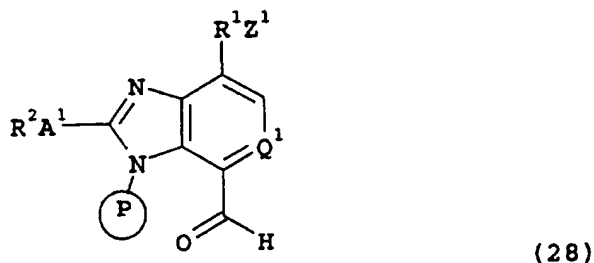
- 157 -



wherein R^6 is as hereinbefore defined, in the presence of
 5 a dialkyl azodicarboxylate, such as diethyl
 azodicarboxylate, and triphenylphosphine, preferably in
 a dry ethereal solvent, e.g. diethyl ether or
 tetrahydrofuran, preferably at or near room temperature.

10 Compounds of formula (26) wherein R^1 , R^2 , A^1 , Q^1 and Z^1
 are as hereinbefore defined, and (P) is a suitable
 protecting group, for example a 2-trimethylsilanyl-
 ethoxymethyl group, may be prepared by reaction of
 compounds of formula (28):-

15




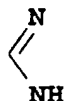
wherein R^1 , R^2 , A^1 , Q^1 and Z^1 are as hereinbefore
 defined, and (P) is a suitable protecting group, for
 20 example a 2-trimethylsilanyl-ethoxymethyl group, with
 m-chloroperbenzoic acid in an inert solvent such
 dichloromethane and at a temperature from about 0°C to
 about room temperature followed by treatment with sodium
 hydrogen carbonate.

- 158 -

Intermediates of formula (XXXIII), wherein T^1 is as hereinbefore defined, may be similarly prepared by reaction of compounds of formula (XXVI), wherein T^1 is as
 5 hereinbefore defined, with m-chloroperbenzoic acid.

Compounds of formula (28) wherein R^1 , R^2 , A^1 , Q^1 and Z^1 are as hereinbefore defined, and \textcircled{P} is a 2-trimethylsilyl-ethoxymethyl group, may be prepared by

10 reaction of compounds of formula (2), wherein 

represents , R^{53} represents a formyl group, and R^1 ,

R^2 , A^1 , Q^1 and Z^1 are as hereinbefore defined, with 2-(trimethylsilyl)ethoxymethyl chloride in the presence of sodium hydride, in an inert solvent such as
 15 dimethylformamide, and at a temperature at about room temperature.

Compounds of formula (XXXIV) wherein R^6 is as hereinbefore defined and X^8 is hydroxy may be prepared by
 20 reduction of compounds of formula (XXXII) wherein R^6 is as hereinbefore defined. The reduction may conveniently be carried out with sodium borohydride in an alcohol such as ethanol at a temperature at about room temperature.

25 Compounds of formula (XXXII) wherein R^6 is heteroaryl,

- 159 -

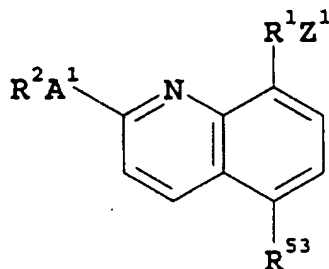
such as a substituted pyridyl, for example 3,5-dimethylpyridyl, may be prepared by reaction of compounds of formula (29):-



wherein R^6 is heteroaryl, such as a substituted pyridyl, for example 3,5-dimethylpyridyl, with butyl lithium in an inert solvent, such as diethyl ether, at $-78^\circ C$, and
10 subsequent treatment of the resulting anion with dimethylformamide.

Compounds of formula (29) wherein R^6 is 3,5-dimethylpyridyl, may be prepared by reaction of 4-nitro-
15 3,5-dimethylpyridine-N-oxide with phosphorous tribromide in a similar manner to the procedures described in J.Chem.Soc., 1956, page 771.

Intermediates of formula (IV) represented by formula
20 (30):-

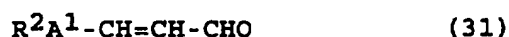


(30)

wherein R^1 , R^2 , A^1 , and Z^1 are as hereinbefore defined,

- 160 -

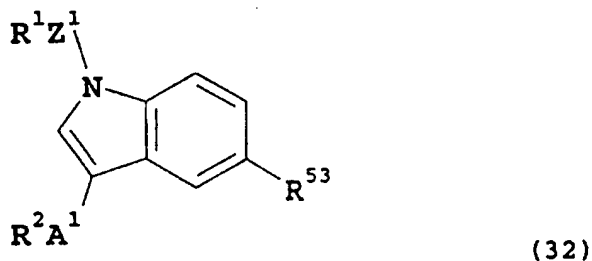
R⁵³ is CO₂R⁴⁹ (in which R⁴⁹ is as hereinbefore defined),
 may be prepared for example by reaction of compounds of
 formula (4), wherein R¹ and Z¹ are as hereinbefore
 defined, R⁵³ is CO₂R⁴⁹ (in which R⁴⁹ is as hereinbefore
 5 defined) and Q is CH, with compounds of formula (31):-



wherein R² and A¹ are as hereinbefore defined, in the
 10 presence of p-chloranil in an alcohol, such as butanol,
 and at a temperature at about reflux temperature.

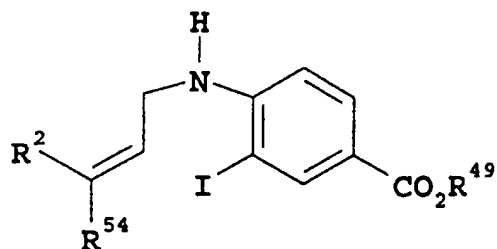
Intermediates of formula (IV) represented by formula
 (32):-

15



wherein R¹ is hydrogen, R² is alkyl, aryl or heteroaryl,
 R⁵³ is CO₂R⁴⁹ (in which R⁴⁹ is as hereinbefore defined),
 20 Z¹ is a direct bond, and A¹ is -CH₂- or -CH(CH₃)-, may be
 prepared for example by reaction of compounds of formula
 (33):-

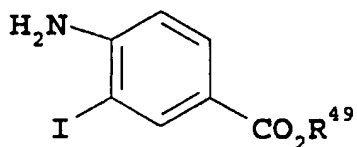
- 161 -



(33)

wherein R^{49} is as hereinbefore defined, R^2 is alkyl, aryl or heteroaryl, and R^{54} is hydrogen or methyl, with
 5 palladium acetate in the presence of triethylamine in an inert solvent such as acetonitrile, sealed in a bomb, and at a temperature up to about 110°C .

Compounds of formula (33), wherein R^2 , R^{53} and A^1 are as
 10 hereinbefore defined, may be prepared by reaction of compounds of formula (34):-



(34)

15 wherein R^{53} is as hereinbefore defined with an allyl bromide of formula (35):-



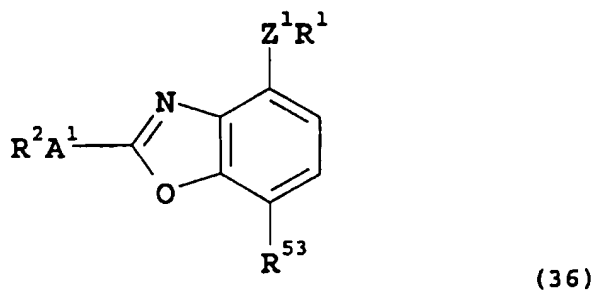
20 wherein R^2 and R^{54} are as defined above, in the presence of lithium diisopropylamide in an inert solvent such as

- 162 -

an ether, e.g. tetrahydrofuran, at a temperature from about -78°C to about room temperature.

Compounds of formula (34) may be prepared according to the method of Hill, Tetrahedron, 1990, 46, page 4587.

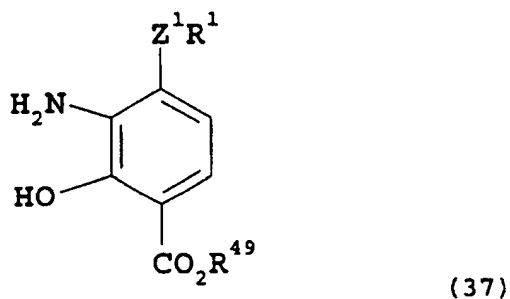
Intermediates of formula (IV) represented by formula (36):-



10

wherein R^1 , R^2 , A^1 , and Z^1 are as hereinbefore defined, and R^{53} is CO_2R^{49} , may be prepared for example by reaction of compounds of formula (37):-

15

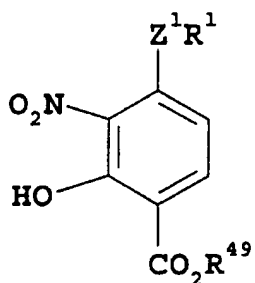


wherein R^1 , R^{49} and Z^1 are as hereinbefore defined, with compounds of formula $R^2A^1C\equiv N$, wherein R^2 and A^1 are as

- 163 -

hereinbefore defined (with the proviso that when A^1 is a direct bond then R^2 is alkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl, or heteroaryl), in the presence of an acid catalyst, such as 4-toluenesulphonic acid, at a temperature up to about 180°C.

Compounds of formula (37), wherein R^1 and Z^1 are as hereinbefore defined, may be prepared by reduction of compounds of formula (38):-



(38)

wherein R^1 , R^{49} and Z^1 are as hereinbefore defined. The reduction may be carried out using hydrogen in the presence of a suitable metal catalyst, e.g. platinum or palladium optionally supported on an inert carrier such as carbon, preferably in a solvent such as ethyl acetate.

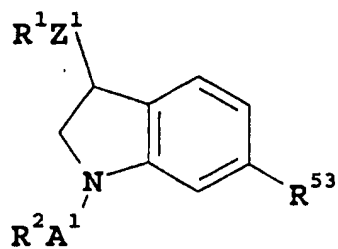
Compounds of formula (38), wherein R^{49} is as hereinbefore defined, R^1 is methyl and Z^1 is an oxygen atom, may be prepared by nitration of methyl 4-methoxysalicylate followed by separation of the required nitro-isomer. The nitration may be conveniently carried out using

- 164 -

concentrated nitric acid in acetic acid at a temperature at about room temperature.

Intermediates of formula (IV) represented by formula

5 (39):-



(39)

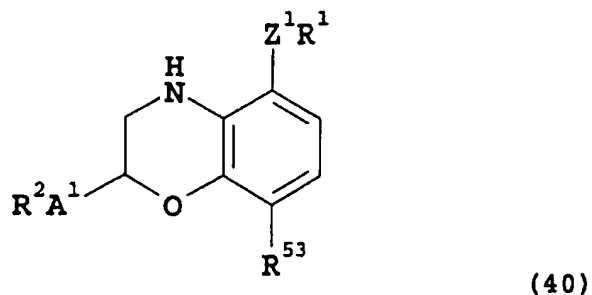
wherein R¹ is alkyl, R² is alkyl, aryl or heteroaryl, R⁵³ is CO₂R⁴⁹ (in which R⁴⁹ is as hereinbefore defined), Z¹ is a direct bond, and A¹ is as hereinbefore defined, may be prepared for example by reduction of compounds of formula (15), wherein R¹ is alkyl, R² is alkyl, aryl or heteroaryl, R⁵³ is CO₂R⁴⁹ (in which R⁴⁹ is as hereinbefore defined), Q is CH, Z¹ is a direct bond, and A¹ is as hereinbefore defined, using a solution of borane-tetrahydrofuran complex in tetrahydrofuran. The reaction may conveniently be carried out in trifluoroacetic acid at a temperature at about 0°C.

20

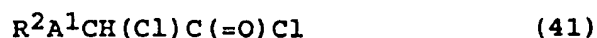
Intermediates of formula (IV) represented by formula

(40):-

- 165 -



wherein R^1 , R^2 , A^1 and Z^1 are as hereinbefore defined,
 and R^{53} is CO_2R^{49} (in which R^{49} is as hereinbefore
 5 defined), may be prepared for example by reaction of
 compounds of formula (37), wherein R^1 , R^{49} and Z^1 are as
 hereinbefore defined, with compounds of formula (41):

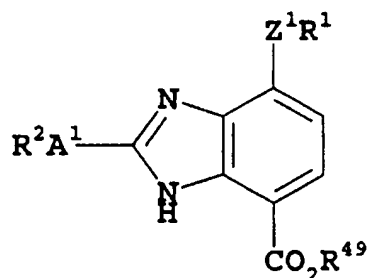


10

wherein R^1 and A^1 are as hereinbefore defined, in an
 inert solvent such as dichloromethane, in the presence of
 a base, such as sodium hydrogen carbonate, and at a
 temperature from about $0^\circ C$ to about room temperature,
 15 followed by heating the intermediate with potassium
 carbonate in dimethylformamide at $100^\circ C$ and then
 reduction with borane-dimethylsulphide complex in
 tetrahydrofuran at room temperature.

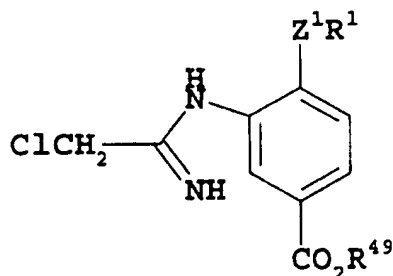
20 Intermediates of formula (IV) represented by formula
 (41):-

- 166 -



(41)

wherein R^1 , R^{49} and Z^1 are as hereinbefore defined, R^2 is alkoxy, arylalkyloxy, heteroarylalkyloxy or hydroxy and
 5 A^1 is methylene may be prepared for example by reaction of compounds of formula (42):



(42)

10 wherein R^1 , R^{49} and Z^1 are as hereinbefore defined, with sodium hypochlorite in the presence of an aqueous acid such as dilute hydrochloric acid, in an alcohol, such as methanol, and at a temperature at about reflux temperature, followed by treatment of the resultant
 15 chloroimine with water or an alcohol of formula R^2-OH where R^2 is as defined immediately above, in the presence of an alkali metal carbonate, such as potassium carbonate, at a temperature at about reflux temperature

- 167 -

- Compounds of formula (42) wherein R^1 , R^{49} and Z^1 are as hereinbefore defined, may be prepared by reaction of compounds of formula (4) wherein R^1 and Z^1 are as hereinbefore defined, R^{53} is CO_2R^{49} (in which R^{49} is as hereinbefore defined) and Q^1 is CH, with chloroacetonitrile in the presence of an acid catalyst, such as 4-toluenesulphonic acid, and at a temperature at about 180°C.
- 10 Intermediates of formulae (II), (IV), (VI), (VIII), (X), (XIV), (XV), (XVI), (XVIII), (XX), (XXII), (XXIII), (XXV), (XXVI), (XXVII), (XXIX), (XXXI), (XXXIII), (XXXV), (XXXVII), (XXXX), (XXXXII), (XXXXIII), (XXXXV), (XXXXIX), (L), (LII), (LIV), (LV), (LVIII) and (LIX) are novel
- 15 compounds and, as such, they and their processes described herein for their preparation constitute further features of the present invention.

The present invention is further Exemplified but not limited by the following illustrative Examples and Reference Examples.

In the nuclear magnetic resonance spectra (NMR) the chemical shifts are expressed in ppm relative to tetramethylsilane. Abbreviations have the following

25 significances: s = singlet; d = doublet; t = triplet; m = multiplet; dd = doublet of doublets; b = broad.

- 168 -

EXAMPLE 1(a) N-(3,5-Dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-2-methoxymethyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide

A solution of 4-amino-3,5-dichloropyridine (24.3g)
5 in tetrahydrofuran (100ml) was diluted with toluene
(150ml) and the mixture treated dropwise with a solution
of sodium diethylaluminum in toluene (36ml; 2M, caution
pyrophoric reagent). The mixture was stirred at ambient
temperature for 30 minutes, then heated at reflux with
10 stirring for a further 30 minutes. The resulting
solution was cooled to room temperature and then treated
with a solution of 1'-benzotriazolyl 7-methoxy-
2-methoxymethyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylate [Reference
Example 1(a)] in tetrahydrofuran (40ml). The resulting
15 mixture was refluxed for 2 hours, then cooled to ambient
temperature, then diluted with chloroform and then washed
with a dilute solution of sodium tartrate followed by
brine. The organic phase was dried over magnesium
sulphate and then evaporated. The solid residue was
20 triturated overnight with ethyl acetate and the insoluble
material was recrystallised from a mixture of methanol
and toluene to give the title compound (6.06g) as a white
solid, m.p. 230-231°C. [Elemental analysis:- C, 50.0;
H, 3.60; N, 14.4%. Calculated:- C, 50.4; H, 3.70; N, 14.7%].

25

(b) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 1(a) but
using Reference Example 1(b), there was prepared
N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-2-phenyl-3H-

- 169 -

benzimidazole-4-carboxamide as a white solid, m.p.

344-345°C. [Elemental analysis:- C,57.9; H,3.40; N,13.2%.

Calculated:- C,58.1; H,3.41; N,13.6%].

- 5 (c) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 1(a) but using Reference Example 1(c), there was prepared N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-2-phenethyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide as a white solid, m.p. 211°C. [Elemental analysis:- C,60.0; H,4.20; N,12.5%.
10 Calculated:- C,59.9; H,4.11; N,12.7%].

- (d) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 1(a) but using Reference Example 1(d), there was prepared 2-benzyl-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide as a white solid, m.p.
15 200-201°C. [Elemental analysis:- C,59.4; H,3.80; N,12.8%. Calculated:- C,59.0; H,3.77; N,13.1%].

- (e) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 1(a) but
20 using Reference Example 1(e), there was prepared (RS)-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-2-(1-phenylethyl)-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide as a white solid, m.p. 220-222°C. [Elemental analysis:- C,60.3; H,4.10; N,12.4%. Calculated:- C,59.9; H,4.11; N,12.7%].
25 NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.90(d, J=7.5Hz, 3H), 3.97(s, 3H), 4.41(q, J=7.5Hz, 1H), 6.80(d, J=8Hz, 1H), 7.4(m, 5H), 8.19(d, J=8Hz, 1H), 8.8(s, 2H), 9.05(bs, 1H).

- 170 -

(f) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 1(a) but using Reference Example 1(f), there was prepared

N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-2-(4-methoxybenzyl)-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide as a white solid, m.p.

5 225-226°C. [Elemental analysis:- C,57.6; H,3.90; N,12.2%. Calculated:- C,57.8; H,3.97; N,12.3%]. NMR (CDCl₃): δ
3.8(s,3H), 3.95(s,3H), 4.28(s,2H), 6.79(d,J=8Hz,1H),
6.92(d,J=8Hz,2H), 7.26(d,J=8Hz,2H), 8.17(d,J=8Hz,1H),
8.55(s,2H), 9.4(bs,1H).

10

(g) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 1(a) but using Reference Example 1(g), there was prepared

(RS)-2-(cyclohexyl-phenyl-methyl)-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide as a

15 white solid, m.p. 281°C with decomposition. [Elemental analysis:- C,63.5; H,5.30; N,10.9%. Calculated:- C,63.7; H,5.14; N,11.0%].

(h) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 1(a) but using Reference Example 1(h), there was prepared

(RS)-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-2-(1,2-diphenylethyl)-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide as a white solid,

m.p. 225-226°C. [Elemental analysis:- C,64.2; H,4.40; N,10.5; H₂O,2.0%. Calculated for C₂₈H₂₂Cl₂N₄O₂•0.5H₂O:-

25 C,63.8; H,4.37; N,10.6; H₂O,1.7%].

(i) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 1(a) but using Reference Example 1(i), there was prepared

(RS)-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-2-

- 171 -

(2-phenylpropyl)-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide as a white solid, m.p. 103-105°C. [Elemental analysis:- C,60.3; H,4.50; N,12.0%. Calculated:- C,60.1; H,4.43; N,12.3%].

5

(j) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 1(a) but using Reference Example 1(j), there was prepared N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-2-(4-methoxyphenoxyethyl)-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide as a white solid, m.p. 185-186°C. [Elemental analysis:- C,55.2; H,3.90; N,11.4%. Calculated:- C,55.8; H,3.83; N,11.8%].

(k) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 1(a) but using Reference Example 1(k), there was prepared (RS)-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-2-(1-phenylbutyl)-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide as a white solid, m.p. 223-224°C. [Elemental analysis:- C,61.0; H,4.70; N,11.7%. Calculated:- C,61.4; H,4.72; N,11.9%].

20

(l) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 1(a) but using Reference Example 1(l), there was prepared 2-(4-bromobenzyl)-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide as a yellow solid, m.p. 273-275°C. [Elemental analysis:- C,49.8; H,2.90; N,10.6%. Calculated:- C,49.8; H,2.99; N,11.1%]. NMR $\{(\text{CD}_3)_2\text{SO}\}$: δ 4.00 (s, 3H), 4.25 (s, 2H), 7.00 (d, 1H), 7.35 (d, 2H), 7.50 (d, 2H), 7.90 (d, 1H), 8.74 (s, 1H), 12.95 (s, 1H), 13.40 (s, 1H).

25

- 172 -

(m) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 1(a) but using Reference Example 1(m), there was prepared
(RS)-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-2-[3-methoxy-1-phenylpropyl]-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide as a white solid, m.p. 167-169°C. [Elemental analysis:- C,59.1; H,4.60; N,11.3%. Calculated:- C,59.3; H,4.57; N,11.5%].
NMR (CDCl₃): δ 2.33(m,1H), 2.75(m,1H), 3.31(m,1H), 3.33(s,3H), 3.45(m,1H), 4.0(s,3H), 4.50(t,J=8Hz,1H),
6.82(d,J=8Hz,1H), 7.35(m,5H), 8.18(d,J=8Hz,1H), 8.60(s,2H), 9.63(bs,1H).

(n) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 1(a) but using Reference Example 1(n), there was prepared
2-(4-cyanobenzyl)-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide as a white solid, m.p. 225-227°C. [Elemental analysis:- C,58.4; H,3.60; N,14.8%. Calculated:- C,58.4; H,3.34; N,15.5%]. NMR {(CD₃)₂SO}: δ 4.05(s,3H), 4.35(s,2H), 7.00(d,1H), 7.60(d,2H), 7.75(d,2H), 7.90(d,1H), 8.70(s,2H), 11.90(s,1H), 13.45(s,1H).

(o) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 1(a) but using Reference Example 1(o), there was prepared
N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-2-[4-(3-pyridyl)benzyl]-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide as a tan coloured solid, m.p. 255°C with decomposition.
[Elemental analysis:- C,61.3; H,4.10; N,13.2; H₂O,0.90%. Calculated for C₂₆H₁₉Cl₂N₅O₂•0.25H₂O:- C,60.8; H,3.70;

- 173 -

N, 13.6, H₂O, 0.88%]. NMR {(CD₃)₂SO}: δ 4.10 (s, 3H),
4.35 (s, 2H), 7.00 (d, 1H), 7.50 (m, 3H), 7.70 (d, 2H),
7.90 (d, 1H), 8.10 (d, 1H), 8.55 (d, 1H), 8.70 (s, 1H),
8.85 (d, 1H), 12.00 (s, 1H), 13.40 (s, 1H).

5

(p) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 1(a) but
using Reference Example 1(p), there was prepared

N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-2-(2-methoxybenzyl)-
3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide as a white solid, m.p.

10 211-212°C. [Elemental analysis:- C, 57.7; H, 3.70; N, 12.0%.
Calculated:- C, 57.8; H, 3.97; N, 12.3%].

(q) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 1(a) but
using Reference Example 1(q), there was prepared

15 (RS)-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-2-(methoxy-
phenyl-methyl)-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide as a white
solid, m.p. 227-229°C. [Elemental analysis:- C, 57.8;
H, 3.50; N, 12.0%. Calculated:- C, 57.8; H, 3.97; N, 12.3%].

20 (r) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 1(a) but
using Reference Example 1(r), there was prepared

N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-2-(2-methoxyphenoxy)-
methyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide as a white solid,
m.p. 222-223°C. NMR (CDCl₃): δ 4.0 (s, 3H), 4.07 (s, 3H),

25 5.5 (s, 2H), 6.86 (d, J=8Hz, 1H), 6.97 (m, 2H), 7.09 (m, 2H),
8.2 (d, J=8Hz, 1H), 8.59 (s, 2H).

- 174 -

(s) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 1(a) but using Reference Example 1(s), there was prepared

N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-2-(3-pyridyl)-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide as an off-white solid, m.p.

5 315°C. [Elemental analysis:- C,54.4; H,3.30; N,16.3; H₂O,1.10%. Calculated for C₁₉H₁₃Cl₂N₅O₂•0.25H₂O:- C,54.5; H,3.25; N,16.7, H₂O,1.07%].

(t) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 1(a) but using Reference Example 1(t), there was prepared

10 N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-2-isopropyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide as a white solid, m.p. 266°C.

[Elemental analysis:- C,53.7; H,4.40; N,14.5%.

Calculated:- C,53.8; H,4.25; N,14.8%].

15

(u) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 1(a) but using Reference Example 1(u), there was prepared

N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-2-methyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide as a white solid, m.p. 235°C.

20 [Elemental analysis:- C,51.3; H,3.40; N,15.8%.

Calculated:- C,51.3; H,3.44; N,16.0%].

(v) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 1(a) but using Reference Example 1(v), there was prepared

25 N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-2-phenoxyethyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide as a white solid, m.p.

215-219°C with decomposition. [Elemental analysis:-

C,56.4; H,3.90; N,12.4%. Calculated:- C,56.9; H,3.64;

N,12.6%]. NMR [(CD₃)₂SO]: δ (Major tautomer / rotomer)

- 175 -

4.06(s,3H), 5.40(s,2H), 6.95(m,1H), 7.1(m,3H),
7.32(m,2H), 7.98(d,J=8Hz,1H), 8.75(s,2H), 11.75(bs,1H).

- (w) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 1(a)
5 but using Reference Example 1(w), there was prepared
2-cyclopentyl-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-3H-
benzimidazole-4-carboxamide as a white solid, m.p.
>250°C. [Elemental analysis:- C,56.4; H,4.40; N,13.5%.
Calculated:- C,56.3; H,4.48; N,13.8%].
- 10
- (x) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 1(a)
but using Reference Example 1(x), there was prepared
2-benzyl-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-3H-benzimidazole-4-
carboxamide as a white solid, m.p. 162°C. [Elemental
15 analysis:- C,60.5; H,3.80; N,13.9%. Calculated:- C,60.5;
H,3.55; N,14.1%].

- (y) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 1(a)
but using Reference Example 1(y), there was prepared
20 2-cyclopentyl-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-1-
methyl-1H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide as a white solid,
m.p. 212°C. [Elemental analysis:- C,57.2; H,4.80;
N,13.2%. Calculated:- C,57.3; H,4.81; N,13.4%].

- 25 (z) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 1(a)
but using Reference Example 1(z), there was prepared
2-cyclopentyl-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-3-
methyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide as a white solid,
m.p. 180°C. [Elemental analysis:- C,57.2; H,4.80;
30 N,13.3%. Calculated:- C,57.3; H,4.81; N,13.4%].

- 176 -

(aa) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 1(a) but using Reference Example 1(aa), there was prepared N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-2,7-dimethoxy-3H-benzimidazole

5 -4-carboxamide as a white solid, m.p. 238-239°C.

[Elemental analysis:- C,48.8; H,3.20; N,15.1%.

Calculated:- C,49.1; H,3.29; N,15.3%].

(ab) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 1(a) but using Reference Example 1(ab), there was prepared

10 2-cyclopropyl-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide as a white solid, m.p.

253-254°C. [Elemental analysis:- C,54.13; H,3.74;

N,14.85%. Calculated:- C,54.07; H,3.71; N,14.85%].

15

(ac) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 1(a) but using 2,6-difluoroaniline and Reference Example 1(ab), there was prepared 2-cyclopropyl-N-

2,6-difluorophenyl)-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-

20 carboxamide as a white solid, m.p. 133-135°C. [Elemental analysis:- C,62.81; H,4.71; N,10.42%; F,11.55%.

Calculated for C₁₈H₁₅F₂N₃O₂•0.25CH₃OH:- C,62.39; H,4.59;

N,10.82%; F,11.96%].

25 (ad) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 1(a) but using 2,6-dibromoaniline and Reference Example 1(ab), there was prepared 2-cyclopropyl-N-(2,6-dibromophenyl)-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide as a white solid, m.p. 258-260°C. [Elemental analysis:- C,45.71;

- 177 -

H, 3.75; N, 9.33%. Calculated for $C_{18}H_{15}Br_2N_3O_2 \cdot CH_3OH$: -
C, 45.90; H, 3.85; N, 8.45%].

(ae) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 1(a)
5 but using 2,6-dimethylaniline and Reference Example
1(ab), there was prepared 2-cyclopropyl-N-
(2,6-dimethylphenyl)-7-methoxy-3H-
benzimidazole-4-carboxamide as a white solid, m.p.
247-249°C. [Elemental analysis:- C, 71.51; H, 6.54;
10 N, 12.33%. Calculated:- C, 71.62; H, 6.31; N, 12.53%].

(af) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 1(a)
but using 2,4,6-trifluoraniline and Reference Example
1(ab), there was prepared 2-cyclopropyl-N-
15 (2,4,6-trifluorophenyl)-7-methoxy-3H-
benzimidazole-4-carboxamide as a white solid, m.p.
161-163°C. [Elemental analysis:- C, 59.79; H, 3.65;
N, 11.52%; F, 11.52%. Calculated:- C, 59.83; H, 3.91;
N, 11.63%; F, 11.63%].

20

(ag) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 1(a)
but using 2,6-dichloroaniline and Reference Example
1(ab), there was prepared 2-cyclopropyl-N-
(2,6-dichlorophenyl)-7-methoxy-3H-
25 benzimidazole-4-carboxamide as a white solid, m.p.
225-227°C. [Elemental analysis:- C, 57.35; H, 4.04;
N, 11.10%; Cl, 18.78%. Calculated:- C, 57.46; H, 4.02;
N, 11.17%; Cl, 18.85%].

- 178 -

(ah) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 1(a) but using 4-amino-3,5-dimethylpyridine and Reference Example 1(ab), there was prepared 2-cyclopropyl-N-(3,5-dimethyl-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-

- 5 3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide as a white solid, m.p. 268-270°C. [Elemental analysis:- C,65.31; H,5.80; N,15.88%. Calculated for $C_{19}H_{20}N_4O_2 \cdot 0.2CH_2Cl_2$:- C,65.26; H,5.82; N,15.86%].

- 10 (ai) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 1(a) but using 4-amino-3,5-dimethylisoxazole and Reference Example 1(ab), there was prepared 2-cyclopropyl-N-(3,5-dimethyl-4-isoxazoly1)-7-methoxy-3H-
benzimidazole-4-carboxamide as a white solid, m.p. 232-234°C. [Elemental analysis:- C,62.32; H,5.85; N,17.08%. Calculated:- C,62.56; H,5.56; N,17.17%].

- (aj) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 1(a) but using 4-amino-3,5-dimethylisoxazole, there was
20 prepared N-(3,5-dimethyl-4-isoxazoly1)-7-methoxy-2-methoxymethyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide as a white solid, m.p. 232-234°C. [Elemental analysis:- C,58.69; H,5.50; N,16.81%. Calculated:- C,58.17; H,5.49; N,16.96%].

25

(ak) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 1(a) but using 4-amino-3,5-dimethylpyridine and Reference Example 1(ab), there was prepared 2-cyclopropyl-N-(4-carboxy-2,6-dimethylphenyl)-7-methoxy-3H-

- 179 -

benzimidazole-4-carboxamide as a white solid, m.p.

190-192°C. [Elemental analysis:- C,62.26; H,5.74;

N,10.21%. Calculated for $C_{21}H_{21}N_3O_4 \cdot 1.5H_2O$:- C,62.06;

H,5.95; N,10.33%].

5

(al) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 1(a)

but using 4-carboxy-2,6-dimethylaniline, there was

prepared N-(4-carboxy-2,6-dimethylphenyl)-7-methoxy-

2-methoxymethyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide as a white

10 solid, m.p. 251-253°C. [Elemental analysis:- C,61.73;

H,5.57; N,10.59%. Calculated for $C_{20}H_{21}N_3O_5 \cdot 0.25H_2O$:-

C,61.92; H,5.59; N,10.83%].

(am) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 1(a)

15 but using 4-amino-3-chloropyridine and Reference Example

1(ax), there was prepared N-(3-chloro-4-pyridyl)-7-

methoxy-2-n-propyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide as a

green solid, m.p. 272-274°C. [Elemental analysis:-

C,59.04; H,4.99; N,15.99%. Calculated:- C,59.22; H,4.97;

20 N,16.24%].

(an) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 1(a)

but using Reference Example 1(as), there was prepared

N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-8-methoxy-2-n-propylquinoline-

25 5-carboxamide as a white solid, m.p. 227-230°C.

[Elemental analysis:- C,58.43; H,4.12%. Calculated for

$C_{19}H_{17}Cl_2N_3O_2$:- C,58.47; H,4.39%].

(ao) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 1(a)

- 180 -

but using 4-amino-3,5-dichloro-pyridine N-oxide and Reference Example 1(ac), there was prepared 1-cyclohexylmethyl-3-methyl-N-(3,5-dichloro-1-oxido-4-pyridinio)-1H-indole-6-carboxamide as a white solid, m.p.

5 226-228°C. [Elemental analysis:- C,61.06; H,5.23; N,9.59%. Calculated for $C_{22}H_{23}Cl_2N_3O_2$:- C,61.12; H,5.36; N,9.72%].

(ap) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 1(a) but using 4-amino-3,5-dichloro-pyridine N-oxide and Reference Example 1(ad), there was prepared 1-cyclohexyl-3-methyl-N-(3,5-dichloro-1-oxido-4-pyridinio)-1H-indole-6-carboxamide as a white solid, m.p. 165-170°C. [Elemental analysis:- C,60.95; H,5.85; N,9.20%. Calculated for $C_{21}H_{21}Cl_2N_3O_2$:- C,60.30; H,5.06; N,10.04%].

(aq) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 1(a) but using 4-amino-3,5-dichloro-pyridine N-oxide and Reference Example 1(ae), there was prepared 1-(2-cyclohexyl)ethyl-3-methyl-N-(3,5-dichloro-1-oxido-4-pyridinio)-1H-indole-6-carboxamide as an off-white solid, m.p 125-140°C. [Elemental analysis:- C,60.95; H,5.85; N,9.20%. Calculated for $C_{23}H_{25}Cl_2N_3O_2$:- C,61.87; H,5.65; N,9.41%].

(ar) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 1(a) but using 4-amino-3,5-dichloro-pyridine N-oxide and Reference Example 1(af), there was prepared

- 181 -

1-(3-cyclohexyl)propyl-3-methyl-N-(3,5-dichloro-1-oxido-4-pyridinio)-1H-indole-6-carboxamide as a white solid, m.p 178°C. [Elemental analysis:- C,62.63; H,5.99; N,8.87%. Calculated for $C_{24}H_{27}Cl_2N_3O_2$:- C,62.61; H,5.91; N,9.13%].

(as) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 1(a) but using 4-amino-3,5-dichloro-pyridine N-oxide and Reference Example 1(ag), there was prepared 1-heptyl-3-methyl-N-(3,5-dichloro-1-oxido-4-pyridinio)-1H-indole-6-carboxamide as a white solid, m.p 170°C. [Elemental analysis:- C,60.72; H,5.83; N,9.51%. Calculated for $C_{22}H_{25}Cl_2N_3O_2$:- C,60.83; H,5.80; N,9.67%].

(at) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 1(a) but using 4-amino-3,5-dichloro-pyridine N-oxide and Reference Example 1(ah), there was prepared 1-cycloheptylmethyl-3-methyl-N-(3,5-dichloro-1-oxido-4-pyridinio)-1H-indole-6-carboxamide as a yellow solid, m.p 185°C. [Elemental analysis:- C,61.89; H,5.65; N,9.41%. Calculated for $C_{23}H_{25}Cl_2N_3O_2$:- C,61.6; H,5.40; N,9.70%].

(au) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 1(a) but using 4-amino-3,5-dichloro-pyridine N-oxide and Reference Example 1(ai), there was prepared 1-(6,6-dimethyl-bicyclo[3.1.1]hept-3-ylmethyl)-3-methyl-N-(3,5-dichloro-1-oxido-4-pyridinio)-1H-indole-6-carboxamide as an off-white solid, m.p 125-140°C.

- 182 -

[Elemental analysis:- C,62.37; H,5.78; N,8.51%.
Calculated for $C_{23}H_{25}Cl_2N_3O_2$:- C,63.50; H,5.76;
N,8.89%]. NMR ($CDCl_3$): δ 0.65(s,3H), 1.20(s,3H), 1.30-
1.40(m,1H), 1.40-1.50(m,1H), 1.65-1.70(m,1H), 1.75-
5 1.85(m,2H), 1.90-1.95(m,1H), 2.10-2.20(m,1H), 2.50-
2.60(m,1H), 3.90-4.00(m,2H), 7.00(s,1H), 7.50-
7.70(m,2H), 7.80(s,1H), 8.00(s,1H), 8.30(s,2H).

(av) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 1(a)
10 but using 4-amino-3,5-dichloro-pyridine N-oxide and
Reference Example 1(aj), there was prepared
1-(3-phenyl)butyl-3-methyl-N-(3,5-dichloro-1-oxido-4-
pyridinio)-1H-indole-6-carboxamide as a white solid, m.p
179°C. [Elemental analysis:- C,64.24; H,5.12; N,8.99%.
15 Calculated for $C_{25}H_{23}Cl_2N_3O_2$:- C,64.11; H,4.95;
N,8.97%].

(aw) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 1(a)
but using 4-amino-3,5-dichloro-pyridine N-oxide and
20 Reference Example 1(ak), there was prepared
N-(3,5-dichloro-1-oxido-4-pyridinio)-3-methyl-1-(4-
trifluoromethylbenzyl)-1H-indole-6-carboxamide as a
white solid, m.p 135°C. [Elemental analysis:- C,55.08;
H,3.37; N,8.32%. Calculated for $C_{23}H_{16}Cl_2F_3N_3O_2 \cdot 0.5H_2O$:-
25 C,54.86; H,3.41; N,8.35%]. NMR $\{(CD_3)_2SO\}$: δ
2.30(s,3H), 5.52(s,1H), 7.20-7.30(m,2H), 7.52(s,1H),
7.70-7.80(m,4H), 8.12(s,1H), 8.72(s,2H), 10.30(s,1H).

(ax) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 1(a)

- 183 -

but using 4-amino-3,5-dichloro-pyridine N-oxide and Reference Example 1(al), there was prepared
N-(3,5-dichloro-1-oxido-4-pyridinio)-3-methyl-1-(4-methylsulphonylbenzyl)-1H-indole-6-carboxamide as a
5 yellow solid, m.p 157-160°C. [Elemental analysis:- C,54.72; H,4.27; N,8.65%. Calculated for C₂₃H₁₉Cl₂N₃O₄S:- C,54.77; H,3.80; N,8.33%].

(ay) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 1(a)
10 but using 4-amino-3,5-dichloro-pyridine N-oxide and Reference Example 1(am), there was prepared
1-(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)methyl-N-(3,5-dichloro-1-oxido-4-pyridinio)-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide as a white
solid, m.p. >245°C. [Elemental analysis:- C,58.53;
15 H,3.77; N,8.69%. Calculated for C₂₃H₁₇Cl₂N₃O₄:- C,58.74; H,3.64;N,8.93%].

(az) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 1(a)
but using 4-amino-3,5-dichloro-pyridine N-oxide and
20 Reference Example 1(an), there was prepared
N-(3,5-dichloro-1-oxido-4-pyridinio)-3-methyl-1-(naphthalen-2-yl)methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide as a
white solid, m.p >230°C. NMR {(CD₃)₂SO}: δ 2.30(s,3H);
5.60(s,2H); 7.35-7.40,7.45-7.55,7.60-7.80 and 7.80-
25 7.90(m,10H); 8.20(s,1H); 8.70(s,2H); 10.30(s,1H).

(ba) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 1(a)
but using 4-amino-3,5-dichloro-pyridine N-oxide and Reference Example 1(ao), there was prepared

- 184 -

N-(3,5-dichloro-1-oxido-4-pyridinio)-3-methyl-1-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-2-yl)methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide

as a beige coloured solid, m.p >150°C with decomposition.

[Elemental analysis:- C,57.60; H,5.30; N,10.00%.

- 5 Calculated for $C_{21}H_{21}Cl_2N_3O_3$:- C,58.08; H,4.87; N,9.67%].

(bb) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 1(a) but using 4-amino-3,5-dichloro-pyridine N-oxide and

- 10 Reference Example 1(ap), there was prepared

N-(3,5-dichloro-1-oxido-4-pyridinio)-3-methyl-1-(tetrahydrofurfuryl)methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide as a

yellow solid, m.p 136°C with decomposition. [Elemental analysis:- C,55.08; H,3.37; N,8.32%. Calculated for

- 15 $C_{23}H_{16}Cl_2F_3N_3O_2 \cdot 0.425H_2O$:- C,55.89; H,3.26; N,8.50%].
M⁺419.

(bc) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 1(a) but using 4-amino-3,5-dichloro-pyridine N-oxide and

- 20 Reference Example 1(aq), there was prepared

N-(3,5-dichloro-1-oxido-4-pyridinio)-3-methyl-1-(4-toluenesulphonyl)-1H-indole-6-carboxamide as a light brown solid, m.p. >127°C with decomposition. [Elemental analysis:- C,53.90; H,3.60; N,8.40%. Calculated for

- 25 $C_{22}H_{17}Cl_2N_3O_4$:- C,53.89; H,3.49; N,8.57%].

(bd) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 1(a) but using 4-amino-3,5-dichloro-pyridine N-oxide and Reference Example 1(ar), there was prepared

- 185 -

N-(3,5-dichloro-1-oxido-4-pyridinio)-3-methyl-1-(tetrahydrofuran-3-yl)-1H-indole-6-carboxamide as a beige coloured solid, m.p. >135°C with decomposition. [Elemental analysis:- C,56.00; H,4.60; N,9.80%.
5 Calculated for C₁₉H₁₇Cl₂N₃O₃:- C,56.17; H,4.22; N,10.34%].

(be) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 1(a) but using Reference Example 1(at), there was prepared
10 N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide as a white solid, m.p. 223-225°C. [Elemental analysis:- C,56.00; H,3.50; N,12.90%. Calculated for C₁₅H₁₁Cl₂N₃O:- C,56.27; H,3.46; N,13.12%].

15 (bf) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 1(a) but using 4-amino-3,5-dichloro-pyridine N-oxide and Reference Example 1(au), there was prepared
1-butyloxycarbonyl-N-(3,5-dichloro-1-oxido-4-pyridinio)-3-methyl-indole-6-carboxamide as a white solid. NMR
20 {(CD₃)₂SO}: δ 1.60(s), 2.30(s), 7.60-7.70(m), 7.80-7.90(s), 8.70(s), 10.50(s).

(bg) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 1(a) but using Reference Example 1(aw), there was prepared
25 N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-1H-indole-6-carboxamide as a white solid.

(bh) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 1(a) but using Reference Example 1(av), there was prepared

- 186 -

1-benzyl-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-3-methyl-1H-indoline-6-carboxamide as a yellow solid, m.p. 223-225°C.

[Elemental analysis:- C, 63.56; H, 4.94; N, 9.53%.

Calculated for $C_{22}H_{19}Cl_2N_3O$:- C, 64.09; H, 4.69;

5 N, 10.19%]. NMR (CD_3Cl): δ 1.20-1.30(m, 1H); 1.30(m, 1H); 2.90-3.00(m, 1H); 3.30-3.40(m, 1H); 3.50-3.60(m, 1H); 4.20-4.30 and 4.40-4.50(m, 2H); 7.00(m, 1H); 7.10-7.40(m, 7H); 7.70(s, 1H); 8.60(s, 2H).

10 (bi) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 1(a) but using 4-aminopyridine and Reference Example 1(ai), there was prepared 1-(6,6-dimethyl-bicyclo[3.1.1]hept-2-ylmethyl)-3-methyl-N-(4-pyridyl)-1H-indole-6-carboxamide as a white solid. [Elemental analysis:- C, 76.08; H, 7.47;

15 N, 10.50%. Calculated for $C_{25}H_{29}N_3O \cdot 0.5H_2O$:- C, 75.66;

H, 7.63; N, 10.60%]. NMR ($CDCl_3$): δ 0.75(s, 3H), 1.1(s, 3H), 1.3-1.4(m, 1H), 1.4-1.5(m, 1H), 1.6-1.8(m, 4H), 1.8-1.9(m, 1H), 2.05-2.15(m, 1H), 2.3(s, 3H), 2.45-2.55(m, 1H), 3.8-3.9(m, 2H), 7.0(s, 1H), 7.4-7.5(m, 1H), 7.55-7.60, 7.6-20 7.65(m, 3H), 8.0(s, 1H), 8.2(s, 1H), 8.5(m, 2H).

(bj) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 1(a) but using 4-hydroxyaniline and Reference Example 1(av), there was prepared 1-benzyl-N-(4-hydroxyphenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide as a white solid, m.p. 230-231°C.

25

[Elemental analysis:- C, 75.46; H, 6.17; N, 7.05%.

Calculated for $C_{23}H_{20}N_2O_2 \cdot 0.6H_2O$:- C, 75.16; H, 5.82;

N, 7.63%]. NMR [$(CD_3)_2CO$]: δ 2.2(s, 3H), 5.5(s, 2H), 6.8-6.85(m, 2H), 7.2-7.3(m, 5H), 7.55-7.6(m, 3H), 7.7-

- 187 -

7.75(m,1H), 8.1(s,1H), 8.2(s,1H), 9.4(s,1H).

(bk) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 1(a) but using 4-aminopyrimidine and Reference Example 1(ae),
5 there was prepared 1-(2-cyclohexyl)ethyl-3-methyl-N-(4-pyrimidinyl)-1H-indole-6-carboxamide as a white solid, m.p. 192-194°C. [Elemental analysis:- C,73.22; H,7.24; N,15.18%. Calculated for C₂₂H₂₆N₄O:- C,72.90; H,7.23; N,15.46%]. NMR [(CD₃)₂CO]: δ 0.9-1.1, 1.1-1.3 (m,6H),
10 1.6-1.9(m,7H), 2.3(s,3H), 4.3-4.4(m,2H), 7.3(s,1H), 7.6-7.65, 7.8-7.85(m,2H), 8.3-8.4(m,2H), 8.6-8.7(m,1H), 8.9(s,1H), 9.8(m,1H).

(bl) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 1(a) but using 4-amino-3,5-dimethyl-[1,2,4]-triazole and
15 Reference Example 1(ai), there was prepared 1-(6,6-dimethyl-bicyclo[3.1.1]hept-2-ylmethyl)-N-(3,5-dimethyl-[1,2,4]-triazol-4-yl)-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide as a white solid, m.p. 135-140°C. [Elemental
20 analysis:- C,69.61; H,7.64; N,17.71%. Calculated for C₂₄H₃₁N₅O:- C,71.13; H,7.71; N,17.28%]. NMR (CDCl₃): δ 0.7(s,3H), 1.19(s,3H), 1.25-1.4, 1.4-1.45, 1.45-1.6, 1.6-1.7, 1.7-1.8, 1.8-1.9 (m,7H), 2.0-2.1 (s,1H), 2.3(s,3H), 2.35(s,3H), 2.4-2.55(m,1H), 3.-4.1(m,2H), 7.0(s,1H),
25 7.65-7.7, 7.9-7.95(m,2H), 8.35(s,1H).

- 188 -

EXAMPLE 2

(a) (RS)-2-(Cyclohexyl-phenyl)methyl-N-(3,5-dichloro-1-oxido-4-pyridinio)-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide

5 A solution of (RS)-2-(cyclohexyl-phenyl-methyl)-
N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-
carboxamide [0.545g, Example 1(g)] in chloroform (15ml)
was treated with meta-chloroperbenzoic acid (1.6g, 70%).
The reaction mixture was stirred at ambient temperature
10 for 15 hours, then diluted with chloroform. The mixture
was washed with saturated sodium bicarbonate solution,
then with water and then with brine. The organic phase
was dried over magnesium sulphate and then evaporated.
The residue was subjected to flash chromatography on
15 silica eluting with a mixture of ethyl acetate and
hexanes (2:1, v/v) to give the title compound (0.12g) as
a tan coloured solid, m.p. 310-312°C. [Elemental
analysis:- C,61.0; H,5.00; N,10.2; H₂O,1.70%. Calculated
for C₂₇H₂₆Cl₂N₄O₃•0.5H₂O:- C,60.6; H,5.09; N,10.5,
20 H₂O,1.07%].

(b) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 2(a) but
using Example 1(i), there was prepared
(RS)-N-(3,5-dichloro-1-oxido-4-pyridinio)-7-methoxy-2-
25 (2-phenyl)propyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide as a
yellow solid, m.p. 256-258°C. [Elemental analysis:-
C,57.4; H,4.40; N,11.4%. Calculated for
C₂₃H₂₀Cl₂N₄O₃•0.5H₂O:- C,57.1; H,4.41; N,11.7%].

- 189 -

(c) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 2(a) but using Example 1(l), there was prepared 2-(4-bromobenzyl)-N-(3,5-dichloro-1-oxido-4-pyridinio)-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide as a pale yellow solid, m.p. 248°C. [Elemental analysis:- C,48.1; H,3.10; N,10.0%. Calculated for $C_{21}H_{15}BrCl_2N_4O_3 \cdot 0.5H_2O$:- C,57.1; H,4.41; N,11.7%].

(d) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 2(a) but using Example 1(n), there was prepared 2-(4-cyanobenzyl)-N-(3,5-dichloro-1-oxido-4-pyridinio)-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide as a white solid, m.p. 253°C with decomposition. [Elemental analysis:- C,53.9; H,3.50; N,13.8; H_2O ,4.60%. Calculated for $C_{22}H_{15}Cl_2N_4O_3 \cdot 1.25H_2O$:- C,53.8; H,3.59; N,14.3; H_2O ,4.59%].

(e) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 2(a) but using Example 1(a), there was prepared N-(3,5-dichloro-1-oxido-4-pyridinio)-7-methoxy-2-methoxymethyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide as a white solid, m.p. 244-247°C. [Elemental analysis:- C,48.5; H,3.60; N,13.9%. Calculated:- C,48.4; H,3.55; N,14.1%].

(f) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 2(a) but using Example 1(e), there was prepared (RS)-N-(3,5-dichloro-1-oxido-4-pyridinio)-7-methoxy-2-(1-phenylethyl)-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide as an off-white solid. [Elemental analysis:- C,57.1; H,3.90; N,12.0%. Calculated for $C_{22}H_{18}Cl_2N_4O_3 \cdot 0.25H_2O$:- C,57.2;

- 190 -

H, 4.04; N, 12.1%]. NMR $\{(\text{CD}_3)_2\text{SO}\}$: δ 1.75 (d, $J=7.5\text{Hz}$, 3H), 4.03 (s, 3H), 4.46 (q, $J=7.5\text{Hz}$, 1H), 6.98 (d, $J=8\text{Hz}$, 1H), 7.3 (m, 5H), 7.88 (d, $J=8\text{Hz}$, 1H), 8.77 (s, 2H).

5

EXAMPLE 3

(a) 1-(2-Cyclopentyl-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazol-4-yl)-2-(4-pyridyl)ethanone

A solution of diisopropylamine (0.47ml) in tetrahydrofuran (6ml), cooled to -10°C , was treated dropwise, with a solution of butyl lithium in hexanes (1.2ml, 2.5M). The resulting solution was stirred for 10 minutes, then cooled to -78°C and then treated dropwise with a solution of 4-picoline (0.29ml) in tetrahydrofuran (1ml). This solution was stirred for 30 minutes then treated with a solution of methyl 2-cyclopentyl-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylate [0.274g, Reference Example 3(t)] in tetrahydrofuran (2ml). The cold bath was removed and the reaction mixture stirred for 15 minutes at ambient temperature. The mixture was quenched with water, then diluted with ethyl acetate. The organic phase was separated then washed with brine, then dried over magnesium sulphate and then evaporated. The residue was subjected to flash chromatography on silica, eluting with a mixture of methanol and dichloromethane (8:92, v/v), to give the title compound (0.126g) as a white solid. [Elemental analysis:- C, 71.7; H, 6.40; N, 12.5%. Calculated:- C, 71.6; H, 6.31; N, 12.5%]. NMR (CDCl_3): δ 1.63-2.05 (m, 6H), 2.2 (m, 2H), 3.33 (m, 1H), 4.11 (s, 3H), 4.35 (s, 2H),

- 191 -

6.72 (d, J=8Hz, 1H), 7.23 (m, 2H), 7.82 (d, J=8Hz, 1H),
8.6 (m, 2H).

(b) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference
5 Example 3(a), but using 3,5-dichloro-4-methylpyridine and
Reference Example 3(1), there was prepared
2-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-1-[1-(4-methoxybenzyl)-3-
methyl-1H-indol-6-yl]-ethanone as a white solid, m.p.
165-167°C. [Elemental analysis: C, 65.60; H, 4.80; N, 6.20%.
10 Calculated for C₂₄H₂₀Cl₂N₂O₂: C, 65.61; H, 4.59; N, 6.38%].

(c) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference
Example 3(a), but using 3,5-dichloro-4-methylpyridine and
Reference Example 3(s), there was prepared
15 2-(3,5-dichloro-pyridin-4-yl)-1-[1-(1-toluene-4-
sulphonyl)-3-methyl-1H-indol-6-yl]-ethanone as a yellow
solid, m.p. 193-198°C. [Elemental analysis: C, 57.90;
H, 3.90; N, 5.80%. Calculated for C₂₃H₁₈Cl₂N₂O₃S: C, 58.36;
H, 3.83; N, 5.92%].

20

(d) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference
Example 3(a), but using Reference Example 3(1), there
was prepared 1-[1-(4-methoxybenzyl)-3-methyl-1H-indol-6-
yl]-2-(4-pyridyl)-ethanone as a yellow solid, m.p. 109-
25 110°C. [Elemental analysis: C, 77.20; H, 6.30; N, 7.40%.
Calculated for C₂₄H₂₂N₂O₂•0.25H₂O: C, 76.86; H, 6.05;
N, 7.48%]. NMR (CDCl₃): δ 2.30 (s, 3H); 3.80 (s, 3H);
4.30 (s, 2H); 5.20 (s, 2H); 6.80 (s, 2H); 7.00-7.05 (m, 3H);
7.15-7.20 (m, 2H); 7.55-7.60 (m, 1H); 7.70-7.75 (m, 1H);

- 192 -

8.00 (s, 1H); 8.45-8.50 (m, 2H).

EXAMPLES 4 and 5

5 1-(7-Methoxy-2-methoxymethyl-3H-benzimidazol-4-yl)-2-
(4-pyridyl)ethanone and
1,3-bis-(4-pyridyl)-2-(7-methoxy-2-methoxymethyl-3H-
benzimidazol-4-yl)-propan-2-ol

A solution of diisopropylamine (1.51g) in tetrahydrofuran (15ml), under nitrogen, cooled to -10°C
10 was treated with butyl lithium in hexane (6ml, 2.5M). The solution was cooled to -78°C then treated dropwise with a solution of 4-picoline (1.40g) in tetrahydrofuran (10ml) followed by a solution of methyl 7-methoxy-2-methoxymethyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylate [1.25g,
15 Reference Example 3(a)] in tetrahydrofuran (15ml). The brown solution was allowed to warm to room temperature and the resulting yellow suspension was filtered. The insoluble material was washed with a little tetrahydrofuran then air dried. The yellow solid (2.3g)
20 was dissolved in water (75ml) and the solution extracted three times with dichloromethane (25ml). The combined extracts were dried over magnesium sulphate and then evaporated. The resulting yellow solid (1.53g) was subjected to flash chromatography on silica eluting
25 initially with a mixture of methanol and dichloromethane (5:95, v/v) to give 1-(7-methoxy-2-methoxymethyl-3H-benzimidazol-4-yl)-2-(4-pyridyl)ethanone (0.39g) recrystallised from toluene as a yellow solid, m.p. 218-220°C with decomposition. [Elemental analysis:-
30 C, 66.58; H, 5.53; N, 13.76%. Calculated:- C, 66.45; H, 5.50;

- 193 -

N,13.5%]; then eluting with a mixture of methanol and dichloromethane (1:9, v/v) to give

1,3-bis-(4-pyridyl)-2-(7-methoxy-2-methoxymethyl-3H-benzimidazol-4-yl)-propan-2-ol (0.4g) recrystallised from

5 methanol as a white solid, m.p. 210°C with decomposition.

[Elemental analysis:- C,68.40; H,5.94; N,13.85%.

Calculated:- C,68.30; H,5.98; N,14.00%].

EXAMPLE 6

10 7-Methoxy-2-methoxymethyl-4-[2-(4-pyridyl)ethyl]-3H-benzimidazole

A mixture of 1-(7-methoxy-2-methoxymethyl-3H-benzimidazol-4-yl)-2-(4-pyridyl)ethanone (0.92g, Example 4), hydrazine hydrate (0.8ml, 98%) and potassium
15 hydroxide (1.6g) in diethylene glycol (10ml) was heated at 100°C for 5 minutes. The resulting clear solution was heated at 160°C for 1 hour, then heated at 180°C for 2 hours whilst removing water at intervals from an attached air condenser. The red solution was cooled to
20 room temperature then poured into water (200ml). The mixture was extracted three times with dichloromethane (100ml). The combined extracts were dried over magnesium sulphate and then evaporated. The residue was subjected to flash chromatography on silica eluting with
25 a mixture of methanol and dichloromethane (5:95, v/v). Fractions containing the required product were combined and evaporated. The resulting solid was combined with material similarly prepared from 0.47g of
30 1-(7-methoxy-2-methoxymethyl-3H-benzimidazol-4-yl)-2-(4-pyridyl)ethanone and dissolved in dichloromethane

- 194 -

(50ml). The solution was washed with water (100ml) then dried over magnesium sulphate and then evaporated. The residual white solid (1.03g) was recrystallised from toluene to give the title compound (0.95g) as a white solid, m.p. 154-156°C. [Elemental analysis:- C,68.09; H,6.43; N,13.87%. Calculated:- C,68.67; H,6.44; N,14.13%].

EXAMPLE 7

10 2-(4-carboxamidobenzyl)-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide

A solution of 2-(4-cyanobenzyl)-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide [0.1g, Example 1(n)] in dimethyl sulphoxide (0.3ml) was treated with potassium carbonate (6mg) and hydrogen peroxide (0.05ml, 30%). The reaction mixture was stirred at ambient temperature for 12 hours then treated with water (50ml). The resulting solid was filtered and air dried to give the title compound (77%) as a white solid, m.p. 20 292-293°C. [Elemental analysis:- C,55.2; H,3.70; N,13.9; H₂O,1.90%. Calculated for C₂₂H₁₇Cl₂N₅O₃•0.5H₂O:- C,55.1; H,3.79; N,13.9, H₂O,1.88%]. NMR {(CD₃)₂SO}: δ 4.00(s,3H), 4.35(s,2H), 5.75(s,2H), 7.00(d,1H), 7.45(d,2H), 7.80(d,2H), 7.90(d,1H), 8.70(s,2H), 25 11.90(s,1H), 13.45(s,1H).

- 195 -

EXAMPLE 8

[2-(3-Chlorophenoxy)-pyridin-3-yl]-(7-methoxy-2-methoxymethyl-1H-benzimidazol-4-yl)-methanone

A solution of 3-bromo-2-(3-chlorophenoxy)pyridine
5 (0.43g, Reference Example 16) in dry tetrahydrofuran
(6ml), at -70°C, was treated with butyl lithium in hexane
(0.64ml, 2.5M). The mixture was then stirred at -70°C
for 45 minutes then treated with a solution of
1-benzotriazolyl 7-methoxy-2-methoxymethyl-3H-
10 benzimidazole-4-carboxylate [0.177g, Reference Example
1(a)] in dry tetrahydrofuran (2ml) and stirring was
continued at -70°C for 10 minutes. The reaction mixture
was allowed to warm to room temperature, then stirred at
this temperature for 2 hours, then treated with aqueous
15 ammonium chloride solution, and then extracted with ethyl
acetate (20ml). The organic extract was dried and
concentrated to give a brown syrup which was purified by
flash chromatography on silica eluting initially with a
mixture of diethyl ether and pentane (1:1, v/v), then
20 with a mixture of diethyl ether and pentane (7:3, v/v)
and then with diethyl ether to give the title compound
(0.04g) as white solid, m.p. 181-183°C. [Elemental
analysis:- C, 62.17, H, 4.32, N, 10.15%. Calculated :-
C, 62.35, H, 4.28, N, 9.91%]. NMR (CDCl₃):- δ 3.52 (s, 3H),
25 4.13 (s, 3H), 4.85 (s, 2H), 6.73 (d, J=8Hz, 1H), 7.00 (m, 1H),
7.12 (t, J=2Hz, 1H), 7.16 (m, 1H), 7.2 (dd, J=7Hz, J=5Hz, 1H),
7.28 (t, J=8Hz, 1H), 7.55 (d, J=8Hz, 1H),
7.85 (dd, J=8Hz, J=2Hz, 1H), 8.83 (dd, J=4Hz, J=1Hz, 1H).

- 196 -

EXAMPLE 9

(a) N-(3,5-dichloro-1-oxido-4-pyridinio)-7-methoxy-2-methoxymethyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide

A suspension of N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-2-methoxymethyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide [17.9g, Example 1(a)] in dichloromethane (325ml) was treated with a peracetic acid (140ml, 37% in acetic acid) giving a pale yellow solution which was stirred at ambient temperature for 48 hours. The solution was concentrated under reduced pressure, at ambient temperature, to remove the volatile solvent and the remaining solution was neutralised by the slow addition of a saturated aqueous sodium hydrogen carbonate solution (500ml). The solid which precipitated was collected by filtration then washed with water and then recrystallised from ethanol to give the title compound (12.7g) as a white solid.

(b) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 9(a) but using Example 1(t), there was prepared N-(3,5-dichloro-1-oxido-4-pyridinio)-2-isopropyl-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide recrystallised from ethanol as a white crystalline solid, m.p. 255-258°C with decomposition. [Elemental analysis:- C, 51.14; H, 4.13; N, 13.95%. Calculated:- C, 51.60; H, 4.05; N, 14.17%].

(c) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 9(a) but using Example 1(aa), there was prepared N-(3,5-dichloro-1-oxido-4-pyridinio)-2,7-dimethoxy-3H-

- 197 -

benzimidazole-4-carboxamide as a cream coloured solid, m.p. decomposes above 247°C. [Elemental analysis:- C,45.90; H,3.06; N,14.28%. Calculated:- C,46.97; H,3.13; N,14.62%].

5

EXAMPLE 10

2-Cyclopropyl-N-(3,5-dichloro-1-oxido-4-pyridinio)-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide

2-cyclopropyl-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-
10 3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide [0.45g, Example 1(ab)] was treated with peracetic acid (3ml, 32% in acetic acid) and the mixture heated at 60°C for 2.25 hours then left at room temperature for 18 hours. The reaction mixture was diluted with diethyl ether (60ml), then cooled and then
15 filtered. The yellow solid was heated with ethanol (40ml) then filtered to remove a small amount of insoluble solid. The filtrate was concentrated to about 25ml volume and stood at ambient temperature. The resulting yellow crystals were filtered and combined with
20 a separate batch synthesised in a similar manner from 0.40g of 2-cyclopropyl-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide. The combined material was heated with methanol (50ml) then filtered to remove a small amount of insoluble solid. The filtrate
25 was concentrated to about 25ml volume and stood at ambient temperature. The resulting yellow crystals were filtered, washed with methanol and then with diethyl ether to give the title compound (0.185g) as cream coloured crystals, m.p. 271-274°C. [Elemental analysis:-

- 198 -

C, 51.91; H, 3.59; N, 14.24%. Calculated:- C, 52.12; H, 3.53; N, 14.26%].

EXAMPLE 11

- 5 (a) 2-Cyclopropyl-4-(3,5-dimethyl-4-pyridylmethoxy)-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole

A stirred solution of 2-cyclopropyl-7-(3,5-dimethyl-4-pyridylmethoxy)-4-methoxy-1(or 3)-(2-trimethylsilanylethoxymethyl)-1H(or 3H)-benzimidazole (3.49mMol,
10 Reference Example 17) in methylated spirits (50ml) was treated with hydrochloric acid (50ml, 5M) and the mixture was then heated at reflux for 5 hours. The resulting solution was cooled to room temperature and then evaporated. The residue was partitioned between water
15 (10ml) and ethyl acetate (50ml). The pH of the aqueous phase was adjusted to 8, with cooling, and the resulting white solid was washed with water, then with ethyl acetate, then dried at 70°C to afford the title compound (0.47g) as a cream coloured solid, m.p. 152-155°C.
20 [Elemental analysis:- C, 62.60; H, 6.65; N, 11.52%. Calculated:- C, 70.57; H, 6.55; N, 12.99%].

- (b) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 11(a) but using Reference Example 18, there was prepared
25 4-(3,5-dimethyl-4-pyridylmethoxy)-7-methoxy-2-methoxymethyl-3H-benzimidazole as a cream coloured solid, m.p. 196-198°C. [Elemental analysis:- C, 65.74; H, 6.63; N, 12.77%. Calculated:- C, 66.04; H, 6.47; N, 12.83%].

- 30 (c) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 11(a)

- 199 -

but using Reference Example 36, there was prepared ethyl 5-(2-cyclopropyl-7-methoxy-benzimidazole-4-yl)pyridine-2-carboxylate as cream coloured solid, m.p. 126-128°C.

- 5 (d) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 11(a) but using Reference Example 34 there was prepared 2-cyclopropyl-7-methoxy-4-(4-morpholinosulphonyl)-3H-benzimidazole as white solid, m.p. 294-295°C.

10

EXAMPLE 12

- (a) 1-Benzyl-7-methoxy-2-methoxymethyl-4-(2-(4-pyridyl)ethyl)-1H-benzimidazole hydrochloride dihydrate

- A solution of 7-methoxy-2-methoxymethyl-4-[2-(4-pyridyl)ethyl]-3H-benzimidazole (0.35g, Example 6) and dimethylformamide (10ml) was treated with sodium hydride (0.06g, 60% dispersion in mineral oil) under argon. After stirring at room temperature the mixture was treated with benzyl bromide (0.15ml) and stirring was continued for 16 hours. The reaction mixture was evaporated and the residue was treated with hydrochloric acid solution (20ml, 1M) then washed with three portions of ethyl acetate (20ml). The pH of the aqueous phase was adjusted to 12 by addition of sodium hydroxide solution (1M). The resulting solid was filtered, then dried, then dissolved in isopropanol (2ml) and then treated with a few drops of concentrated hydrochloric acid. The mixture was allowed to stand at room temperature for 16 hours and the solid formed was filtered, then washed with isopropanol and then dried at 90°C under vacuum to give

- 200 -

the title compound as a white solid (0.2g), m.p. 193-196°C (decomposed). [Elemental analysis:- C,61.3; H,6.1; N,9.2%. Calculated:- C,62.6; H,6.3; N,9.1%].

5 (b) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 12(a) but using Example 1(be) and chloromethylcyclohexane there was prepared 1-cyclohexylmethyl-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide as a yellow solid, m.p. 147-151°C. [Elemental analysis: C,62.97; 10 H,5.83; N,9.52%. Calculated for $C_{22}H_{23}Cl_2N_3O \cdot 0.3H_2O$: C,62.63; H,5.64; N,9.97%].

(c) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 12(a) but using Example 1(be) and (2-chloroethyl)-cyclohexane, 15 there was prepared 1-(2-cyclohexyl)ethyl-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide as a white solid, m.p. 163-165°C. [Elemental analysis: C,63.00; H,5.79; N,9.71%. Calculated for $C_{23}H_{25}Cl_2N_3O \cdot 0.25H_2O$: C,63.50; H,5.91; N,9.97%].

20

(d) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 12(a) but using Example 1(be) and 3-cyclohexyl-chloropropane there was prepared 1-[3-(cyclohexyl)propyl]-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide as 25 a white solid, m.p. 174-176°C. [Elemental analysis: C,64.69; H,5.98; N,9.43%. Calculated for $C_{24}H_{27}Cl_2N_3O$: C,64.89; H,6.12; N,9.46%].

(e) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 12(a)

- 201 -

but using Example 1(be) and 1-chloroheptane there was prepared N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-3-methyl-1-heptyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide as a white solid, m.p. 151-152°C.

[Elemental analysis: C,62.94; H,5.80; N,9.84%. Calculated
5 for C₂₂H₂₅Cl₂N₃O: C,63.16; H,6.02; N,10.04%].

(i) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 12(a) but using Example 1(be) and 2-(chloromethyl)tetrahydro-2H-pyran there was prepared N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-3-methyl-1-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-2-yl)methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide as a white solid, m.p. 159-161°C.

[Elemental analysis: C,60.20; H,5.30; N,9.80%. Calculated
for C₂₁H₂₁Cl₂N₃O₂: C,60.30; H,5.06; N,10.04%].

15 (j) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 12(a) but using Example 1(be) and 2-(chloromethyl)-tetrahydrofuran there was prepared N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-3-methyl-1-(tetrahydrofuran-2-yl)methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide as a yellow solid, m.p. 189-191°C.

20 [Elemental analysis: C,59.40; H,4.90; N,10.00%. Calculated for C₂₀H₁₉Cl₂N₃O₂: C,59.42; H,4.74; N,10.39%].

(k) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 12(a) but using Example 1(be) and 4-toluenesulphonyl chloride there was prepared N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-3-methyl-1-(toluene-4-sulphonyl)-1H-indole-6-carboxamide as a white solid, m.p. 186-190°C. [Elemental analysis: C,55.48; H,3.95; N,8.43%. Calculated for C₂₂H₁₇Cl₂N₃O₃S: C,55.70;

- 202 -

H,3.61; N,8.86%].

(l) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 12(a) but using Example 1(be) and 3-chlorotetrahydrofuran there was prepared N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-3-methyl-1-(tetrahydrofuran-3-yl)-1H-indole-6-carboxamide as a beige coloured solid, m.p. 184°C. [Elemental analysis: C,58.30; H,4.60; N,10.30%. Calculated for C₁₉H₁₇Cl₂N₃O₂: C,58.48; H,4.39; N,10.77%].

10

(m) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 12(a) but using Example 1(be) and 3-methoxy-chlorocyclopentane there was prepared N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-3-methyl-1-(3-methoxy)cyclopentyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide as a beige coloured solid, m.p. 100-120°C with decomposition. [Elemental analysis: C,59.90; H,5.10; N,9.80%. Calculated for C₂₁H₂₁Cl₂N₃O₂: C,60.30; H,5.06; N,10.04%].

15

(n) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 12(a) but using Example 1(be) and 5-chloro-2-chloromethyl-thiophene there was prepared N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-3-methyl-1-(5-chlorothiophen-2-yl)methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide as a yellow solid, m.p. >165°C with decomposition. [Elemental analysis: C,52.84; H,2.98; N,9.04%. Calculated for C₂₀H₁₄Cl₃N₃O: C,53.29; H,3.13; N,9.32%].

20

25

(o) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 12(a) but using Example 1(be) and 4-(chloromethyl)-3,5-

- 203 -

dimethylisoxazole there was prepared N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-3-methyl-1-(3,5-dimethylisoxazol-4-yl)methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide as a white solid, m.p. 243-246°C.

[Elemental analysis: C, 58.62; H, 4.43; N, 12.72%.

5 Calculated for $C_{21}H_{18}Cl_2N_4O_2$: C, 58.75; H, 4.23; N, 13.05%].

(p) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 12(a) but using N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide [Example 1(be)] and 4-chloromethyl-2-

10 methyl-thiazole there was prepared N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-3-methyl-1-(2-methyl-thiazol-4-yl)methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide as a white solid, m.p. 217-219°C.

[Elemental analysis: C, 55.22; H, 3.63; N, 12.74%.

Calculated for $C_{20}H_{16}Cl_2N_4OS \cdot 0.25H_2O$: C, 55.10; H, 3.82;

15 N, 12.86%].

(q) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 12(a) but using Example 1(be) and methyl 2-chloromethylfuran-2-carboxylate there was prepared methyl 5-[6-(3,5-dichloro-

20 pyridin-4-ylcarbamoyl)-3-methyl-indol-1-ylmethyl]-furan-2-carboxylate as a white solid, m.p. 217°C. [Elemental

analysis: C, 57.03; H, 3.50; N, 8.88%. Calculated for

$C_{22}H_{17}Cl_2N_3O_4 \cdot 0.25H_2O$: C, 57.05; H, 3.81; N, 9.08%].

25 (r) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 12(a) but using Example 1(be) and 3-chloromethyl-5-phenyl-[1,2,4]-oxadiazole there was prepared N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-3-methyl-1-(5-phenyl-[1,2,4]oxadiazol-3-yl)methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide as a white solid, m.p.

- 204 -

225-227°C. [Elemental analysis: C, 59.24; H, 3.73; N, 14.09%. Calculated for $C_{24}H_{17}Cl_2N_5O_2 \cdot 0.5H_2O$: C, 59.13; H, 3.72; N, 14.38%].

5 (s) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 12(a) but using Example 1(be) and 4-(2-chloroethyl)-morpholine there was prepared N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-3-methyl-1-(2-morpholin-4-yl)ethyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide as a yellow solid, m.p. 172°C. [Elemental analysis: C, 57.78; 10 H, 5.07; N, 12.76%. Calculated for $C_{21}H_{22}Cl_2N_4O_2$: C, 58.21; H, 5.12; N, 12.93%].

(t) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 12(a) but using Example 1(be) and methyl 5-chloro-pentanoate 15 there was prepared methyl 5-[6-(3,5-dichloro-pyridin-4-ylcarbamoyl)-3-methyl-indole-1-yl]-pentanoate as a white solid, m.p. 134°C. [Elemental analysis: C, 58.09; H, 5.05; N, 9.50%. Calculated for $C_{21}H_{21}Cl_2N_3O_3$: C, 58.07; H, 4.87; N, 9.67%].

20

(u) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 12(a) but using Example 1(be) and 4-trifluoromethylbenzyl chloride there was prepared N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-1-(4-trifluorobenzyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide as a 25 white solid, m.p. 221-222°C. [Elemental analysis: C, 57.63; H, 3.39; N, 8.81%. Calculated for $C_{23}H_{16}Cl_2F_3N_3O$: C, 57.76; H, 3.37; N, 8.79%].

(v) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 12(a)

- 205 -

but using Example 1(be) and 4-methylsulphonylbenzyl chloride there was prepared N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-3-methyl-1-(4-methylsulphonylbenzyl)-1H-indole-6-carboxamide as a white solid, m.p. 125-140°C. NMR(CDCl₃):

5 δ 2.3(3H,s), 3.2(3H,s), 5.6(2H,s), 7.3-7.4(2H,m),
7.5(1H,s), 7.6-7.75(2H,m), 7.9(2H,m), 8.1(1H,s),
8.7(2H,s).

(w) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 12(a) but using Example 1(be) and 4-methoxycarbonylbenzyl chloride there was prepared N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-1-(4-methoxycarbonylbenzyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide as a white solid, m.p. 172-174°C.
[Elemental analysis: C,61.10; H,4.02; N,8.81%. Calculated
15 for C₂₄H₁₉Cl₂N₃O₃: C,61.55; H,4.09; N,8.97%].

(x) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 12(a) but using Example 1(be) and 3-nitrobenzyl chloride there was prepared N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-3-methyl-1-(3-nitrobenzyl)-1H-indole-6-carboxamide as a yellow solid,
20 m.p. 239-240°C. [Elemental analysis: C,57.63; H,3.75; N,11.80%. Calculated for C₂₂H₁₆Cl₂N₄O₃•0.25H₂O: C,57.45; H,3.62; N,12.19%].

25 (y) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 12(a) but using Example 1(be) and 2-chloromethylnaphthalene there was prepared N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-1-(naphthalen-2-yl)methyl-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide as a white solid, m.p. 241-243°C. [Elemental analysis:

- 206 -

C, 67.32; H, 4.02; N, 9.06%. Calculated for

$C_{26}H_{19}Cl_2N_3O \cdot 0.25H_2O$: C, 67.15; H, 4.23; N, 9.05%].

- (z) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 12(a) but using Example 1(be) and 2-chloromethyl-4-biphenyl there was prepared N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-1-(biphenyl-4-yl)methyl-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide as a white solid, m.p. 229-230°C. [Elemental analysis: C, 68.63; H, 4.63; N, 8.26%. Calculated for $C_{28}H_{21}Cl_2N_3O \cdot 0.25H_2O$: C, 68.48; H, 4.42; N, 8.57%].

- (aa) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 12(a) but using Example 1(be) and 1-benzyl-2-(chloromethyl)-imidazole there was prepared N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-3-methyl-1-(1-benzyl-imidazol-2-yl)methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide as a yellow solid, m.p. 92-94°C.

EXAMPLE 13

- (a) 1-Cyclohexylmethyl-3-methyl-N-(3,5-dichloro-1-oxido-4-pyridinio)-1H-indole-6-carboxamide

A solution of N-(3,5-dichloro-1-oxido-4-pyridinio)-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide (0.25g, Example 14) in a mixture of dimethyl sulphoxide (5ml) and tetrahydrofuran (5ml) was added to a suspension of sodium hydride (0.045g) in a mixture of dimethyl sulphoxide (2ml) and tetrahydrofuran (2ml) at 0°C. The mixture was stirred for 15 minutes then treated with cyclohexylbromide (0.142g) in a mixture of dimethyl sulphoxide (3ml) and tetrahydrofuran (3ml). This mixture was stirred at 0°C

- 207 -

for 10 minutes then allowed to warm to room temperature. The reaction mixture was quenched with ice-water then diluted with water and then extracted three times with dichloromethane (15ml). The combined extracts were washed three times with water (25ml), then with brine (15ml), then dried over sodium sulphate and then evaporated. The residue was subjected to flash column chromatography on silica eluting with a mixture of ethyl acetate and hexane (gradient elution, 4:1 to 4:0, v/v) to give the title compound (0.19g) as a white solid, m.p. 127°C.

(b) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 13(a) but using 4-methoxycarbonylbenzyl bromide there was prepared 1-(4-methoxycarbonylbenzyl)-3-methyl-N-(3,5-dichloro-1-oxido-4-pyridinio)-1H-indole-6-carboxamide as a white solid, m.p 169-172°C. [Elemental analysis:- C, 57.43; H, 4.26; N, 8.15%. Calculated for $C_{24}H_{19}Cl_2N_3O_4 \cdot H_2O$:- C, 57.36; H, 4.22; N, 8.37%]. NMR $\{(CD_3)_2CO\}$: δ 2.30 (s, 3H); 3.80 (s, 3H); 5.60 (s, 2H); 7.20-7.30 (s, 2H); 7.40 (s, 1H); 7.60-7.65 (m, 1H); 7.75-7.80 (m, 1H); 7.85-7.90 (m, 2H); 8.29 (s, 1H); 8.35 (s, 2H); 9.50 (bs, 1H).

(c) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 13(a) but using 4-carboxybenzyl bromide there was prepared 1-(4-carboxybenzyl)-3-methyl-N-(3,5-dichloro-1-oxido-4-pyridinio)-1H-indole-6-carboxamide as a white solid, m.p 255-257°C with decomposition. [Elemental analysis:-

- 208 -

C, 58.05; H, 3.84; N, 8.66%. Calculated for $C_{23}H_{17}Cl_2N_3O_4$:-
C, 58.74; H, 3.64; N, 8.93%].

- (d) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 13(a)
5 but using (5-chlorothiophen-2-yl)methyl bromide there was prepared 1-(5-chlorothiophen-2-yl)methyl-N-(3,5-dichloro-1-oxido-4-pyridinio)-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide as a beige coloured solid, m.p 140-142°C with decomposition. [Elemental analysis:- C, 50.95; H, 3.13; N, 8.38%.
10 Calculated for $C_{20}H_{14}Cl_3N_3O_2S \cdot 0.4H_2O$:- C, 50.65; H, 3.152; N, 8.87%]. NMR $\{(CD_3)_2SO\}$: δ 2.30 (s, 3H); 5.50 (s, 2H); 7.00 (s, 2H); 7.40-7.45 (m, 1H); 7.60-7.65 and 7.70-7.75 (m, 2H); 8.20 (s, 1H); 8.70 (s, 2H); 10.30 (bs, 1H).
- (e) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 13(a)
15 but using 1-benzyl-2-(chloromethyl)imidazole there was prepared 1-(1-benzyl-imidazol-2-yl)methyl-N-(3,5-dichloro-1-oxido-4-pyridinio)-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide as a white solid, m.p >112°C with
20 decomposition. NMR $\{(CD_3)_2CO\}$: δ 2.20 (s, 3H); 5.20 (s, 2H); 5.40 (s, 2H); 6.90-7.00 (m, 3H); 7.10-7.15 (m, 2H); 7.15-7.20 (m, 3H); 7.50-7.55 and 7.70-7.75 (m, 1H); 8.30 (s, 1H); 8.40 (s, 2H); 9.60 (bs, 1H).
- (f) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 13(a)
25 but using 4-(chloromethyl)-2-methylthiazole there was prepared 1-(2-methylthiazol-4-yl)methyl-N-(3,5-dichloro-1-oxido-4-pyridinio)-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide as a yellow solid, m.p 125-127°C with decomposition.

- 209 -

[Elemental analysis:- C,53.25; H,3.65; N,12.25%.

Calculated for $C_{20}H_{16}Cl_2N_4O_2$:- C,53.70; H,3.61;

N,12.52%].

- 5 (g) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 13(a) but using methyl 5-(bromomethyl)-furan-2-carboxylate there was prepared methyl 5-[6-N-(3,5-dichloro-1-oxido-4-pyridinio)carbamoyl-3-methyl-indol-1-ylmethyl]-furan-2-carboxylate as a white solid, m.p 196-198°C. [Elemental
- 10 analysis:- C,57.20; H,4.80; N,9.70%. Calculated for $C_{20}H_{19}Cl_2N_3O_4$:- C,57.16; H,4.56; N,10.00%].

- (h) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 13(a) but using 4-(chloromethyl)-3,5-dimethylisoxazole there
- 15 was prepared 1-(3,5-dimethylisoxazol-4-yl)methyl-N-(3,5-dichloro-1-oxido-4-pyridinio)-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide as a yellow solid, m.p 145-148°C. [Elemental
- analysis:- C,55.16; H,4.02; N,12.10%. Calculated for $C_{21}H_{18}Cl_2N_3O_3$:- C,56.64; H,4.07; N,12.58%].

20

- (i) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 12(a) but using 4-(chloromethyl)-2-methylthiazole there was prepared 1-(2-methylthiazol-4-yl)methyl-N-(3,5-dichloro-1-oxido-4-pyridinio)-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide as
- 25 a yellow solid, m.p 125-127°C with decomposition. [Elemental analysis:- C,53.25; H,3.65; N,12.25%. Calculated for $C_{20}H_{16}Cl_2N_4O_2$:- C,53.70; H,3.61; N,12.52%].

- 210 -

EXAMPLE 14

N-(3,5-Dichloro-1-oxido-4-pyridinio)-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide

1-Butyloxycarbonyl-N-(3,5-dichloro-1-oxido-4-pyridinio)-
5 3-methyl-indole-6-carboxamide (0.2g, Example 1(bf)) was
heated at 170-180°C for 10 minutes to give the title
compound as a white solid which was used without further
purification. NMR {(CD₃)₂SO}: δ 2.30(s), 7.30(s), 7.50-
7.60(m), 8.00(s), 8.70(s), 10.30(s), 11.20(s).

10

EXAMPLE 15

(a) N-(3,5-Dichloro-pyridin-4-yl)-3-ethyl-1-
(toluene-4-sulphonyl)-1H-indole-6-carboxamide

A stirred solution of N-(3,5-dichloro-pyridin-4-yl)-3-(1-
15 hydroxyethyl)-1-(toluene-4-sulphonyl)-1H-indole-6-
carboxamide [0.06g, Example 16(a)] in dichloromethane
(2ml), under nitrogen and at 0°C, was treated with
triethylsilane (0.028g,) and boron trifluoride dietherate
(0.015ml). The mixture was allowed to warm to room
20 temperature and then stirred at this temperature for 3
hours. The solution was partitioned between ethyl
acetate (15ml) and saturated sodium bicarbonate solution
(15ml). The organic layer was dried over sodium sulphate
then evaporated. The residue was subjected to flash
25 column chromatography on silica eluting with a mixture of
ethyl acetate and hexane (gradient elution, 1:3 to 2:1,
v/v) to give the title compound (22mg) as a white solid,
m.p. 147-149°C. [Elemental analysis:- C, 56.69; H, 4.04;
N, 8.15%. Calculated for C₂₃H₁₉Cl₂N₃O₃S:- C, 56.56; H, 3.92;

- 211 -

N, 8.60%].

(b) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 15(a) but using N-(3,5-dichloro-pyridin-4-yl)-3-(1-hydroxy-1-methyl-propyl)-1-(toluene-4-sulphonyl)-1H-indole-6-carboxamide, Example 16(b), there was prepared N-(3,5-dichloro-pyridin-4-yl)-3-(2-methyl-propyl)-1-(toluene-4-sulphonyl)-1H-indole-6-carboxamide as a white solid, m.p. 104-108°C. [Elemental analysis:- C, 58.84; H, 4.67; N, 7.80%. Calculated for C₂₅H₂₃Cl₂N₃O₃S:- C, 58.14; H, 4.49; N, 8.14%].

EXAMPLE 16

(a) N-(3,5-Dichloro-pyridin-4-yl)-3-(1-hydroxyethyl)-1-(toluene-4-sulphonyl)-1H-indole-6-carboxamide
A stirred solution of N-(3,5-dichloro-pyridin-4-yl)-3-formyl-1-(toluene-4-sulphonyl)-1H-indole-6-carboxamide (0.1g, Example 17) in tetrahydrofuran (3ml), at 0°C, was treated with a solution of methylmagnesium bromide in diethyl ether (0.11ml, 3M). The mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature then stirred for 2 hours. The reaction mixture was quenched with water (15ml) and then extracted with ethyl acetate (15ml). The organic extract was dried over sodium sulphate then evaporated. The residue was subjected to flash column chromatography on silica eluting with a mixture of ethyl acetate and hexane (2:1, v/v) to yield the title compound (68mg) as a white solid, m.p. 206-211°C. [Elemental analysis:- C, 55.07; H, 4.00; N, 7.92%. Calculated for C₂₃H₁₉Cl₂N₃O₄S:- C, 54.77;

- 212 -

H,3.80; N,8.33%].

(b) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 16(a) but using isopropylmagnesium chloride there was prepared
5 N-(3,5-dichloro-pyridin-4-yl)-3-(1-hydroxy-2-methyl-propyl)-1-(toluene-4-sulphonyl)-1H-indole-6-carboxamide.

EXAMPLE 17

N-(3,5-Dichloro-pyridin-4-yl)-3-formyl-1-(toluene-4-sulphonyl)-1H-indole-6-carboxamide
10

A stirred solution of N-(3,5-dichloro-pyridin-4-yl)-3-formyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide (0.518g, Example 18) in dimethylformamide at 0°C was treated with sodium hydride (0.136g). The mixture was stirred for 15 minutes, then cooled
15 to -40°C and then treated with 4-toluenesulphonyl chloride (0.325g). The reaction mixture was gradually allowed to warm to -20°C over a period of 90 minutes, then quenched with water (20ml), then extracted three times with ethyl acetate (25ml). The combined extracts were dried over sodium sulphate then
20 evaporated to give the title compound (800mg), which was used without further purification as a white solid, m.p. 245°C.
[Elemental analysis:- C,53.91; H,3.34; N,8.30%. Calculated for C₂₂H₁₅Cl₂N₃O₄S:- C,54.11; H,3.10; N,8.60%].

25

EXAMPLE 18

N-(3,5-Dichloro-pyridin-4-yl)-3-formyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide

A stirred solution of dimethylformamide (10ml), under nitrogen and at 0°C, was treated with phosphorus

- 213 -

oxychloride (0.6ml). After stirring for 30 minutes at 0°C the mixture was treated with a solution of N-(3,5-dichloro-pyridin-4-yl)-1H-indole-6-carboxamide [1.55g, Example 1(bg)] in dimethylformamide (5ml). The mixture
5 was then heated at 40°C for 45 minutes then cooled to room temperature and then partitioned between ethyl acetate (25ml) and saturated sodium bicarbonate (50ml). The organic layer was washed with water (75ml) then dried over sodium sulphate then evaporated. The residue was
10 subjected to flash chromatography on silica eluting with a mixture of ethyl acetate and hexane (1:2, v/v) to yield the title compound (0.53g) as a white solid. [Elemental analysis:- C, 53.83; H, 2.99; N, 12.31%. Calculated for C₁₅H₉Cl₂N₃O₂:- C, 53.92; H, 2.71; N, 12.57%].

15

EXAMPLE 19

1-Benzyl-4-[3-methyl-1-(3-phenyl-propyl)-1H-indole-6-yl]-pyrrolidine-2-one

A solution of sodium hydride (0.013g) in tetrahydrofuran
20 at 0°C, under argon, was treated with a solution of 4-[3-methyl-1-(3-phenyl-propyl)-1H-indole-6-yl]-pyrrolidine-2-one (0.184g, Example 20) and benzyl bromide (0.094g) in dry tetrahydrofuran. The mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature then treated with
25 N,N'-dimethylpropyleneurea (0.05g). After stirring at room temperature overnight the solution was partitioned between ethyl acetate (15ml) and 1N hydrochloric acid (15ml). The organic phase was dried over magnesium sulphate then evaporated. The residue was subjected to

- 214 -

preparative layer chromatography on silica using a mixture of ethyl acetate and hexane (3:7, v/v) as eluent to yield the title compound (0.18g) as an oil.

[Elemental analysis:- C, 79.16; H, 6.98; N, 6.14%.

5 Calculated for $C_{29}H_{30}N_2O \cdot H_2O$:- C, 79.04; H, 7.33; N, 6.36%].

EXAMPLE 20

4-[3-Methyl-1-(3-phenyl-propyl)-1H-indole-6-yl]-pyrrolidine-2-one

10 A solution of methyl 3-(3-methyl-1-{3-(phenyl)propyl}-1H-indol-6-yl)-3-nitromethyl-propionate (0.296g, Reference Example 38) in methanol (100ml), under argon, was treated with excess Raney® nickel. The argon atmosphere was replaced by hydrogen at 1 atmosphere then the mixture was
15 stirred at room temperature for 2 hours. The reaction mixture was filtered through celite. The filtrate was evaporated and the residual crude methyl 3-(3-methyl-1-{3-(phenyl)propyl}-1H-indol-6-yl)-3-aminomethyl-propionate was dissolved in sodium hydroxide solution
20 (15ml, 1N). After stirring at room temperature for 1 hour the reaction mixture was extracted three times with ethyl acetate (15ml). The combined extracts were dried over sodium sulphate then evaporated. The residue was subjected to preparative layer chromatography on silica
25 using a mixture of ethyl acetate and hexane (1:1, v/v) as eluent to yield the title compound (0.198g) as an oil.

NMR ($CDCl_3$): δ 2.05-2.15(m); 2.30(s); 2.55-2.60(m); 2.65-2.70(m); 2.85-2.95(m); 3.30-3.40(m); 3.60-3.70(m); 3.90-4.00(m); 4.40-4.60(m); 6.80-7.40(m). $M^+ 332.1941$.

- 215 -

EXAMPLE 211-(4-Methoxybenzyl)-3-methyl-6-(1-phenyl-2-pyridin-4-yl-ethyl)-1H-indole

5 A solution of cis- and trans-[1-(4-methoxybenzyl)-3-methyl-6-(1-phenyl-2-pyridin-4-yl-vinyl)-1H-indole (70mg, Example 22) in a mixture of tetrahydrofuran and methanol (20ml; 1:1, v/v) was heated at 45-50°C under an atmosphere of hydrogen in the presence of 6% palladium on
10 activated charcoal then stirred overnight at room temperature. The mixture was filtered through celite then evaporated. The residue was subjected to high pressure liquid chromatography using a hypersilC18 BDS column (250 x 20ml, 8 micron) and eluting with methanol
15 containing 0.1% ammonium hydroxide to yield the title compound (13mg) as an oil. NMR (CDCl₃): δ 2.30(s,3H); 3.30-3.40(m,2H); 3.70(s,3H); 4.30-4.40(m,1H); 5.10(s,2H); 6.80-7.50 (m,13H); 8.30-8.35(m,2H); 8.50(bs,2H).

20

EXAMPLE 22cis- and trans-[1-(4-Methoxybenzyl)-3-methyl-6-(1-phenyl-2-pyridin-4-yl-vinyl)-1H-indole

A stirred solution of 6-(1-hydroxy-1-phenyl-2-pyridin-4-yl)ethyl-1-(4-methoxybenzyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole (50mg,
25 Example 23) in benzene (1.5ml) at 0°C was treated with 4-toluenesulphonic acid (42mg). After stirring at 0°C for 20 minutes the reaction mixture was partitioned between ethyl acetate (10ml) and saturated sodium bicarbonate solution (10ml). The organic layer was dried

- 216 -

over sodium sulphate then evaporated to yield the title compound (45mg) as a yellow solid. [Elemental analysis:- C, 82.40; H, 6.20; N, 6.30%. Calculated for $C_{30}H_{26}N_2O \cdot 0.5H_2O$:- C, 81.96; H, 6.20; N, 6.38%].

- 5 NMR($CDCl_3$): [3:1, trans:cis isomers] δ 2.30 and 2.32 (s, 3H); 3.78 and 3.79 (s, 3H); 5.05 and 5.07 (s, 2H); 6.70-6.95, 6.95-7.05, 7.10-7.25 and 7.30-7.50 (m, 11H); 8.35 (bs, 2H).

10

EXAMPLE 23

6-(1-hydroxy-1-phenyl-2-pyridin-4-yl)ethyl-1-(4-methoxybenzyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole

- A stirred solution of 4-methylpyridine (60mg) in tetrahydrofuran (3ml), under nitrogen and at $-78^\circ C$, was
15 treated dropwise with a solution of n-butyllithium in hexane (0.385ml). After 30 minutes a solution of 1-(4-methoxybenzyl)-3-methyl-1H-indol-6-yl]-1-phenylmethanone (200mg, Example 24) in tetrahydrofuran (3ml) was added and the mixture was stirred at $-78^\circ C$ for 1 hour, then
20 warmed to room temperature and then stirred overnight. The reaction mixture was quenched with water (15ml) and then extracted three times with ethyl acetate (15ml). The combined extracts were dried over sodium sulphate and then evaporated. The residue was subjected to flash
25 column chromatography on silica eluting with a mixture of ethyl acetate and hexane (gradient elution, 1:3 to 3:1, v/v) to yield the title compound (115mg) as a white solid. [Elemental analysis:- C, 79.5; H, 6.30; N, 6.10%. Calculated for $C_{30}H_{28}N_2O_2 \cdot 0.25H_2O$:- C, 79.5; H, 6.34;

- 217 -

N, 6.18%]. NMR (CDCl₃): δ 2.30 (3H, s), 3.5-3.7 (2H, m), 3.75 (3H, s), 5.05 (2H, s), 6.75-7.55 (m), 8.15-8.20 (m, 2H).

EXAMPLE 24

5 [1-(4-Methoxy-benzyl)-3-methyl-1H-indol-6-yl]-phenyl
methanone

A stirred solution of N-methoxy-1-(4-methoxybenzyl)-3-methyl-N-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide (2.215g, Example 25) in tetrahydrofuran (55ml) was treated with a solution
10 of phenylmagnesium chloride in tetrahydrofuran (9.83ml, 2M). The solution was stirred at 0°C for 2 hours then poured into a mixture of ice and 1N hydrochloric acid (10ml) and then partitioned between ethyl acetate (50ml) and water (50ml). The organic layer was dried over
15 sodium sulphate then evaporated. The residue was subjected to flash chromatography on silica eluting with a mixture of ethyl acetate and hexane (1:2, v/v) to yield the title compound (2.05g) as a yellow solid, m.p. 146-147°C. [Elemental analysis:- C, 80.80; H, 6.00; N, 3.80%.
20 Calculated for C₂₄H₂₁NO₂:- C, 81.10; H, 5.96; N, 3.94%].

EXAMPLE 25

N-methoxy-1-(4-methoxybenzyl)-3-methyl-N-methyl-1H-
indole-6-carboxamide

25 A stirred solution of 1-(4-methoxybenzyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carbonyl chloride [2.8g, Reference Example 42(b)] in chloroform (90ml) at 0°C was treated with N,O-dimethylhydroxylamine hydrochloride (0.982g) and pyridine (1.55ml). The solution was stirred at room temperature

- 218 -

for 1 hour then evaporated. The residue was partitioned between dichloromethane (100ml) and brine (50ml). The organic layer was dried over sodium sulphate then evaporated. The residue was subjected to flash
5 chromatography on silica eluting with a mixture of ethyl acetate and hexane (1:2, v/v) to yield the title compound (2.8g).

EXAMPLE 26

10 (a) 1-Benzyl-N-(3,5-dichloro-1-oxido-4-pyridinio)-3-methyl-1H-indazole-6-carboxamide

A solution of 4-amino-3,5-dichloropyridine-N-oxide (0.501g, prepared as described in the specification of International Patent Application Publication No. WO
15 92/12961) in a mixture of toluene and tetrahydrofuran (20ml; 1:1, v/v) was treated with trimethylaluminium (2.8ml). After stirring at ambient temperature for 1 hour the mixture was treated dropwise with a solution of 1-benzyl-3-methyl-1H-indazole carbonyl chloride (0.16g,
20 Reference Example 42(a) in dry tetrahydrofuran (25ml). Stirring was continued at ambient temperature for 2 hours then the mixture was heated at 90°C for 12 hours. The reaction mixture was cooled to room temperature then poured into water (15ml) then extracted three times with
25 ethyl acetate (45ml). The combined extracts were dried over sodium sulphate then evaporated. The residue was subjected to preparative layer chromatography on silica using a mixture of ethyl acetate and hexane (2:1, v/v) as eluent to yield the title compound (0.071g) as a white
30 solid. [Elemental analysis:- C,58.03; H,3.78; N,12.60%.

- 219 -

Calculated for $C_{21}H_{16}Cl_2N_4O_2 \cdot 0.5H_2O$:- C, 57.79; H, 3.93; N, 12.85%].

(b) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 26(a) but using 4-amino-3,5-dichloropyridine and Reference Example 42(e) there was prepared N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-1-(4-methoxybenzyl)-3-methyl-1H-indazole-6-carboxamide as a white solid, m.p. 213-214°C. [Elemental analysis:- C, 59.47; H, 4.21; N, 12.24%. Calculated for $C_{22}H_{18}Cl_2N_4O_2 \cdot 0.25H_2O$:- C, 59.25; H, 4.18; N, 12.57%]. NMR ($CDCl_3$): δ 2.60(s, 3H); 3.70(s, 3H); 5.50(s, 2H); 6.70-6.80 and 7.10-7.20(m, 4H); 7.60-7.65, 7.70-7.75 and 8.00-8.05(m, 3H); 8.50(bs, 2H).

15

EXAMPLE 27

(a) N-(3,5-Dichloro-1-oxido-4-pyridinio)-4-methoxy-2-methoxymethyl-benzoxazole-6-carboxamide

A stirred solution of 4-acetylamino-3,5-dichloro-pyridine N-oxide (0.64g) in dry dimethylformamide (40ml), under nitrogen and at room temperature, was treated portionwise with sodium hydride (2.15g, 60% dispersion in mineral oil). After stirring for 1.5 hours the pale yellow solution was treated with a solution of 4-methoxy-2-methoxymethyl-benzoxazole-6-carbonyl chloride [Reference Example 42(c), prepared from 0.68g of 4-methoxy-2-methoxymethyl-benzoxazole-6-carboxylic acid] in dry dimethylformamide (15ml) whilst maintaining the reaction temperature at about 10°C. The reaction mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature, then stood at room

- 220 -

temperature for 18 hours, then treated with piperidine (1ml), then stood at room temperature for 24 hours. The mixture was evaporated and the residual dark brown oil was treated with ethyl acetate, then filtered. The filtrate was treated with silica (1g) then evaporated. The residue was subjected to flash chromatography on silica eluting initially with dichloromethane then with a mixture of dichloromethane and methanol (49:1,v/v) and then with a mixture of dichloromethane and methanol (25:1,v/v). Fractions containing the required product were combined and evaporated and the resulting white solid was washed with diethyl ether to give the title compound (0.44g) as a white powder, m.p. 199-202°C. [Elemental analysis:- C,48.26; H,3.43; N,10.83%. Calculated:- C,48.22; H,3.29; N,10.55%].

(b) By proceeding in a similar manner to Example 27(a) but using 4-amino-3,5-dichloropyridine and Reference Example 42(d), there was prepared N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-3-isopropyl-1-methyl-1H-indole-5-carboxamide which was recrystallised from toluene as a colourless solid, m.p. 186-189°C.

REFERENCE EXAMPLE 1

(a) 1'-Benzotriazolyl 7-methoxy-2-methoxymethyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylate

A stirred solution of 7-methoxy-2-methoxymethyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylic acid [10.6g, Reference Example 2(a)] in a mixture of dichloromethane (120ml) and diisopropylethylamine (12.5ml) was treated with

- 221 -

O-benzotriazol-1-yl-N,N,N',N'-bis(tetramethylene)uronium tetrafluoroborate (15.4g). After stirring for 2 hours the reaction mixture was evaporated. The residue was treated with toluene and concentrated under vacuum
5 affording the title compound which was used without further purification.

(b) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 1(a) but using Reference Example 2(b), there was
10 prepared 1'-benzotriazolyl 7-methoxy-2-phenyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylate.

(c) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 1(a) but using Reference Example 2(c), there was
15 prepared 1'-benzotriazolyl 7-methoxy-2-phenethyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylate.

(d) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 1(a) but using Reference Example 2(d), there was
20 prepared 1'-benzotriazolyl 2-benzyl-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylate.

(e) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 1(a) but using Reference Example 2(e), there was
25 prepared (RS)-1'-benzotriazolyl 7-methoxy-2-(1-phenylethyl)-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylate.

(f) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 1(a) but using Reference Example 2(f), there was

- 222 -

prepared 1'-benzotriazolyl 7-methoxy-2-(4-methoxybenzyl)-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylate

(g) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference
5 Example 1(a) but using Reference Example 2(g), there was prepared (RS)-1'-benzotriazolyl 2-(cyclohexyl-phenyl-methyl)-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylate.

(h) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference
10 Example 1(a) but using Reference Example 2(h), there was prepared (RS)-1'-benzotriazolyl 2-(1,2-diphenylethyl)-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylate

(i) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference
15 Example 1(a) but using Reference Example 2(i), there was prepared (RS)-1'-benzotriazolyl 7-methoxy-2-(2-phenylpropyl)-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylate.

(j) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference
20 Example 1(a) but using Reference Example 2(j), there was prepared 1'-benzotriazolyl 7-methoxy-2-(4-methoxyphenoxy-methyl)-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylate

(k) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference
25 Example 1(a) but using Reference Example 2(k), there was prepared (RS)-1'-benzotriazolyl 7-methoxy-2-(1-phenylbutyl)-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylate.

(l) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference
30 Example 1(a) but using Reference Example 2(l), there

- 223 -

was prepared 1'-benzotriazolyl 2-(4-bromobenzyl)-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylate.

(m) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference
5 Example 1(a) but using Reference Example 2(m), there was prepared (RS)-1'-benzotriazolyl 7-methoxy-2-(3-methoxy-1-phenyl-propyl)-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylate.

(n) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference
10 Example 1(a) but using Reference Example 2(n), there was prepared 1'-benzotriazolyl 2-(4-cyanobenzyl)-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylate.

(o) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference
15 Example 1(a) but using Reference Example 2(o), there was prepared 1'-benzotriazolyl 7-methoxy-2-(4-{3-pyridyl}benzyl)-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylate.

(p) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference
20 Example 1(a) but using Reference Example 2(p), there was prepared 1'-benzotriazolyl 7-methoxy-2-(2-methoxybenzyl)-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylate.

(q) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference
25 Example 1(a) but using Reference Example 2(q), there was prepared (RS)-1'-benzotriazolyl 7-methoxy-2-(methoxy-phenyl-methyl)-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylate.

(r) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference
30 Example 1(a) but using Reference Example 2(r), there was

- 224 -

prepared 1'-benzotriazolyl 7-methoxy-2-(2-methoxyphenoxy)methyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylate.

(s) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference
5 Example 1(a) but using Reference Example 2(s), there
was prepared 1'-benzotriazolyl 7-methoxy-2-(3-pyridyl)-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylate.

(t) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference
10 Example 1(a) but using Reference Example 2(t), there was
prepared 1'-benzotriazolyl 2-isopropyl-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylate.

(u) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference
15 Example 1(a) but using Reference Example 2(u), there was
prepared 1'-benzotriazolyl 7-methoxy-2-methyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylate.

(v) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference
20 Example 1(a) but using Reference Example 2(v), there was
prepared 1'-benzotriazolyl 7-methoxy-2-phenoxyethyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylate.

(w) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference
25 Example 1(a) but using Reference Example 2(w), there was
prepared 1'-benzotriazolyl 2-cyclopentyl-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylate.

(x) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference
30 Example 1(a) but using Reference Example 2(x), there was

- 225 -

prepared 1'-benzotriazolyl 2-benzyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylate.

(y) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference
5 Example 1(a) but using Reference Example 2(y), there was
prepared 1'-benzotriazolyl 2-cyclopentyl-7-methoxy-1-methyl-1H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylate.

(z) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference
10 Example 1(a) but using Reference Example 2(z), there was
prepared 1'-benzotriazolyl 2-cyclopentyl-7-methoxy-3-methyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylate.

(aa) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference
15 Example 1(a) but using Reference Example 2(aa), there was
prepared 1'-benzotriazolyl 2,7-dimethoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylate.

(ab) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference
20 Example 1(a) but using Reference Example 2(ab), there was
prepared 1'-benzotriazolyl 2-cyclopropyl-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylate.

(ac) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference
25 Example 1(a) but using Reference Example 28(a), there was
prepared 1'-benzotriazolyl 1-cyclohexylmethyl-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxylate.

(ad) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference
30 Example 1(a) but using Reference Example 31(b), there was

- 226 -

prepared 1'-benzotriazolyl 1-cyclohexyl-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxylate.

(ae) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference
5 Example 1(a) but using Reference Example 28(c), there was prepared 1'-benzotriazolyl 1-(2-cyclohexyl)ethyl-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxylate.

(af) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference
10 Example 1(a) but using Reference Example 28(d), there was prepared 1'-benzotriazolyl 1-(3-cyclohexyl)propyl-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxylate.

(ag) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference
15 Example 1(a) but using Reference Example 28(e), there was prepared 1'-benzotriazolyl 1-heptyl-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxylate.

(ah) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference
20 Example 1(a) but using Reference Example 31(d), there was prepared 1'-benzotriazolyl 1-cycloheptylmethyl-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxylate.

(ai) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference
25 Example 1(a) but using Reference Example 31(a), there was prepared 1'-benzotriazolyl 1-(6,6-dimethyl-bicyclo[3.1.1]hept-3-ylmethyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxylate.

30 (aj) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference

- 227 -

Example 1(a) but using Reference Example 28(f), there was prepared 1'-benzotriazolyl 1-(3-phenyl)butyl-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxylate.

- 5 (ak) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 1(a) but using Reference Example 28(g), there was prepared 1'-benzotriazolyl 1-(4-trifluoromethylbenzyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxylate.
- 10 (al) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 1(a) but using Reference Example 28(h), there was prepared 1'-benzotriazolyl 1-(4-methylsulphonylbenzyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxylate.
- 15 (am) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 1(a) but using Reference Example 28(i), there was prepared 1'-benzotriazolyl 1-(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)methyl-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxylate.
- 20 (an) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 1(a) but using Reference Example 28(j), there was prepared 1'-benzotriazolyl 3-methyl-1-(naphthalen-2-yl)methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxylate.
- 25 (ao) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 1(a) but using Reference Example 28(k), there was prepared 1'-benzotriazolyl 3-methyl-1-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-2-yl)methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxylate.
- 30 (ap) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference

- 228 -

Example 1(a) but using Reference Example 28(l), there was prepared 1'-benzotriazolyl 3-methyl-1-(tetrahydrofurfuryl)methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxylate.

- 5 (aq) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 1(a) but using Reference Example 28(m), there was prepared 1'-benzotriazolyl 3-methyl-1-(4-toluenesulphonyl)-1H-indole-6-carboxylate.
- 10 (ar) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 1(a) but using Reference Example 28(n), there was prepared 1'-benzotriazolyl 3-methyl-1-(tetrahydrofuran-3-yl)-1H-indole-6-carboxylate.
- 15 (as) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 1(a) but using Reference Example 26(a), there was prepared 1'-benzotriazolyl-8-methoxy-2-n-propylquinoline-5-carboxylate.
- 20 (at) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 1(a) but using Reference Example 28(b), there was prepared 1'-benzotriazolyl 3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxylate.
- 25 (au) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 1(a) but using Reference Example 32, there was prepared 1'-benzotriazolyl 1-butyloxycarbonyl-3-methyl-indole 6-carboxylate.

- 229 -

(av) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 1(a) but using Reference Example 37, there was prepared 1'-benzotriazolyl 1-benzyl-3-methyl-1H-indoline-6-carboxylate.

5

(aw) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 1(a) but using 1H-indole-6-carboxylic acid, there was prepared 1'-benzotriazolyl 1H-indole-6-carboxylate.

10 (ax) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 1(a) but using Reference Example 2(ac), there was prepared 1'-benzotriazolyl 7-methoxy-2-n-propyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylate.

15

REFERENCE EXAMPLE 2

a) 7-Methoxy-2-methoxymethyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylic acid

A solution of methyl 7-methoxy-2-methoxymethyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylate [12.12g, Reference Example
20 3(a)] in methanol (100ml) was treated with 2M sodium hydroxide (48ml). The resulting mixture was heated to 50°C then stirred at this temperature for 6 hours. The reaction mixture was concentrated to half its original volume then treated with 1M hydrochloric acid (98ml).
25 The solution was cooled in an icebath and the resulting solid filtered then dried under high vacuum overnight to give the title compound (11.0g) as a solid. M⁺236. This material was used without further purification.

- 230 -

(b) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 2(a) but using Reference Example 3(b), there was prepared 7-methoxy-2-phenyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylic acid as a white solid. M⁺268.

5

(c) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 2(a) but using Reference Example 3(c), there was prepared 7-methoxy-2-phenethyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylic acid as a white solid. NMR {(CD₃)₂SO}: δ

10 3.10(m,2H), 3.25(m,2H), 4.05(s,3H), 6.90(d,J=8Hz,1H),
7.25(m,5H), 7.83(d,J=8Hz,1H).

(d) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 2(a) but using Reference Example 3(d), there was
15 prepared 2-benzyl-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylic acid as a solid. NMR {(CD₃)₂SO}: δ 4.00(s,3H),
4.28(s,2H), 6.92(d,J=8Hz,1H), 7.30(m,5H),
7.78(d,J=8Hz,1H).

20 (e) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 2(a) but using Reference Example 3(e), there was prepared (RS)-7-methoxy-2-(1-phenylethyl)-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylic acid. M⁺296.

25 (f) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 2(a) but using Reference Example 3(f), there was prepared 7-methoxy-2-(4-methoxybenzyl)-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylic acid. M⁺312.

- 231 -

(g) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 2(a) but using Reference Example 3(g), there was prepared (RS)-2-(cyclohexyl-phenyl-methyl)-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylic acid as a tan coloured solid.

5

(h) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 2(a) but using Reference Example 3(h), there was prepared (RS)-2-(1,2-diphenylethyl)-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylic acid. M⁺372.

10

(i) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 2(a) but using Reference Example 3(i), there was prepared (RS)-7-methoxy-2-(2-phenylpropyl)-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylic acid. NMR {(CD₃)₂SO}: δ

15 1.20(d,3H), 3.50(m,3H), 3.95(s,3H), 7.15(m,1H),
7.15-7.20(m,1H), 7.23-7.36(m,4H), 7.69(d,1H),
12.10(bs,1H).

(j) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 2(a) but using Reference Example 3(j), there was prepared 7-methoxy-2-(4-methoxyphenoxy-methyl)-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylic acid. M⁺328.

(k) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 2(a) but using Reference Example 3(k), there was prepared (RS)-7-methoxy-2-(1-phenylbutyl)-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylic acid. M⁺324.

25

- 232 -

(l) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 2(a) but using Reference Example 3(l), there was prepared 2-(4-bromobenzyl)-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylic acid. NMR {(CD₃)₂SO}: δ 3.90(s,3H),
5 4.30(s,2H), 6.80(d,1H), 7.20(d,2H), 7.40(d,2H),
7.75(d,1H).

(m) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 2(a) but using Reference Example 3(m), there was
10 prepared (RS)-7-methoxy-2-(3-methoxy-1-phenyl-propyl)-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylic acid. M⁺340.

(n) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 2(a) but using Reference Example 14, there was
15 prepared 2-(4-cyanobenzyl)-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylic acid. NMR {(CD₃)₂SO}: δ 4.00(s,3H),
4.35(s,2H), 6.80(d,1H), 7.35(d,2H), 7.50(d,2H),
7.75(d,1H).

20 (o) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 2(a) but Reference Example 15, there was prepared
7-methoxy-2-(4-{3-pyridyl}benzyl)-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylic acid. NMR {(CD₃)₂SO}: δ 3.95(s,3H),
4.30(s,2H), 6.75(d,1H), 7.45(d,3H), 7.70(d,3H),
25 8.05(dd,1H), 8.55(d,1H), 8.85(d,1H).

(p) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 2(a) but using Reference Example 3(n)], there was

- 233 -

prepared 7-methoxy-2-(2-methoxybenzyl)-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylic acid. M⁺312.

- (q) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 2(a) but using Reference Example 3(o) or Reference Example 12, there was prepared (RS)-7-methoxy-2-(methoxy-phenyl-methyl)-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylic acid. M⁺312.
- 10 (r) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 2(a) but using Reference Example 3(p), there was prepared 7-methoxy-2-(2-methoxyphenoxy)methyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylic acid.
- 15 (s) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 2(a) but using Reference Example 13, there was prepared 7-methoxy-2-(3-pyridyl)-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylic acid.
- 20 (t) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 2(a) but using Reference Example 3(q), there was prepared 2-isopropyl-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylic acid as a solid. NMR {(CD₃)₂SO}: δ
- 25 1.36(d, J=6Hz, 6H), 3.50(m, 1H), 4.05(s, 3H), 6.95(d, J=8Hz, 1H), 7.85(d, J=8Hz, 1H).
- (u) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 2(a) but using Reference Example 3(r), there was

- 234 -

prepared 7-methoxy-2-methyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylic acid as a white solid. M⁺206.

(v) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 2(a) but using Reference Example 3(s), there was prepared 7-methoxy-2-phoxymethyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylic acid as a solid. M⁺298.

(w) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 2(a) but using Reference Example 3(t), there was prepared 2-cyclopentyl-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylic acid as a solid. NMR {(CD₃)₂SO}: δ 1.68(m, 2H), 1.82(m, 2H), 1.94(m, 2H), 2.09(m, 2H), 3.56(m, 1H), 4.04(s, 3H), 7.00(d, J=8Hz, 1H), 7.86(d, J=8Hz, 1H).

15

(x) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 2(a) but using Reference Example 3(u), there was prepared 2-benzyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylic acid. M⁺252.

20

(y) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 2(a) but using Reference Example 5, there was prepared 2-cyclopentyl-7-methoxy-1-methyl-1H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylic acid. M⁺274.

25

(z) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 2(a) but using Reference Example 6, there was prepared 2-cyclopentyl-7-methoxy-3-methyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylic acid.

- 235 -

(aa) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 2(a) but using Reference Example 7, there was prepared 2,7-dimethoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylic acid. M⁺222.

(ab) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 2(a) but using Reference Example 3(v), there was prepared 2-cyclopropyl-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylic acid. [Elemental analysis:- C,62.06; H,5.21; N,12.05%. Calculated:- C,62.07; H,5.17; N,12.07%].

(ac) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 2(a) but using Reference Example 3(x), there was prepared 7-methoxy-2-n-propyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylic acid.

REFERENCE EXAMPLE 3

(a) Methyl 7-methoxy-2-methoxymethyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylate

A solution of methyl 3-(1-imino-2-methoxy-ethylamino)-4-methoxybenzoate [15.7g, Reference Example 4(a)] in methanol (150ml) was treated with 1M hydrochloric acid (62.6ml) then with sodium hypochlorite solution (32.3ml, 13%). Further aliquots of sodium hypochlorite solution were added until all the starting material was consumed. The solution containing methyl 3-(1-chloroimino-2-methoxy-ethylamino)-4-methoxybenzoate was treated with a saturated solution of sodium carbonate (8.62g) in water.

- 236 -

The mixture was then refluxed for 1 hour, then cooled to room temperature, then diluted with water and then extracted with chloroform. The chloroform extract was washed with brine, dried over magnesium sulphate and then
5 evaporated. The residue was subjected to flash chromatography on silica eluting with a mixture of ethyl acetate and hexane (1:1, v/v) then with a mixture of ethyl acetate and hexane (6:1, v/v) to give the title compound (13.0g) as a solid. M^+250 . NMR ($CDCl_3$): δ
10 3.48(s,3H), 3.98(s,3H), 4.10(s,3H), 4.78(s,2H), 6.70(d,J=8Hz,1H), 7.87(d,J=8Hz,1H).

(b) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 3(a) but using Reference Example 4(b), there was
15 prepared methyl 7-methoxy-2-phenyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylate as a solid. NMR ($CDCl_3$): δ 4.00(s,3H), 4.11(s,3H), 6.74(d,J=8Hz,1H), 7.5(m,3H), 7.88(d,J=8Hz,1H), 8.12(m,2H), 10.69(bs,1H).

20 (c) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 3(a) but using Reference Example 4(c), there was prepared methyl 7-methoxy-2-phenethyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylate as a white solid. NMR ($CDCl_3$): δ 3.20(m, 4H), 3.90(s,3H), 4.08(s,3H), 6.70(d,J=8Hz,1H),
25 7.25(m,5H), 7.83(d,J=8Hz,1H), 9.95(bs,1H).

(d) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 3(a) but using Reference Example 4(d), there was prepared methyl 2-benzyl-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-

- 237 -

4-carboxylate. NMR (CDCl₃): δ 3.90(s,3H), 4.10(s,3H),
4.35(s,2H), 6.70(d,J=8Hz,1H), 7.30(m,5H),
7.80(d,J=8Hz,1H), 9.97(bs,1H).

- 5 (e) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference
Example 3(a) but using Reference Example 4(e), there was
prepared (RS)-methyl 7-methoxy-2-(1-phenylethyl)-3H-
benzimidazole-4-carboxylate. NMR (CDCl₃): δ
1.88(d,J=7.5Hz,3H), 3.90(s,3H), 4.10(s,3H),
10 4.44(q,J=7.5Hz,1H), 6.70(d,J=8Hz,1H), 7.30(m,5H),
7.82(d,J=8Hz,1H).

- (f) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference
Example 3(a) but using Reference Example 4(f), there was
15 prepared methyl 7-methoxy-2-(4-methoxybenzyl)-3H-
benzimidazole-4-carboxylate. NMR (CDCl₃): δ 3.80(s,3H),
3.90(s,3H), 4.08(s,3H), 4.27(s,2H), 6.69(d,J=8Hz,1H),
6.88(m,2H), 7.25(m,2H), 7.90(d,J=8Hz,1H), 9.90(bs,1H).

- 20 (g) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference
Example 3(a) but using Reference Example 4(g), there was
prepared (RS)-methyl 2-(cyclohexyl-phenyl-methyl)-7-
methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylate. NMR (CDCl₃): δ
0.80-1.40(m,5H), 1.6(m,5H), 2.4(m,1H), 3.86(d,1H),
25 3.90(s,3H), 4.07(s,3H), 6.65(d,J=8Hz,1H), 7.20(m,1H),
7.3(m,2H), 7.45(m,2H), 7.78(d,J=8Hz,1H), 10.1(bs,1H).

- (h) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference
Example 3(a) but using Reference Example 4(h), there was

- 238 -

prepared (RS)-methyl 2-(1,2-diphenylethyl)-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylate as a solid.

NMR (CDCl₃): δ 3.40(dd, J=15 and 8.5Hz, 3H), 3.87(s, 3H),
3.94(dd, J=15 and 7Hz, 1H), 4.10(s, 3H), 4.43(dd, J=8.5 and
5 7Hz, 1H), 6.70(d, J=8Hz, 1H), 7.00-7.30 (m, 10H),
7.33(d, J=8Hz, 1H), 9.93(bs, 1H).

(i) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference
Example 3(a) but using Reference Example 4(i), there was
10 prepared (RS)-methyl 7-methoxy-2-(2-phenylpropyl)-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylate. NMR (CDCl₃): δ
1.38(d, 3H), 3.22(d, 2H), 3.36-3.49(m, 1H), 3.90(s, 3H),
4.08(s, 3H), 6.70(d, 1H), 7.22-7.39(m, 5H), 7.81(d, 1H),
9.65(bs, 1H).

15

(j) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference
Example 3(a) but using Reference Example 4(j), there was
prepared methyl 7-methoxy-2-(4-methoxyphenoxymethyl)-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylate. NMR (CDCl₃): δ
20 3.79(s, 3H), 3.94(s, 3H), 4.10(s, 3H), 5.32(s, 2H),
6.71(d, J=8Hz, 1H), 6.84(m, 2H), 6.97(m, 2H),
7.90(d, J=8Hz, 1H).

(k) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference
25 Example 3(a) but using Reference Example 4(k), there was
prepared (RS)-methyl 7-methoxy-2-(1-phenylbutyl)-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylate. NMR (CDCl₃): δ
0.93(t, J=7.5Hz, 3H), 1.3(m, 2H), 2.06(m, 1H), 2.46(m, 1H),
3.90(bs, 3H), 4.10(s, 3H), 4.23(dd, J=9 and 7Hz, 1H),

- 239 -

6.69 (d, J=8Hz, 1H), 7.30 (m, 5H), 7.79 (d, J=8Hz, 1H),
9.90 (bs, 1H).

(l) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference
5 Example 3(a) but using Reference Example 4(l), there was
prepared methyl 2-(4-bromobenzyl)-7-methoxy-3H-
benzimidazole-4-carboxylate as a solid. NMR (CDCl₃): δ
3.90 (s, 3H), 4.06 (s, 3H), 4.25 (s, 2H), 6.70 (d, J=8Hz, 1H),
7.19 (d, J=8Hz, 1H), 7.45 (d, J=8Hz, 2H), 7.83 (d, J=8Hz, 1H),
10 10.04 (bs, 1H).

(m) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference
Example 3(a) but using Reference Example 4(m), there was
prepared (RS)-methyl 7-methoxy-2-(3-methoxy-1-phenyl-
15 propyl)-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylate. NMR (CDCl₃): δ
2.39 (m, 1H), 2.73 (m, 1H), 3.31 (s, 3H), 3.39 (s, 2H),
3.91 (s, 3H), 4.10 (s, 3H), 4.50 (t, J=8Hz, 1H),
6.70 (d, J=8Hz, 1H), 7.30 (m, 5H), 7.84 (d, J=8Hz, 1H).

20 (n) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference
Example 3(a) but using Reference Example 4(n), there was
prepared methyl 7-methoxy-2-(2-methoxybenzyl)-
3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylate. NMR (CDCl₃): δ
3.92 (s, 3H), 4.02 (s, 3H), 4.03 (s, 3H), 4.79 (s, 2H),
25 6.62 (d, J=9Hz, 1H), 6.92 (m, 2H), 7.24 (m, 1H), 7.30 (m, 1H),
7.78 (d, J=9Hz, 1H), 10.58 (bs, 1H).

(o) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference
Example 3(a) but using Reference Example 4(o), there was

- 240 -

prepared (RS)-methyl 7-methoxy-2-(methoxy-phenyl-methyl)-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylate.

(p) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 3(a) but using Reference Example 4(p), there was prepared methyl 7-methoxy-2-(2-methoxyphenoxy)methyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylate. NMR (CDCl₃): δ 3.95 (s, 3H), 3.96 (s, 3H), 4.07 (s, 3H), 5.47 (s, 2H), 6.71 (d, J=8Hz, 1H), 6.82-7.05 (m, 3H), 7.10 (m, 1H), 7.90 (d, J=8Hz, 1H).

(q) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 3(a) but using Reference Example 4(q), there was prepared methyl 2-isopropyl-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylate as a tan coloured solid.

(r) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 3(a) but using Reference Example 4(r), there was prepared methyl 7-methoxy-2-methyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylate. NMR (CDCl₃): δ 2.65 (s, 3H), 3.96 (s, 3H), 4.07 (s, 3H), 6.68 (d, J=8Hz, 1H), 7.80 (d, J=8Hz, 1H).

(s) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 3(a) but using Reference Example 4(s), there was prepared methyl 7-methoxy-2-phenoxy-methyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylate. NMR (CDCl₃): δ 3.95 (s, 3H), 4.10 (s, 3H), 5.40 (s, 2H), 6.73 (d, J=8Hz, 1H), 7.05 (m, 3H), 7.73 (m, 2H), 7.90 (d, J=8Hz, 1H).

- 241 -

(t) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 3(a) but using Reference Example 4(t), there was prepared methyl 2-cyclopentyl-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylate, as a solid. NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.73(m,2H),

5 1.85(m,2H), 2.00(m,2H), 2.16(m,2H), 3.31(m,1H),
3.98(s,3H), 4.08(s,3H), 6.70(d,J=8Hz,1H),
7.80(d,J=8Hz,1H), 10.10(bs,1H).

(u) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference
10 Example 3(a) but using Reference Example 4(u), there was prepared methyl 2-benzyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylate.
NMR (CDCl₃): δ 3.90(s,3H), 4.33(s,2H), 7.20-7.40(m,5H),
7.82(d,J=7.6Hz,1H), 7.93(d,J=7.6Hz,1H), 10.02(bs,1H).

15 (v) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 3(a) but using Reference Example 4(v), there was prepared methyl 2-cyclopropyl-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylate, m.p. 124-126°C. [Elemental analysis:- C,53.89; H,5.11; N,9.62%. Calculated:-
20 C,55.21; H,5.35; N,9.90%].

(w) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 3(a) but using Reference Example 4(w) and isolating the intermediate 1-bromo-3-(cyclopropyl-
25 chloroimino-methylamino)-4-methoxybenzene then treating with potassium carbonate there was prepared 4-bromo-2-cyclopropyl-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole as a pale brown solid, m.p. 185°C.

- 242 -

(x) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 3(a) but using Reference Example 4(x), there was prepared methyl 7-methoxy-2-n-propyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylate.

5

REFERENCE EXAMPLE 4

(a) Methyl 3-(1-imino-2-methoxy-ethylamino)-4-methoxybenzoate

Method A: 4-Toluenesulphonic acid monohydrate (17.8g) was
10 heated under vacuum at 100°C for 4 hours then allowed to cool to room temperature and then treated with methoxy-acetonitrile (7.4g) and methyl 3-amino-4-methoxybenzoate (17.5g). The resulting mixture was heated to 180°C and then stirred at this temperature for
15 4 hours. The reaction mixture was allowed to cool to room temperature then diluted with chloroform and then washed sequentially with 1M sodium hydroxide solution, saturated sodium bicarbonate and brine. The organic phase was dried over magnesium sulphate then evaporated.
20 The residue was subjected to flash chromatography on silica eluting initially with a mixture of hexane and ethyl acetate (4:1, v/v) then with a mixture of hexane and ethyl acetate (1:1, v/v) and finally with a mixture of ethyl acetate and triethylamine (50:1, v/v) to give
25 the title compound (15.79g) as a solid. M⁺252. NMR (CDCl₃): δ 3.48(bs,3H), 3.90(bs,6H), 4.20(bs,2H), 4.95(bs,1H), 6.92(d,J=8Hz,1H), 7.60(bs,1H), 7.77(d,J=8Hz,1H).

- 243 -

Method B: A solution of methyl 2-methoxyacetimidate (36.5g, prepared by treating the corresponding hydrochloride [prepared according to the procedure of C.G.Bakker et. al., Rec.Trav.Chim.Pays-Bas, 1981, 100,
5 page 13] with aqueous sodium hydroxide) and methyl 3-amino-4-methoxybenzoate (64.1g) in butan-2-one (256ml) was heated at reflux with stirring under a nitrogen atmosphere for 3.5 hours then a further quantity of methyl 2-methoxyacetimidate (36.5g) was added. After
10 heating at reflux for a further 4 hours the reaction mixture was left at ambient temperature for 18 hours and then concentrated under reduced pressure. The residual brown oil was treated with cyclohexane (100ml) and then evaporated. The residual oil was dissolved in a
15 mixture of cyclohexane and ethyl acetate (150ml, 7:3, v/v) and heated to 50°C. Some seed crystals of methyl 3-(1-imino-2-methoxy-ethylamino)-4-methoxybenzoate were added and then mixture was allowed to cool to ambient temperature with stirring. The resulting solid was
20 collected by filtration, then washed with a small amount of a mixture of cyclohexane and ethyl acetate (7:3, v/v), and then dried to give the title compound (62.72g).

(b) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference
25 Example 4(a), method A, but using benzonitrile, there was prepared methyl 3-(imino-phenyl-methylamino)-4-methoxybenzoate as a tan coloured solid. NMR (CDCl₃): δ 3.85(s, 3H), 3.86(s, 3H), 6.94(bd, J=8.8Hz, 1H), 7.45(m, 3H), 7.65(s, 1H), 7.75(m, 2H), 7.90(bs, 1H)]

- 244 -

(c) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 4(a), method A, but using hydrocinnamonnitrile, there was prepared methyl 3-(1-imino-3-phenyl-propylamino)-4-methoxybenzoate as a tan coloured solid.

5 NMR (CDCl₃) δ 2.65(bt,2H), 3.10(bt,2H), 3.90(s,6H), 4.34(bs,1H), 6.90(d,J=8Hz,1H), 7.30(m,5H), 7.52(bs,1H), 7.74(dd,J=8 and 1Hz,1H)]

(d) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference
10 Example 4(a), method A, but using phenylacetonnitrile, there was prepared methyl 3-(1-imino-2-phenyl-ethylamino)-4-methoxybenzoate as a solid. M⁺298.

(e) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference
15 Example 4(a), method A, but using α -methylbenzyl cyanide, there was prepared (RS)-methyl 3-(1-imino-2-phenyl-propylamino)-4-methoxybenzoate. M⁺312.

(f) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference
20 Example 4(a), method A, but using 4-methoxyphenylacetonnitrile, there was prepared methyl 3-(1-imino-2-{4-methoxyphenyl}-ethylamino)-4-methoxybenzoate. M⁺328.

(g) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference
25 Example 4(a), method A, but using α -cyclohexylbenzyl cyanide, there was prepared (RS)-methyl 3-(2-cyclohexyl-1-imino-2-phenyl-ethylamino)-4-methoxybenzoate as an orange solid. M⁺H 381.

- 245 -

(h) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 4(a), method A, but using 2,3-diphenylpropionitrile, there was prepared (RS)-methyl 3-(2,3-diphenyl-1-imino-propylamino)-4-methoxybenzoate as a solid.

(i) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 4(a), method A, but using 3-phenylbutyronitrile, there was prepared (RS)-methyl 3-(1-imino-3-phenyl-butylamino)-4-methoxybenzoate. NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.43(d,3H), 2.60(d,2H), 3.26-3.39(m,1H), 3.85(s,3H), 3.87(s,3H), 4.20(bs,2H), 6.89(d,1H), 7.25-7.35(m,5H), 7.42(bs,1H), 7.75(dd,1H).

15

(j) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 4(a), method A, but using 4-methoxyphenoxy-acetonitrile, there was prepared methyl 3-(1-imino-2-{4-methoxyphenoxy}-ethylamino)-4-methoxybenzoate. NMR (CDCl₃): δ 3.79 (s,3H), 3.88(s,3H), 3.99(s,3H), 4.74(bs,2H), 5.00(bs,1H), 6.80-7.00(m,5H), 7.60(bs,1H), 7.78(dd,J=8 and 1Hz,1H).

20

(k) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 4(a), method A, but using α -propylphenylacetonitrile, there was prepared (RS)-methyl 3-(1-imino-2-phenyl-pentylamino)-4-methoxybenzoate. M⁺H 341.

25

- 246 -

(l) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 4(a), method A, but using 4-bromophenylacetonitrile, there was prepared methyl 3-(2-{4-bromophenyl}-1-imino-ethylamino)-4-

5 methoxybenzoate as a tan coloured solid. M^+H 378. NMR ($CDCl_3$): δ 3.70 (s, 2H), 3.90 (d, 6H), 4.35 (s, 1H), 6.90 (d, 1H), 7.30 (d, 2H), 7.50 (m, 3H), 7.75 (d, 1H).

(m) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 4(a), method A, but using 4-methoxy-2-phenylbutyronitrile, there was prepared (RS)-methyl 3-(1-imino-4-methoxy-2-phenyl-butylamino)-4-

10 methoxybenzoate. NMR ($CDCl_3$): δ 2.10 (m, 1H), 2.54 (m, 1H), 3.35 (bs, 3H), 3.40 (m, 1H), 3.60 (m, 1H), 3.74 (m, 1H), 3.85 (bs, 6H), 4.25 (bs, 2H), 6.90 (bd, $J=8$ Hz, 1H), 7.30 (m, 1H), 7.38 (m, 2H), 7.50 (m, 2H), 7.75 (m, 1H).

15

(n) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 4(a), method A, but using 2-methoxyphenyl-acetonitrile, there was prepared methyl 3-(1-imino-2-{2-methoxyphenyl}-ethylamino)-4-methoxybenzoate.

20

(o) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 4(a), method A, but using 2-methoxy-phenylacetonitrile, there was prepared methyl 3-(1-imino-2-methoxy-2-phenyl-ethylamino)-4-methoxybenzoate.

25

- 247 -

(p) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 4(a), method A, but using (2-methoxyphenoxy)acetonitrile, there was prepared methyl 3-(1-imino-2-{2-methoxyphenoxy}-ethylamino)-4-methoxybenzoate. M⁺344.

(q) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 4(a), method A, but using iso-butyronitrile, there was prepared methyl 3-(1-imino-2-methyl-propylamino)-4-methoxybenzoate. NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.29(d, J=6Hz, 6H), 2.60(m, 1H), 3.88(bs, 6H), 4.33(bs, 1H), 6.89(d, J=8Hz, 1H), 7.50(bs, 1H), 7.72(dd, J=8Hz, 1H).

(r) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 4(a), method A, but using acetonitrile, there was prepared methyl 3-(1-imino-ethylamino)-4-methoxybenzoate. M⁺222.

(s) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 4(a), method A, but using phenoxy-acetonitrile, there was prepared methyl 3-(1-imino-2-phenoxy-ethylamino)-4-methoxybenzoate. M⁺314.

(t) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 4(a), method A, but using cyclopentanecarbonitrile, there was prepared methyl 3-(cyclopentyl-imino-methylamino)-4-methoxybenzoate as a solid. NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.54-2.10(m, 8H), 2.75(m, 1H),

- 248 -

3.86(bs,6H), 4.30(bs,1H), 6.88(bd,J=8Hz,1H), 7.53(bs,1H),
7.73(d,J=8Hz,1H).

(u) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference
5 Example 4(a), method A, but using phenylacetonitrile and
methyl 3-aminobenzoate, there was prepared methyl
3-(2-phenyl-1-imino-ethylamino)benzoate as a tan coloured
solid. M⁺312.

10 (v) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference
Example 4(a), method A, but using cyclopropyl cyanide
and methyl 3-amino-4-methoxybenzoate, there was prepared
methyl 3-(cyclopropyl-imino-methylamino)benzoate as a
colourless solid.

15 (w) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference
Example 4(a), method A, but using cyclopropyl cyanide
and 5-bromo-2-methoxyaniline (Reference Example 50),
there was prepared 1-bromo-3-(cyclopropyl-imino-
20 methylamino)-4-methoxybenzene.

(x) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference
Example 4(a), method A, but using propyl cyanide there
was prepared methyl 3-(propyl-imino-
25 methylamino)-4-methoxybenzoate.

(y) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference
Example 4(a), method A, but using 3-amino-4-
methoxysalicylate (Reference Example 8(b)), there was

- 249 -

prepared methyl 4-methoxy-2-methoxymethyl-benzoxazole-7-carboxylate as a white solid, m.p. 104-106°C.

REFERENCE EXAMPLES 5(a) and 6(a)

- 5 Methyl 2-cyclopentyl-7-methoxy-1-methyl-1H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylate and methyl
2-cyclopentyl-7-methoxy-3-methyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylate

A suspension of sodium hydride (0.55g, 60% dispersion in mineral oil) in dimethylformamide (1ml), cooled to 0°C, was treated with a solution of methyl 2-cyclopentyl-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylate [3.61g, Reference Example 3(t)] in dimethylformamide (34ml). The resulting mixture was stirred for 40 minutes then treated with iodomethane (0.82ml). The reaction mixture was allowed to stand at 4°C for 2 days then diluted with diethyl ether, then washed with brine, then dried over magnesium sulphate and then evaporated. The residue was subjected to flash chromatography on silica to give methyl
2-cyclopentyl-7-methoxy-1-methyl-1H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylate (3.18g), [NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.70 (m, 2H), 1.90 (m, 2H), 2.16 (m, 4H), 3.25 (m, 1H), 3.95 (s, 6H), 4.00 (s, 3H), 6.64 (d, J=8Hz, 1H), 7.89 (d, J=8Hz, 1H)]; and
25 methyl 2-(cyclopentyl)-7-methoxy-3-methyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylate (0.37g), [M⁺288, NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.70 (m, 2H), 1.90 (m, 2H), 2.14 (m, 4H), 3.25 (m, 1H), 3.92 (s, 6H), 4.02 (s, 3H), 6.64 (d, J=8Hz, 1H), 7.75 (d, J=8Hz, 1H)].

- 250 -

(5b) By proceeding in a similar manner but using methyl 3-isopropyl-1H-indole-5-carboxylate (Reference Example 52) with tetrahydrofuran as the solvent, there was prepared methyl 3-isopropyl-1-methyl-1H-indole-5-carboxylate as an orange-brown coloured solid.

REFERENCE EXAMPLE 7

Methyl 2,7-dimethoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylate

10 A mixture of methyl 2,3-diamino-4-methoxybenzoate [0.5g, Reference Example 8(a)] acetic acid (0.15ml) and tetramethoxymethane (0.53ml) was stirred at 80°C for 40 minutes. After cooling to room temperature the reaction mixture was diluted with a mixture of methanol (3.6ml),
15 1N sodium hydroxide (2.55ml) and water (8ml). The resulting precipitate was filtered and then passed through a short filtration silica gel column to give the title compound (0.49g) as a tan coloured solid. M⁺236.
NMR (CDCl₃): δ 3.93(s,3H), 4.05(s,3H), 4.23(s,3H),
20 6.69(d,J=8Hz,1H), 7.74(d,J=8Hz,1H). 9.48(bs,1H)]

REFERENCE EXAMPLE 8

(a) Methyl 2,3-diamino-4-methoxybenzoate

A solution of methyl 2-amino-4-methoxy-3-nitrobenzoate (1.84g, Reference Example 9) in ethanol (100ml) was treated with 10% palladium on carbon (0.2g). The resulting suspension was stirred under 3 atmospheres of hydrogen for 3 hours. The catalyst was then removed by filtration and the filtrate evaporated to give the

- 251 -

title compound (1.6g) as a black solid which was used without further purification. M^+196 .

- (b) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 8(a) but using methyl 2-hydroxy-4-methoxy-3-nitrobenzoate (Reference Example 51) and ethyl acetate as the solvent, there was prepared methyl 3-amino-2-hydroxy-4-methoxybenzoate as a white solid, m.p. 72-74°C.

10

REFERENCE EXAMPLE 9Methyl 2-amino-4-methoxy-3-nitrobenzoate

- A solution of methyl 2-carboxy-4-methoxy-3-nitrobenzoate (3.43g, Reference Example 10) was dissolved in toluene (20ml) was treated with thionyl chloride (1.5ml) then with dimethylformamide (0.015ml). The resulting solution was stirred at reflux for 1 hour then cooled to room temperature and then evaporated. The residue was dissolved in acetone (20ml) and added to a solution of sodium azide (1.3g) in water (20ml) cooled in an ice bath. The mixture was stirred for 1 hour then diluted with water. The resulting precipitate was collected by filtration. This solid was dissolved in a mixture of t-butanol and water (20ml, 9:1) and gradually warmed to reflux and held at this temperature for 1 hour. The solution was cooled to room temperature and then evaporated. The residue was subjected to flash chromatography on silica to give the title compound (1.8g). M^+H 227. NMR ((CD₃)₂SO): δ 3.82 (s, 3H),

- 252 -

3.90 (s, 3H), 6.53 (d, J=8Hz, 1H), 7.1 (bs, 2H),
7.96 (d, J=8Hz, 1H).

REFERENCE EXAMPLE 10

5 Methyl 2-carboxy-4-methoxy-3-nitrobenzoate

A solution of 3-nitro-4-methoxyphthallic acid
(25.1g, Reference Example 11) in methanol (160ml), cooled
to 0°C, was saturated with hydrogen chloride gas then
allowed to stand at 4°C for 2 days. The reaction
10 mixture was then diluted with water and then extracted
with ether. The ether extract was washed with saturated
sodium bicarbonate solution. The bicarbonate washings
were acidified and then extracted with ether. These
ether extracts were dried over magnesium sulphate and
15 then evaporated. The residue was recrystallised from a
mixture of chloroform and methanol to give the title
compound (3.42g). M⁺255. NMR {(CD₃)₂SO} δ
3.85 (s, 3H), 4.00 (s, 3H), 7.55 (d, J=8.5Hz, 1H),
8.07 (d, J=8.5Hz, 1H).
20 A further quantity of the title compound (3.54g) was
obtained after subjecting the mother liquors from the
recrystallisation to flash chromatography on silica.

REFERENCE EXAMPLE 11

25 3-Nitro-4-methoxyphthallic acid

4-Methoxyphthallic acid (21.5g) was treated dropwise
with fuming nitric acid (75ml). The resulting mixture
was heated to 60°C and stirred for 15 minutes whereupon
the reaction mixture became homogenous. This solution

- 253 -

was then cooled to room temperature and then diluted with water. The mixture was extracted with diethyl ether. The combined extracts were washed with brine then dried over magnesium sulphate and then evaporated to give the
5 title compound (25.1g) as a tan coloured solid. M⁺241.

REFERENCE EXAMPLE 12

Methyl 7-methoxy-2-(α -methoxybenzyl)-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylate

10 A solution of α -methoxy-phenylacetic acid (0.596g) in chloroform (10ml) was treated with dimethylformamide (10 μ l) then with thionyl chloride (0.52ml). The reaction mixture was stirred at ambient temperature for 2 hours then evaporated. The residue was dissolved in
15 chloroform (4ml) and the solution added to a stirred solution of methyl 2,3-diamino-4-methoxybenzoate [0.352g, Reference Example 8(a)] in a mixture of chloroform (6ml) and triethylamine (1ml). After stirring for 1 hour the mixture was treated with ether and then with water. The
20 organic phase was washed with sodium bicarbonate solution, then with brine, then dried over magnesium sulphate and then evaporated. The residue was dissolved in acetic acid (8ml) and the solution heated at 80°C for 1.5 hours. The solution was cooled to ambient
25 temperature then diluted with ether. The mixture was washed with water, then with sodium bicarbonate solution, then with brine and then dried over magnesium sulphate. The ethereal solution was evaporated and the residue subjected to flash chromatography on silica eluting with

- 254 -

a mixture of ethyl acetate and hexane (1:1, v/v) to give the title compound (0.36g). NMR (CDCl₃): δ 3.50(s,3H), 3.96(s,3H), 4.05(s,3H), 5.17(s,1H), 6.70(d,J=8Hz,1H), 7.24-7.40(m,3H), 7.46(m,2H), 7.85(d,J=8Hz,1H)].

5

REFERENCE EXAMPLE 13

Methyl 7-methoxy-2-(3-pyridyl)-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylate

A solution of methyl 2,3-diamino-4-methoxybenzoate
10 [0.73g, Reference Example 8(a)] and triethylamine (0.94g) in dry dichloromethane (20ml), at 0°C, was treated with nicotiny l chloride (0.53g). The reaction mixture was stirred at ambient temperature for 2 hours and then evaporated. The residue was dissolved in acetic acid
15 (8ml) and the solution heated at 80°C for 2 hours. After cooling to room temperature the reaction mixture was treated with water. The insoluble material was subjected to flash chromatography on silica to give the title compound (0.46g). NMR (CDCl₃): δ 4.00(s,3H),
20 4.15(s,3H), 6.70(d,1H), 7.40(m,1H), 7.90(d,1H), 8.45(m,1H), 8.75(d,1H), 9.30(d,1H), 10.80(s,1H)].

REFERENCE EXAMPLE 14

Methyl 2-(4-cyanobenzyl)-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4- 25 carboxylate

A solution of methyl 2-(4-bromobenzyl)-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylate [1.4g, Reference Example 3(1)] in dry dimethylformamide was treated with tetrakis(triphenylphosphine) palladium (0) (0.266g) and

- 255 -

zinc cyanide (0.275g). The reaction mixture was heated at 100°C for 12 hours then cooled to room temperature. The mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate and then washed with ammonium hydroxide (2N), then with water and then with brine. The organic solution was dried over magnesium sulphate then evaporated. The residue was subjected to flash chromatography on silica to give the title compound (0.88g). NMR (CDCl₃): δ 3.85(s,3H), 4.00(s,3H), 4.40(s,2H), 6.70(d,1H), 7.40(d,2H), 7.65(d,2H), 7.85(d,1H).

REFERENCE EXAMPLE 15

Methyl 7-methoxy-2-(4-{pyrid-3-yl}benzyl)-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylate

A solution of methyl 2-(4-bromobenzyl)-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylate [0.268g, Reference Example 3(1)] in toluene (8ml) was treated with tetrakis(triphenylphosphine) palladium (0) (0.266g), aqueous sodium carbonate solution (0.5ml, 2M) and diethyl (3-pyridyl)borane (0.085g). The mixture was heated at reflux for 12 hours then cooled to room temperature. Aqueous work-up and subjected to flash chromatography on silica to give the title compound (0.128g). NMR {(CD₃)₂SO}: δ 3.90(s,3H), 4.10(s,3H), 4.40(s,2H), 6.70(d,1H), 7.45(d,3H), 7.60(d,3H), 7.90 (dd,1H), 8.60(d,1H), 8.85(d,1H), 10.10(s,1H).

- 256 -

REFERENCE EXAMPLE 163-Bromo-2-(3-chlorophenoxy)pyridine

A solution of 3-chlorophenol (5.34g) in tetrahydrofuran (50ml) was added dropwise to a suspension of sodium hydride (1.66g, 60% dispersion in mineral oil) in tetrahydrofuran (50ml). The solvent was evaporated and the residue was treated with 3-bromo-2-chloropyridine (6.15 g) and the mixture heated at 180°C for 6 hours. The reaction mixture was cooled to 100°C, then poured into water. The mixture was extracted with dichloromethane. The combined organic extracts were washed with 1N sodium hydroxide, then with brine, then dried over magnesium sulphate and then evaporated. The residual brown solid was subjected to flash column chromatography eluting with a mixture of ethyl acetate and pentane (2:98, v/v) to give the title compound as white solid, m.p. 88-90°C.

NMR (CDCl₃): δ 6.94(dd, J=7Hz and 4Hz, 1H), 7.07(m, 1H), 7.19(t, J=2Hz, 1H), 7.22(m, 1H), 7.35(t, J=8Hz, 1H), 7.95(dd, J=6Hz and 1Hz, 1H), 8.09(dd, J=4Hz and 1Hz, 1H).

REFERENCE EXAMPLE 17

2-Cyclopropyl-7-(3,5-dimethyl-4-pyridylmethoxy)-4-methoxy-1(or 3)-(2-trimethylsilanyl-ethoxymethyl)-1H(or 3H)-benzimidazole

A stirred solution of 2-cyclopropyl-7-methoxy-1(or 3)-(2-trimethylsilanyl-ethoxymethyl)-1H(or 3H)-benzimidazol-4-ol [0.69g, Reference Example 19(a)], triphenylphosphine (0.12g) and (3,5-dimethyl-4-

- 257 -

pyridyl)methanol (0.31g, Reference Example 23) in tetrahydrofuran (15ml) was treated with diisopropyl azodicarboxylate (0.48g). After stirring at room temperature for 4 hours the resulting homogeneous
5 solution was allowed to stand for a further 12 hours then evaporated. The residue was subjected to column chromatography on neutral alumina eluting with a mixture of ethyl acetate and pentane (1:1, v/v) to give a mixture of the title compound and triphenylphosphine oxide which
10 was used without further purification.

REFERENCE EXAMPLE 18

By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 17, but using 7-methoxy-2-methoxymethyl-1(3)-(2-
15 trimethylsilyl-ethoxymethyl)-1H(3H)-benzimidazol-4-ol [mixture of isomers, Reference Example 19(b)], there was prepared a mixture of 7-(3,5-dimethyl-4-pyridylmethoxy)-4-methoxy-2-methoxymethyl-1(3)-(2-trimethylsilyl-ethoxymethyl)-1H(3H)-benzimidazole and triphenylphosphine
20 oxide which was used without further purification.

REFERENCE EXAMPLE 19

(a) 2-Cyclopropyl-7-methoxy-1(or 3)-(2-trimethylsilyl-ethoxymethyl)-1H(or 3H)-benzimidazol-4-ol,
25 isomer A

A cooled solution of 2-cyclopropyl-7-methoxy-1(or 3)-(2-trimethylsilyl-ethoxymethyl)-1H(or 3H)-benzimidazole-4-carbaldehyde [2.00g, isomer A, Reference Example 20(a)] in dichloromethane (40ml) was treated with
30 m-chloroperbenzoic acid (3.66g). The mixture was allowed

- 258 -

to warm to room temperature then allowed to stand at room temperature for a further 12 hours. The reaction mixture was diluted with dichloromethane (40ml), then washed twice with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium
5 metabisulphite (100ml), then washed twice with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogen carbonate (100ml), then washed with brine (100ml), then dried over magnesium sulphate and then evaporated to yield the title compound as a colourless oil.

10

(b) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 19(a), but using Reference Example 20(b), there was prepared 7-methoxy-2-methoxymethyl-1(or 3)-(2-trimethylsilyl-ethoxymethyl)-1H(or 3H)-benzimidazol-4-
15 ol.

REFERENCE EXAMPLE 20

(a) 2-Cyclopropyl-7-methoxy-1(or 3)-(2-trimethylsilyl-ethoxymethyl)-1H(or 3H)-benzimidazole-4-
20 carbaldehyde, isomer A

A stirred solution of 2-cyclopropyl-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carbaldehyde [7.23g, Reference Example 21(a)] in dry dimethylformamide (115ml), at room temperature and under nitrogen, was treated portionwise
25 with sodium hydride (1.60g, 60% dispersion in mineral oil,). After stirring for a further 40 minutes the orange-brown suspension was treated dropwise with 2-(trimethylsilyl)ethoxymethyl chloride (7.15ml), over 30 minutes. The resulting yellow-orange suspension was
30 allowed to stand at room temperature for 12 hours then

- 259 -

treated carefully with a little water. The mixture was evaporated to yield a yellow oil which was dissolved in ethyl acetate (400ml). The solution was washed twice with water (100ml), then dried over magnesium sulphate and then evaporated to yield a yellow oil (10.5g) which was subjected to flash chromatography on silica, eluting with a mixture of dichloromethane and methanol (99:1, v/v) to give 2-cyclopropyl-7-methoxy-1(3)-(2-trimethylsilyl-ethoxymethyl)-1H(3H)-benzimidazole-4-carbaldehyde (mixture of isomers), as a yellow oil (7.00g). The mixture of isomers was further subjected to flash chromatography on silica, eluting with a mixture of dichloromethane and methanol (99:1, v/v) to give 2-cyclopropyl-7-methoxy-1(or 3)-(2-trimethylsilyl-ethoxymethyl)-1H(or 3H)-benzimidazole-4-carbaldehyde (isomer A).

(b) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 20(a), but using Reference Example 21(b), there was prepared 7-methoxy-2-methoxymethyl-1(3)-(2-trimethylsilyl-ethoxymethyl)-1H(3H)-benzimidazole-4-carbaldehyde, (mixture of isomers), as a pale yellow oil.

(c) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 20(a), but Reference Example 3(w) there was prepared 4-bromo-2-cyclopropyl-7-methoxy-1(3)-(2-trimethylsilyl-ethoxymethyl)-1H(3H)-benzimidazole, (mixture of isomers), as a yellow oil. The mixture of isomers was subjected to flash chromatography on silica, eluting with a mixture of dichloromethane and methanol

- 260 -

(99:1, v/v) to give 4-bromo-2-cyclopropyl-7-methoxy-1(or 3)-(2-trimethylsilanyl-ethoxymethyl)-1H(or 3H)-benzimidazole. (isomer A).

5

REFERENCE EXAMPLE 21

(a) 2-Cyclopropyl-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carbaldehyde

A stirred suspension of 2-cyclopropyl-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-methanol [7.73g, Reference Example 22(a)]
10 in a mixture of toluene (250ml) and dichloromethane (150ml), at room temperature and under nitrogen, was treated portionwise with activated manganese dioxide (11g). The resulting suspension was stirred under nitrogen at 85°C for 3 hours. The suspension was allowed
15 to cool slightly and was then filtered through hyflosupercel washing the filter pad six times with hot ethyl acetate (50ml). The combined filtrate and washings were dried over magnesium sulphate and then evaporated to yield the title compound as a cream coloured powder
20 (7.26g).

(b) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 22(a), but using Reference Example 22(b), there was prepared 7-methoxy-2-methoxymethyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carbaldehyde as a pale yellow solid.
25

REFERENCE EXAMPLE 22

(a) 2-Cyclopropyl-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-methanol

A stirred solution of methyl 2-cyclopropyl-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxylate [15.5g, Reference
30

- 261 -

Example 3(v)], in dry tetrahydrofuran (220ml), at -78°C and under nitrogen, was treated dropwise over 3 hours with a solution of diisobutylaluminium hydride in dichloromethane (270ml, 1.0M). The reaction mixture was
5 allowed to warm to room temperature over 30 minutes, then cooled to -78°C, then treated dropwise with water (27ml), then allowed to warm to room temperature. The reaction mixture was diluted with ice-water (500ml) and the pH of the mixture was adjusted to above 12 by the addition of
10 aqueous sodium hydroxide (750ml, 1M). The resulting white suspension was filtered to yield a clear filtrate which was extracted seven times with ethyl acetate (500ml). The combined extracts were dried over magnesium sulphate and then evaporated to yield the title compound
15 as a cream coloured powder (10.13g).

b) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 22(a), but using Reference Example 3(a), there was prepared 7-methoxy-2-methoxymethyl-3H-benzimidazole-
20 4-methanol as a cream coloured solid.

c) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 22(a), but using Reference Example 41 there was prepared 3-methyl-1-{3-(phenyl)propyl}-1H-indole-6-
25 methanol.

REFERENCE EXAMPLE 23

(3,5-Dimethyl-4-pyridyl)methanol

A stirred solution of 3,5-dimethyl-pyridyl-4-carbaldehyde
30 (2.3g, Reference Example 24) in methylated spirit (50ml),

- 262 -

at room temperature and under nitrogen, was treated with powdered sodium borohydride (1.28g). After stirring for 6 hours the resulting homogeneous solution was allowed to stand at room temperature for a further 12 hours then
5 treated with water (10ml). The reaction mixture was evaporated, then azeotroped with toluene. The residue was extracted three times with hot dichloromethane (100ml). The combined extracts were evaporated to afford a white solid which was subjected to flash chromatography
10 on silica, eluting with a mixture of ethyl acetate and pentane (1:1, v/v) to afford the title compound (1.2g) as a white solid, m.p. 93-95°C.

REFERENCE EXAMPLE 24

15 3,5-Dimethyl-pyridine-4-carbaldehyde

A stirred solution of 4-bromo-3,5-dimethylpyridine (3.72g, Reference Example 25) in diethyl ether (50ml), at -78°C and under nitrogen, was treated dropwise with n-butyl lithium (0.025ml, 1.6M). After stirring at -78°C
20 for 1 hour the resulting homogeneous solution was treated with dry dimethylformamide (6ml) whilst maintaining the temperature below -65°C. The reaction mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature over 1 hour, then treated with a saturated aqueous solution of ammonium
25 chloride (10ml), and then extracted twice with ethyl acetate (100ml). The combined extracts were evaporated to yield an orange oil which was subjected to flash chromatography on silica, eluting with a mixture of ethyl acetate and pentane (1:4, v/v) to afford the title
30 compound (2.3g) as a semi-solid.

REFERENCE EXAMPLE 254-Bromo-3,5-dimethylpyridine

By proceeding in a similar manner to the procedure
5 contained in J.Chem.Soc., 1956, page 771 but using 4-nitro-3,5-dimethylpyridine-N-oxide (23.06g), phosphorous tribromide (111.47g) in toluene (50ml) there was prepared the title compound (8g) as a yellow oil.

10

REFERENCE EXAMPLE 26(a) 8-Methoxy-2-n-propylquinoline-5-carboxylic acid

A mixture of methyl 8-methoxy-2-n-propylquinoline-5-carboxylate (1.0g, Reference Example 27), potassium carbonate (0.8g), methanol (30ml), and water (2ml) was
15 refluxed for 5 hours. The solution was concentrated, then diluted with water and then washed with diethyl ether. The pH of the aqueous phase was adjusted to 6 by addition of hydrochloric acid (6M). The resulting cream precipitate was washed with water and then dried at 60°C
20 to give the title compound (0.43g) as a cream coloured solid, m.p. 214-217°C. [Elemental analysis:- C, 67.00; H, 6.32; N, 5.53%. Calculated for $C_{14}H_{15}NO_3 \cdot 0.25H_2O$:- C, 67.30; H, 6.06; N, 5.61%].

25 b) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 26(a), but using Reference Example 4(y), there was prepared 4-methoxy-2-methoxymethyl-benzoxazole-7-carboxylic acid as a cream coloured solid.

- 264 -

c) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 26(a), but using Reference Example 5(b), there was prepared 3-isopropyl-1-methyl-1H-indole-5-carboxylic acid as a cream coloured solid.

5

REFERENCE EXAMPLE 27

Methyl-8-methoxy-2-n-propylquinoline-5-carboxylate

Methyl-3-amino-4-methoxybenzoate (10.0g) was treated with concentrated hydrochloric acid (14ml) and n-butanol
10 (10ml), under nitrogen, with stirring. The stirred mixture was treated with p-chloranil (13.65g) and then heated at reflux whilst a mixture of trans-2-hexanal (8ml) and n-butanol (5ml) was added dropwise over 2 hours using a syringe pump. After heating at reflux for a
15 further 30 minutes the mixture was treated with a solution of anhydrous zinc chloride (7.52g) in tetrahydrofuran (60ml), then allowed to cool slowly to room temperature and then cooled to 0°C for 18 hours. The reaction mixture was evaporated, then diluted with
20 hydrochloric acid (1M) and then washed with diethyl ether. The pH of the solution was adjusted to 6 and the resulting emulsion was treated with ammonium hydroxide and the solution extracted with diethyl ether. The combined dark green extracts were dried over magnesium
25 sulphate then evaporated. The resulting dark green oil was subjected to flash chromatography on silica eluting with a mixture of ethyl acetate and pentane (3:7, v/v) to give the title compound (1.5g) as an orange oil.
NMR(CDCl₃): δ 9.36(d, J=8.9Hz, 1H), 8.26(d, J=8.4Hz, 1H),
30 7.47(d, J=8.9Hz, 1H), 7.03(d, J=8.4Hz, 1H), 4.14(s, 3H),

- 265 -

3.97 (s, 3H), 3.02 (m, 2H), 1.86 (m, 2H), 1.03 (t, J=7.3Hz, 3H).

REFERENCE EXAMPLE 28

5 (a) 1-Cyclohexylmethyl-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxylic acid

A mixture of methyl 1-cyclohexylmethyl-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxylate [9.0g, Reference Example 29(a)] and lithium hydroxide (8.0g) in aqueous methanol (300ml, 1:2, v/v) was heated at 70°C for 4 hours. The reaction
10 mixture was cooled to room temperature, then acidified by addition of dilute hydrochloric acid and then extracted three times with ethyl acetate (150ml). The combined extracts were dried over sodium sulphate then evaporated to give the title compound as a white solid (7.3g).
15 M⁺271.

(b) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 28(a) but using Reference Example 30, there was prepared 3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxylic acid as a
20 white solid. NMR (CD₃OD): δ 2.10(s), 7.10(s), 7.30-7.40(m), 7.50-7.60(m), 8.00(s).

(c) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 28(a) but using Reference Example 29(b), there
25 was prepared 1-(2-cyclohexyl)ethyl-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxylic acid as a white solid.

(d) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 28(a) but using Reference Example 29(c), there

- 266 -

was prepared 1-(3-cyclohexyl)propyl-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxylic acid as a white solid. NMR (CDCl₃): δ 0.80-0.90, 1.00-1.30, 1.60-1.70 and 1.79-1.80 (m, 15H); 2.30 (s, 3H); 4.00-4.10 (m, 2H); 7.00 (s, 1H); 7.50-7.60 (m, 1H);
5 7.80-7.90 (m, 1H); 8.20 (s, 1H).

(e) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 28(a) but using Reference Example 29(d), there was prepared 1-heptyl-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxylic acid.
10 acid.

(f) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 28(a) but using Reference Example 29(e), there was prepared 1-(3-phenyl)butyl-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxylic acid as a white solid. NMR (CDCl₃): δ 1.60-1.70 (m, 2H); 1.80-1.90 (m, 2H); 2.30 (s, 3H); 2.60-2.70 (m, 2H); 4.10-4.20 (m, 2H); 7.00 (s, 1H); 7.10-7.30 (m, 5H); 7.50-7.60 (m, 1H); 7.80-7.90 (m, 1H);
15 8.20 (s, 1H).

(g) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 28(a) but using Reference Example 29(f), there was prepared 1-(4-trifluoromethylbenzyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxylic acid as a white solid. NMR
20 { (CD₃)₂SO }: δ 2.30 (s), 5.50 (s), 7.20-7.30 (m), 7.30-7.40 (m), 7.60-7.70 (m), 7.90 (s).

(h) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 28(a) but using Reference Example 29(g), there

- 267 -

was prepared 1-(4-methylsulphonylbenzyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxylic acid as a white solid.

(i) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 28(a) but using Reference Example 29(h), there was prepared 1-(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)methyl-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxylic acid.

(j) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 28(a) but using Reference Example 29(i), there was prepared 1-(naphthalen-2-yl)methyl-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxylic acid as a white solid. NMR { (CD₃)₂SO }: δ 2.30(s), 5.60(s), 7.30-8.10(m).

(k) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 28(a) but using Reference Example 29(j), there was prepared 1-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-2-yl)methyl-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxylic acid.

(l) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 28(a) but using Reference Example 29(k), there was prepared 3-methyl-1-(tetrahydrofurfuryl)-1H-indole-6-carboxylic acid, as a white solid, m.p. 217-219°C. [Elemental analysis: C, 69.3; H, 6.6; N, 5.2%. Calculated for C₁₅H₇NO₃: C, 69.48; H, 6.61; N, 5.40%].

(m) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 28(a) but using Reference Example 29(l), there was prepared 3-methyl-1-(4-toluenesulphonyl)-1H-indole-6-

- 268 -

carboxylic acid. NMR (CD₃OD): δ 2.1(s,3H), 2.3(s,3H),
4.8(s,2H), 7.1-7.2(m,2H), 7.4-7.5(m,2H), 7.6-7.7(m,2H),
7.75-7.80(m,1H), 8.5(s,1H).

- 5 (n) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference
Example 28(a) but using Reference Example 29(m), there
was prepared 3-methyl-1-(tetrahydrofuran-3-yl)-1H-indole-
6-carboxylic acid as a white solid, m.p. 211-213°C.
[Elemental analysis: C,68.00; H,6.20; N,5.60%. Calculated
10 for C₁₄H₁₅NO₃: C,68.56; H,6.16; N,5.71%].

- (o) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference
Example 28(a) but using Reference Example 43(a), there
was prepared 1-benzyl-3-methyl-indazole-6-carboxylic
15 acid.

- (p) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference
Example 28(a) but using Reference Example 29(o), there
was prepared 1-(4-methoxybenzyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-
20 carboxylic acid as a white solid. NMR (CD₃OD): δ
2.2(s,3H), 3.6(s,3H), 5.2(s,2H), 6.6-6.7(m,2H), 6.95-
7.0(m,2H), 7.1(s,1H), 7.4-7.45, 7.55-7.60(m,2H),
8.0(s,1H).

- 25 (o) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference
Example 28(a) but using Reference Example 43(b), there
was prepared 1-(4-methoxybenzyl)-3-methyl-indazole-6-
carboxylic acid.

- 269 -

REFERENCE EXAMPLE 29(a) Methyl 1-cyclohexylmethyl-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxylate

A mixture of methyl 3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxylate (10g,
5 Reference Example 30), cyclohexylmethylbromide (19g),
potassium hydroxide (12g) and sodium iodide (0.1g) in
acetone (200ml) was stirred at room temperature for 6
hours. The reaction mixture was evaporated. The residue
was partitioned between ethyl acetate (250ml) and water
10 (250ml). The aqueous layer was extracted three times
with ethyl acetate (250ml). The total combined organic
phases were dried over sodium sulphate then evaporated.
The residue was subjected to flash column chromatography
on silica eluting with a mixture of ethyl acetate and
15 hexane (gradient elution, 0:10 to 1:9, v/v) to yield the
title compound (9.5g). NMR (CDCl₃): δ 0.90-1.10(m),
1.10-1.40(m), 1.60-1.90(m), 2.30(s), 3.90-4.00(m),
3.90(s), 7.00(s), 7.50-7.60(m), 7.70-7.80(m), 8.00(s).
MH⁺ 271.

20

(b) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference
Example 29(a) but using (2-cyclohexyl)ethyl bromide there
was prepared methyl 1-(2-cyclohexyl)ethyl-3-methyl-1H-
indole-6-carboxylate. NMR (CDCl₃): δ 0.80-1.00(m),
25 1.10-1.30(m), 1.60-1.80(m), 2.30(s), 3.90(s), 4.10-
4.20(t), 7.00(s), 7.60(d), 7.80(d), 8.10(s).

(c) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference
Example 29(a) but using (3-cyclohexyl)propyl bromide

- 270 -

there was prepared methyl 1-(3-cyclohexyl)propyl-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxylate.

(d) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 29(a) but using heptyl bromide there was prepared methyl 1-heptyl-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxylate.

(e) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 29(a) but using (3-phenyl)butyl bromide there was prepared methyl 1-(3-phenyl)butyl-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxylate.

(f) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 29(a) but using 4-trifluoromethylbenzyl bromide there was prepared methyl 1-(4-trifluoromethylbenzyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxylate as a white solid. NMR (CDCl₃): δ 2.30(s); 3.90(s); 5.40(s); 7.00(s); 7.10-7.20(m); 7.50-7.60(m); 7.80-7.90(m); 8.00(s).

(g) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 29(a) but using 4-methylsulphonylbenzyl bromide there was prepared methyl 1-(4-methylsulphonylbenzyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxylate as a white solid. NMR (CDCl₃): δ 2.40(s); 3.00(s); 3.90(s); 5.40(s); 7.00(s); 7.20-7.30(m); 7.50-7.70(m); 7.80-7.90(m); 8.00(s).

(h) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 29(a) but using piperonyl chloride there was prepared methyl 1-(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)methyl-3-methyl-

- 271 -

1H-indole-6-carboxylate.

(i) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 29(a) but using (naphthalen-2-yl)methyl chloride
5 there was prepared methyl 1-(naphthalen-2-yl)methyl-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxylate.

(j) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 29(a) but using (tetrahydro-2H-pyran-2-yl)methyl
10 chloride there was prepared methyl 1-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-2-yl)methyl-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxylate.

(k) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 29(a) but using tetrahydrofurfuryl chloride there
15 was prepared methyl 3-methyl-1-(tetrahydrofurfuryl)-1H-indole-6-carboxylate.

(l) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 29(a) but using toluene-4-sulphonyl chloride
20 there was prepared methyl 3-methyl-1-(toluene-4-sulphonyl)-1H-indole-6-carboxylate. NMR (CDCl₃): δ
2.2(s,3H), 2.3(s,3H), 4.0(s,3H), 7.15-7.2(m,2H), 7.4-7.5(m,2H), 7.7-7.8(m,2H), 7.9-8.0(m,1H), 8.7(s,1H).

(m) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 29(a) but using tetrahydrofuran-3-yl chloride
25 there was prepared methyl 3-methyl-1-(tetrahydrofuran-3-yl)-1H-indole-6-carboxylate.

30 (n) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference

- 272 -

Example 29(a) but using benzyl bromide there was prepared methyl 1-benzyl-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxylate as a white solid. NMR (CDCl₃): δ 2.30(s), 3.80(s), 5.20(s), 7.00(s), 7.00-7.10(m), 7.10-7.20(m), 7.50-7.60(m), 7.70-7.80(m), 8.00(s).

(o) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 29(a) but using 4-methoxybenzyl bromide there was prepared methyl 1-(4-methoxybenzyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxylate as a white solid, m.p. 116-118°C. [Elemental analysis: C,73.48; H,6.27; N,4.36%. Calculated for C₁₉H₁₉NO₃: C,73.77; H,6.19; N,4.53%].

REFERENCE EXAMPLE 30

15 Methyl 3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxylate

A mixture of methyl 3-formyl-1H-indole-6-carboxylate (12.0g), p-toluenesulphonic acid (2.0g) and p-toluenesulphonylhydrazide (13.0g) in a mixture of dimethylformamide (100ml) and sulpholane (50ml) was heated at 100°C for 15 minutes and then cooled to room temperature. The mixture was treated with sodium cyanoborohydride (15.0g, 5g portions after 10 minute intervals), then heated at 100°C for 2 hours. After cooling to ambient temperature the reaction mixture was treated with ice water (500ml) giving a white precipitate. Water (1000ml) was added and the mixture stirred for 30 minutes then filtered. The off-white solid was washed with warm water then azeotroped with toluene to yield the title compound (10.2g) as a white

- 273 -

solid.

REFERENCE EXAMPLE 31

(a) 1-(6,6-Dimethyl-bicyclo[3.1.1]hept-3-ylmethyl)-3-
5 methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxylic acid

A mixture of 3-methyl-indole-6-carboxylic acid [1.8g, Reference Example 28(b)], (1S,2S,5S)-(-)-myrtenol tosylate and potassium hydroxide (3.17g) in dimethyl sulphoxide (35ml) was stirred at room temperature for 18
10 hours. The reaction mixture was partitioned twice between ethyl acetate (25ml) and dilute hydrochloric acid (25ml, 1N). The combined organic layers were dried over sodium sulphate then evaporated. The residue was subjected to flash chromatography on silica to give the
15 title compound (2.45g) as a white solid. M⁺325.

(b) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 31(a) but using cyclohexanol tosylate there was prepared 1-cyclohexyl-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxylic
20 acid as a white solid.

(c) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 31(a) but using cyclopentanol tosylate there was prepared 1-cyclopentyl-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxylic
25 acid as a white solid. NMR {(CD₃)₂CO}: δ 0.80-0.90(m), 1.20-1.30(m), 1.70-1.90(m), 2.10-2.30(m), 2.30(s), 4.90-5.00(m), 7.30(s), 7.50(d), 7.70(d), 8.20(s).

(d) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference

- 274 -

Example 31(a) but using cycloheptyl methanol tosylate there was prepared 1-cycloheptylmethyl-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxylic acid as a white solid. NMR

{(CD₃)₂CO}: δ 1.10-1.80(m), 2.30(s), 3.30-3.40(m), 4.00-
5 4.10(m), 7.30(s), 7.50-7.60(m), 7.70-7.80(m), 8.10(s).

REFERENCE EXAMPLE 32

1-Butyloxycarbonyl-3-methyl-indole-6-carboxylic acid

A stirred solution of 3-methyl-indole-6-carboxylic acid
10 [2.0g, Reference Example 28(b)] in dichloromethane (100ml) was treated with di-tert-butyl dicarbonate (5.4g), triethylamine (3.5ml) and 4-dimethylaminopyridine (0.1g). After stirring at room temperature for 4 hours the reaction mixture was
15 evaporated. The residue was partitioned three times between dichloromethane (100ml) and water (100ml). The combined organic layers were washed with ice-cold dilute hydrochloric acid (200ml, 0.1N), then with brine (150ml), then dried over sodium sulphate and then
20 evaporated. The residue was subjected to flash chromatography to yield the title compound (2.5g) as a white solid. NMR {(CD₃)₂SO}: δ 2.30(s), 7.50-7.60(m), 7.80-7.90(s), 8.70(s).

25

REFERENCE EXAMPLE 33

2-Cyclopropyl-7-methoxy-1(or 3)-(2-trimethylsilyl-ethoxymethyl)-1H(or 3H)-benzimidazole-4-yl tributyl tin

A solution of 4-bromo-2-cyclopropyl-7-methoxy-1(or 3)-(2-trimethylsilyl-ethoxymethyl)-1H(or 3H)-benzimidazole

- 275 -

[3.6g, Reference Example 20(c)] in dry tetrahydrofuran at -70°C was treated with a solution of butyl lithium in hexane (6.8ml, 1.6M). After stirring for 1 hour the mixture was treated with tributyltin chloride (3.07ml) whilst maintaining the temperature below -70°C, and the reaction mixture was stirred for 1 hour, then allowed to warm to room temperature and then left overnight at room temperature. The reaction mixture was quenched with water and then extracted twice with diethyl ether (100ml). The combined extracts were dried over magnesium sulphate then evaporated. The residual yellow oil was subjected to flash column chromatography on silica eluting with a mixture of ether and pentane (1:1, v/v) to give the title compound as colourless thick oil (3.83g).

15

REFERENCE EXAMPLE 34

2-Cyclopropyl-7-methoxy-1(or 3)-(2-trimethylsilanyl-ethoxymethyl)-4-(4-morpholinomethyl)-1H(or 3H)-benzimidazole

20 A solution of 2-cyclopropyl-7-methoxy-1(or 3)-(2-trimethylsilanyl-ethoxymethyl)-1H(or 3H)-benzimidazol-4-ylsulphonyl chloride (0.67g, Reference example 35) in dichloromethane (16ml) was treated with pyridine (0.56ml) and morpholine (0.15ml). After stirring at room temperature for 1 hour then standing overnight at room temperature the reaction mixture was evaporated. The residue was azeotroped with toluene to give the title compound which was used without further purification.

30

REFERENCE EXAMPLE 35

2-Cyclopropyl-7-methoxy-1(or 3)-(2-trimethylsilyl-ethoxymethyl)-1H(or 3H)-benzimidazole-4-yl-sulphonyl chloride

- 5 A solution of 4-bromo-2-cyclopropyl-7-methoxy-1(or 3)-(2-trimethylsilyl-ethoxymethyl)-1H(or 3H)-benzimidazole (5.96g, Reference Example 20(c)) in dry tetrahydrofuran (80ml) at -70°C was treated dropwise with a solution of butyllithium in hexane (11ml, 1.6 M) whilst
- 10 maintaining the reaction temperature below -60°C. After stirring at this temperature for 1 hour the solution was then transferred under nitrogen via a cannula to a cooled solution of excess sulphur dioxide in tetrahydrofuran (80ml) below -60°C and stirred for a further 30 minutes at
- 15 -60°C. The reaction mixture was then allowed to warm to room temperature over 1 hour and then evaporated to dryness under reduced pressure. The residue was triturated with ether to give lithium 2-cyclopropyl-7-methoxy-1(or 3)-(2-trimethylsilyl-ethoxymethyl)-4-1H(or
- 20 3H)-benzimidazolyl sulphinate as cream solid (4.82 g). A mixture of this solid and dichloromethane (80ml), cooled to 0°C was treated dropwise with a solution of sulphuryl chloride (2ml) in dichloromethane (20ml). After allowing to warm to room temperature the reaction mixture was
- 25 evaporated and the residue was azeotroped with toluene and then triturated with toluene. The mixture was filtered, the solid was washed with ether. The combined filtrate plus washings were evaporated to give the title compound as yellow gum (2.2g).

- 277 -

REFERENCE EXAMPLE 36

5-[2-Cyclopropyl-7-methoxy-1(or 3)-(2-trimethylsilyl-ethoxymethyl)-1H(or 3H)-benzimidazole-4-yl]pyridine-2-carboxamide

A solution of 2-cyclopropyl-7-methoxy-1(or 3)-(2-trimethylsilyl-ethoxymethyl)-1H(or 3H)-benzimidazole-4-yl tributyl tin (1g, Reference Example 33) in dimethylformamide (10ml) was treated with a mixture of 5-bromo-pyridine-2-carboxamide (0.275g), bis(dibenzylidene)acetone palladium(0) (39.45mg) and triphenylphosphine (36mg) in dimethylformamide (1ml). The mixture was heated at 120°C under an atmosphere of N₂ for 5 hours then diluted with methanol and then filtered through a pad of hyflosupercel. The filtrate was evaporated and the residue was subjected to flash column chromatography on silica eluting with a mixture of ethyl acetate and pentane (2:8 to 1:0, v/v) to give the title compound as cream solid (0.4g).

20

REFERENCE EXAMPLE 37

Methyl 1-benzyl-3-methyl-1H-indoline-6-carboxylate

A solution of methyl 1-benzyl-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxylate [0.8g, Reference Example 29(n)] in trifluoroacetic acid at 0°C was treated with a solution of borane-tetrahydrofuran complex in tetrahydrofuran (9ml, 1M). The solution was kept at 0°C for 24 hours, then quenched with methanol, then evaporated. The residual solid was dried under high vacuum and used without purification.

30

REFERENCE EXAMPLE 38

Methyl 3-(3-methyl-1-{3-(phenyl)propyl}-1H-indol-6-yl)-3-nitromethyl-propionate

- 5 A stirred solution of methyl 3-(3-methyl-1-{3-(phenyl)propyl}-1H-indol-6-yl)-propenoate (0.263g, Reference Example 39) in nitromethane (5ml) was treated with tetramethylguanidine (0.091g). The mixture was heated to 65°C for 2 hours then treated with a further
- 10 aliquot of tetramethylguanidine (0.091g). After heating at 65°C for a further hour the reaction mixture was cooled to room temperature then poured into hydrochloric acid (20ml, 1N) then extracted three times with ethyl acetate (25ml). The combined extracts were dried over
- 15 magnesium sulphate then evaporated. The residue was subjected to preparative layer chromatography on silica using a mixture of ethyl acetate and hexane (1:2, v/v) as eluent to yield the title compound (0.296g).

REFERENCE EXAMPLE 39

Methyl 3-(3-methyl-1-{3-(phenyl)propyl}-1H-indol-6-yl)-propenoate

- A stirred 3-methyl-1-{3-(phenyl)propyl}-1H-indole-6-carboxaldehyde (0.283g, Reference Example 40) in dry
- 25 toluene (20ml), under argon, was treated with carbomethoxymethylene triphenylphosphorane (0.409g). The mixture was heated at 80°C for 4 hours then cooled to room temperature and then poured into water (20ml). The organic phase was separated and the aqueous phase was
- 30 extracted three times with ethyl acetate (30ml). The

- 279 -

combined organic phases were dried over magnesium sulphate then evaporated. The residue was subjected to flash chromatography on silica eluting with a mixture of diethyl ether and hexane (10:1, v/v) to yield the title compound (0.263g).

REFERENCE EXAMPLE 40

3-methyl-1-{3-(phenyl)propyl}-1H-indole-6-carboxaldehyde
Dimethylsulphoxide (0.311g) was added to a stirring
10 solution of oxalyl chloride in dichloromethane (1ml, 2M)
in dichloromethane (25ml) at -60°C under argon and the
mixture was stirred for 2 minutes. A solution of 3-
methyl-1-{3-(phenyl)propyl}-1H-indole-6-methanol [0.501g,
Reference Example 22(c)] in dichloromethane (10ml) was
15 then added dropwise and the mixture stirred for 15
minutes at -60°C. Triethylamine (0.956g) was then added
and the solution warmed to room temperature and stirred
for 1 hour. The mixture was poured into water (20ml) and
then extracted three times with dichloromethane (25ml).
20 The combined extracts were washed with brine (30ml), then
dried over sodium sulphate and then evaporated. The
residue was subjected to flash chromatography on silica
eluting with a mixture of ethyl acetate and hexane (1:1,
v/v) to yield the title compound (0.283g).

25

REFERENCE EXAMPLE 41

Methyl 3-methyl-1-{3-(phenyl)propyl}-1H-indole-6-
carboxylate

A stirred solution of methyl 3-methyl-1H-indole-6-
30 carboxylate (0.5g, Reference Example 30) in acetone

- 280 -

(35ml) was treated with 1-bromo-3-phenylpropane (0.577g) and sodium hydroxide (0.116g). The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 12 hours then poured into water (35ml) and then extracted three times with ethyl acetate (50ml). The combined extracts were washed with dilute hydrochloric acid (50ml, 1N) then with saturated sodium bicarbonate solution (50ml), then dried over magnesium sulphate and then evaporated. The residue was subjected to flash column chromatography on silica eluting with a mixture of ethyl acetate and hexane (50:1, v/v) to yield the title compound (0.58g).

REFERENCE EXAMPLE 42

(a) 1-Benzyl-3-methyl-1H-indazole carbonyl chloride

A solution of 1-benzyl-3-methyl-indazole-6-carboxylic acid [0.15g, Reference Example 28(o)] in dichloromethane (20ml) was treated with dimethylformamide (2 drops) then with oxalyl chloride (1.69ml). After stirring for 2 hours the reaction mixture was evaporated and the residue was dried under high vacuum to give the title compound (0.16g) which was used without further purification.

(b) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 42(a) but using Reference Example 28(p) there was prepared 1-(4-methoxybenzyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carbonyl chloride.

(c) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 42(a) but using Reference Example 26(b) there was prepared 4-methoxy-2-methoxymethyl-benzoxazole-6-carbonyl

- 281 -

chloride as a pale orange-brown coloured solid.

(d) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 42(a) but using Reference Example 26(c) there was
5 prepared 3-isopropyl-1-methyl-1H-indole-5-carbonyl chloride.

(e) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 42(a) but using Reference Example 28(q) there was
10 prepared 1-(4-methoxybenzyl)-3-methyl-1H-indazole-6-carbonyl chloride.

REFERENCE EXAMPLE 43

(a) Methyl 1-benzyl-3-methyl-1H-indazole-6-carboxylate
15 A solution of methyl 3-methyl-indazole-6-carboxylate (0.2g, Reference Example 44) in acetone (15ml) was treated with benzyl bromide (0.898g) then with potassium carbonate (0.290g) and a catalytic amount of 18-crown-6. The mixture was stirred for 12 hours at room temperature
20 then poured into water (30ml) and then extracted three times with ethyl acetate (30ml). The combined extracts were dried over sodium sulphate then evaporated. The residue was subjected to flash chromatography on silica eluting with a mixture of ethyl acetate and hexane (7:1,
25 v/v) to yield the title compound (0.161g) and methyl 2-benzyl-3-methyl-indazole-6-carboxylate (0.069g).

(b) By proceeding in a similar manner to Reference Example 43(a) but using 4-methoxybenzyl bromide there was
30 prepared methyl 1-(4-methoxybenzyl)-3-methyl-indazole-6-

- 282 -

carboxylate.

REFERENCE EXAMPLE 44

Methyl 3-methyl-1H-indazole-6-carboxylate

5 A solution of 3-methyl-indazole-6-carboxylic acid (1.57g, Reference Example 45) in methanol (75ml) was treated with hydrogen chloride gas for 10 minutes. The reaction mixture was stirred for 12 hours at room temperature then evaporated. The residue was partitioned between ethyl
10 acetate (50ml) and saturated sodium bicarbonate solution (50ml). The combined extracts were dried over sodium sulphate then evaporated. The residue was washed with hexane to give the title compound (1.56g) which was used without further purification.

15

REFERENCE EXAMPLE 45

3-methyl-1H-indazole-6-carboxylic acid

A solution of methyl 1-triflyl-3-methyl-indazole-6-carboxylate (0.668g, Reference Example 46) in a mixture of
20 methanol and water (3:1, 80ml) was treated with potassium carbonate (1.15g). The mixture was heated at reflux for 5 hours then cooled to room temperature then poured into 1N hydrochloric acid (50ml). The mixture was extracted three times with ethyl acetate (50ml). The combined
25 extracts were dried over sodium sulphate then evaporated. The residue was washed with a mixture of hexane and ether to give the title compound (0.360g).

REFERENCE EXAMPLE 46

30 Methyl 1-triflyl-3-methyl-1H-indazole-6-carboxylate

- 283 -

The 6-triflyloxy-1-triflyl-3-methyl-indazole (1.0g, Reference Example 47) was dissolved in dimethylformamide under argon and the solution was flushed with carbon monoxide for 5 minutes. The solution was treated with
5 palladium acetate (0.11g), diphenylphosphine ferrocene (0.272g), triethylamine (0.491g) and methanol (1.56g) then stirred at room temperature for 12 hours under an atmosphere of carbon monoxide. The reaction mixture was poured into water (150ml) and the aqueous layer was
10 extracted three times with ethyl acetate (35ml). The combined extracts were dried over sodium sulphate then evaporated. The residue was subjected to flash chromatography on silica eluting with a mixture of ethyl acetate and hexane (1:7, v/v) to yield the title
15 compound.

REFERENCE EXAMPLE 47

6-triflyloxy-1-triflyl-3-methyl-1H-indazole

A solution of 6-hydroxy-3-methyl-1H-indazole (0.45g, Reference Example 48) in tetrahydrofuran (30ml) under
20 argon was treated with sodium hydride (0.198g). After the initial effervescence had subsided the solution was warmed to 50°C for 1 hour. The reaction mixture was cooled to room temperature and N-phenyltrifluoromethane
25 sulphonimide (2.48g) was added. The mixture was stirred for 2 hours then poured into water (50ml) then extracted three times with ethyl acetate (50ml). The combined extracts were dried over sodium sulphate then evaporated. The residue was subjected to flash chromatography on
30 silica eluting with a mixture of ethyl acetate and hexane

- 284 -

(1:7, v/v) to yield the title compound (1.10g).

REFERENCE EXAMPLE 48

6-hydroxy-3-methyl-1H-indazole

5 A solution of 6-methoxy-3-methyl-1H-indazole (2.0g, Reference Example 49) in dichloromethane (75ml) was cooled to 0°C then treated with a solution of boron tribromide in dichloromethane (54ml, 1M). The mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature and then stirred for
10 12 hours. The solution was poured into an ice-saturated sodium bicarbonate mixture and the aqueous layer was extracted three times with ethyl acetate (50ml). The combined extracts were dried over sodium sulphate then evaporated. The residue was subjected to flash
15 chromatography on silica eluting with a mixture of ethyl acetate and hexane (2:1, v/v) to yield the title compound (1.7g).

REFERENCE EXAMPLE 49

20 6-methoxy-3-methyl-1H-indazole
2-fluoro-4-methoxyacetophenone (5.0g) was treated with hydrazine (75ml) under argon and the mixture was heated to reflux for 12 hours. After cooling to room temperature, the reaction mixture was poured into water
25 (200ml) then extracted three times with ethyl acetate (50ml). The combined extracts were dried over sodium sulphate then evaporated. The residue was subjected to flash chromatography on silica eluting with a mixture of ethyl acetate and hexane (1:3, v/v) to yield the title
30 compound (4.05 g).

- 285 -

REFERENCE EXAMPLE 505-bromo-2-methoxyaniline

A stirred mixture of 4-bromo-2-nitroanisole (98.56g) and iron powder (113.7g) in ethanol (1.5l) was heated to reflux and treated dropwise with hydrochloric acid (350ml, 0.5N) over 1 hour. After refluxing for a further 3 hours the reaction mixture was cooled to room temperature then filtered through hyflosupercel. The filtrate was evaporated and the residue was treated with saturated sodium bicarbonate solution (2l) then filtered. The solid was washed with water then recrystallised from cyclohexane to give the title compound (61.98g) as a pale brown solid, m.p. 93-93°C.

15

REFERENCE EXAMPLE 51Methyl 2-hydroxy-4-methoxy-3-nitrobenzoate

A solution of methyl 4-methoxysalicylate (50g) in glacial acetic acid (700ml) was treated dropwise with concentrated nitric acid (50ml) over 15 minutes. After stirring for 2 hours, then standing at room temperature for 18 hours, the mixture was treated with a further aliquot of concentrated nitric acid (10ml) then stirred for 6 hours. The reaction mixture was diluted with ice then poured into water (1000ml), then filtered. The solid was dried then subjected to flash chromatography on silica eluting with a mixture of toluene and dichloromethane (2:1, v/v) to give the title compound as a white solid, m.p. 185-187°C.

30

- 286 -

REFERENCE EXAMPLE 52Methyl 3-isopropyl-1H-indole-5-carboxylate

A solution of methyl 3-iodo-4-(3-methyl-but-2-enylamino)-benzoate (2.0g, Reference Example 53) in triethylamine
5 (1.6ml) and acetonitrile (35ml) was treated with
palladium acetate (0.05g). The mixture was sealed in a
bomb and heated at 110°C for 18 hours. After cooling the
reaction mixture was filtered and the filtrate was
evaporated. The residue was subjected to flash
10 chromatography on silica eluting with a mixture of ethyl
acetate and petroleum ether (1:4, v/v) to give the title
compound (1.0g).

REFERENCE EXAMPLE 5315 Methyl 3-iodo-4-(3-methyl-but-2-enylamino)-benzoate

A solution of diisopropylamine (2.8ml) in tetrahydrofuran
(25ml), under nitrogen, cooled to -10°C was treated with
butyl lithium in hexane (12.4ml, 1.6M). The solution
was added slowly via a syringe to a cooled to solution of
20 methyl 4-amino-3-iodobenzoate (5g, prepared according to
the procedure of M.L.Hill, Tetrahedron, 1990, 46, page
4587) in tetrahydrofuran (100ml), under nitrogen and at -
78°C. The mixture was allowed to warm to 0°C and after
stirring for a further 10 minutes the mixture was cooled
25 to -78°C and then treated with 4-bromo-2-methyl-2-butene
(2.49ml). The reaction mixture was allowed to warm to
room temperature over 1.5 hours then poured into
saturated brine (100ml). The organic layer was separated
and the aqueous phase was extracted with ethyl acetate
30 (100ml). the combined organic phases were evaporated and

- 287 -

the residue was subjected to flash chromatography on silica eluting with a mixture of ethyl acetate and petroleum ether (1:9, v/v) to give the title compound (5g).

5

IN VITRO AND IN VIVO TEST PROCEDURES

1. (a) Inhibitory effects of compounds on PDE IV activity

10 1.1 Preparation of PDE from guinea pig macrophages.

The method is described by Turner et al., Br. J. Pharmacol, 1993, 108, pages 876-883. Briefly, cells are harvested from the peritoneal cavity of horse-serum treated (0.5ml i.p.) Dunkin Hartley guinea pigs
15 (250-400g) and the macrophages purified by discontinuous (55%, 65%, 70% v/v) gradient (Percoll) centrifugation. Washed macrophages are plated out in cell culture flasks and allowed to adhere. The cells are washed with Hank's balanced salt solution, scraped from the flasks and
20 centrifuged (1000 g). The supernatant is removed and the pellets stored at -80°C until use. The pellet is homogenised in 20mM tris(hydroxymethyl)aminomethane HCl, pH7.5, 2mM magnesium chloride, 1mM dithiothreitol, 5mM ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid, 0.25mM sucrose, 20mM
25 p-tosyl-L-lysine chloromethyl ketone, 10mg/ml leupeptin and 2000U/ml aprotinin.

1.2 Measurement of PDE activity.

PDE activity is determined in macrophage homogenates
30 by the two-step radioisotopic method of Thompson et al.,

- 288 -

Adv. Cyclic Nucl. Res., 1979, 10, pages 69-92. The reaction mixture contains 20mM tris(hydroxymethyl)-aminomethane HCl (pH8.0), 10mM magnesium chloride, 4mM 2-mercaptoethanol, 0.2mM ethylenebis(oxyethylenenitrilo)-
5 tetraacetic acid and 0.05 mg of bovine serum albumin/mL. The concentration of substrate is 1 μ M. The IC₅₀ values (i.e. concentrations which produce 50% inhibition of substrate hydrolysis) for the compounds examined are determined from concentration-response curves in which
10 concentrations range from 0.03nM to 10 μ M.

1.3 Results.

Compounds within the scope of the invention exhibit IC₅₀ values against guinea pig macrophage cyclic AMP-
15 specific phosphodiesterase (PDE IV) of between 10⁻¹⁰M to about 10⁻⁵M, preferably from about 10⁻¹⁰M up to about 10⁻⁶M. The compounds of the invention are from about 10,000-fold to about 50-fold more selective for cyclic AMP phosphodiesterase IV than cyclic nucleotide
20 phosphodiesterase types I, II, III or V.

(b) Inhibitory effects of compounds on PDE V activity

1.4 Preparation of PDE from human platelets.

25 The method is described by R.E.Weishaar et al., Biochem.Pharmacol., 1986, 35, pages 787-800.

- 289 -

PDE activity is determined by the radioisotopic method of Thompson et al., Adv. Cyclic Nucl. Res., 1979, 10, pages 69-92. Following incubation for 30 minutes at 30°C, [³H]-guanosine 5'-monophosphate is separated from the substrate, guanosine [³H]-guanosine 3':5'-cyclic monophosphate, by elution on cation-exchange columns, and radioactivity is determined using a liquid scintillation counter (LS 1701, Beckman) using a liquid scintillation cocktail (Flow Scint III, Packard). The concentration of substrate is 1μM. The IC₅₀ values for the compounds examined are determined from concentration-response curves in which concentrations range from 10⁻⁹M to 10⁻⁵M.

2. In vivo bronchodilator actions of compounds

2.1 Measurement of bronchodilatation.

Bronchorelaxant activity is measured in in vivo tests in the anaesthetized guinea-pig or rat according to the method described by Underwood et al., Pulm. Pharmacol., 1992, 5, pages 203-212, in which the effects on bronchospasm induced by histamine (or other spasmogens such as methacholine or leukotriene D₄) is determined. Compounds are administered orally 1 hour prior to administration of spasmogen.

3. In vivo actions of compounds on antigen

(ovalbamin)-induced eosinophilia in guinea-pigs

3.1 Treatment of animals and measurement of eosinophil numbers.

- 290 -

Male Dunkin-Hartley guinea-pigs weighing 200-250g are sensitized using 10µg ovalbumin in 1mL of a 100mg/mL suspension of aluminium hydroxide, i.p.

28 days after sensitization guinea-pigs are dosed orally. 23 Hours later this procedure is repeated and 60 minutes later the guinea-pigs are challenged with nebulised saline or ovalbumin (1% in saline) for 15 seconds. 24 Hours after challenge the guinea-pigs are killed and the lungs are lavaged with warm saline. Total and differential cell counts are made.

4. Inhibitory effects of compounds against antigen-induced eosinophilia in the rat in vivo

4.1. Treatment of rats and measurement of eosinophil numbers.

Male Brown Norway rats weighing 150-250g are sensitized on days 0, 12 and 21 with ovalbumin (100µg, i.p.). Rats are challenged on any one day between days 27-32. 24 hours and 1 hour before antigen challenge the test compound is orally dosed. Rats are challenged by exposure for 30 minutes to nebulized saline or ovalbumin (1% in saline). 24 hours after challenge, rats are killed and the airways are lavaged with RPMI and 10% foetal calf serum. Total and differential cell counts are made.

5. In Vitro Inhibitory Effects on TNF-alpha Release by Human Monocytes

The effects of compounds on TNF-alpha production by human peripheral blood monocytes (PBMs) are examined as

- 291 -

follows.

5.1. Preparation of blood monocytes.

Blood is drawn from normal donors into sodium
5 citrate (3.8%) as an anticoagulant. Mononuclear cells
are fractionated by centrifugation through a histopaque
gradient system (Accuspin, Sigma, U.K.). The mononuclear
cell fraction comprising 90% mononuclear cells
(contaminating cells being neutrophils), is suspended in
10 Hanks balanced salt solution (HBSS), (Life Technologies
Ltd U.K.) containing 1% v/v Human serum albumin (HSA)
(Sigma U.K.). The cells are washed, counted and
resuspended at 10^6 cells /ml in RPMI 1640 tissue culture
medium containing 1% v/v foetal calf serum (FCS), 50U/ml
15 penicillin, 50mg/ml streptomycin (Life Technologies Ltd),
then plated out in 96 well plates at 2×10^6 cells / well.

5.2. TNF-alpha release.

Following 2 hours incubation (37°C, 5% CO₂) medium
20 and non adherent cells are removed leaving pure adherent
monocytes. RPMI (200µl) medium is replaced with that
containing compounds for evaluation, or vehicle. Control
treatments and compounds for test are assayed in
quadruplicate wells. Compounds are tested within the
25 concentration range 10^{-10} - 10^{-5} M, and allowed to
incubate with the cells for 1 hour. LPS (*E.coli* 055:B5
Sigma, U.K.) is added in RPMI to give a final
concentration of 10ng/ml and the incubation is continued
for a further 18 hours.

- 292 -

5.3. TNF-alpha measurement.

Cell supernatants are removed and assayed for TNF-alpha by sandwich ELISA as follows.

- 5 ELISA plates (Costar, U.K.) are coated overnight at 4°C with 2.5µg/ml polyclonal goat anti-human TNF-alpha antibody (R&D Systems, U.K.) in pH 9.9 bicarbonate buffer. Polyclonal rabbit anti-human TNF-alpha antibody (Endogen, U.S.A.) is used as the second antibody
- 10 (2.5µg/ml) and polyclonal goat anti-rabbit IgG-horseradish peroxidase (Calbiochem, U.K.) is used as the detection antibody (1:8000 dilution). Colour development following addition of the substrate tetramethylbenzidine (TMB) solution (Sigma, U.K.) is
- 15 measured by absorbance at 450nm using a Titertek plate reader (ICN, U.K.).

- TNF-alpha levels are calculated by interpolation from a standard curve using recombinant human TNF-alpha (R&D Systems) (0.125 - 16ng/ml). Data are fitted by
- 20 linear regression using GraphPad PRIZM v 2.01 software. Basal TNF-alpha levels are less than 100pg/ml whilst LPS stimulation of monocytes increases TNF-alpha levels to 5 - 10 ng/ml.

25 5.4. Results.

Compounds within the scope of the invention produce 50% inhibition of LPS induced TNF-alpha release from human monocytes at concentrations within the range of about 10^{-9}M - 10^{-6}M , preferably about 10^{-9}M - 10^{-7}M .

- 293 -

6. Inhibitory effects of compounds on
antigen-induced bronchoconstriction
in the conscious guinea-pig

- 5 6.1 Sensitisation of guinea-pigs and measurement of
antigen-induced bronchoconstriction.

Male Dunkin-Hartley guinea-pigs (550-700g) are sensitized as above. Specific airways resistance (S_{Raw}) is measured in conscious animals by whole body
10 plethysmography using a variation of the method of Pennock et. al. J. Appl. Physiol., 1979, 46, 399). Test compounds or vehicle are administered orally 24 hours and 1 hour before antigen challenge. 30 Minutes before challenge the animals are injected with mepyramine
15 (30mg/kg i.p.) to prevent anaphyl-actic collapse and placed into the plethysmography chambers where S_{Raw} is determined at 1 minute intervals. Resting S_{Raw} is then determined. Animals are challenged with an aerosol of ovalbumin and S_{Raw} is determined every 5 minutes for 15
20 minutes.

7. Inhibitory effects of compounds against
antigen-induced bronchoconstriction in the anaesthetized
rat in vivo

- 25 7.1. Treatment of rats and measurement of antigen-induced bronchoconstriction.

Male Brown Norway rats weighing 150-250g are sensitized on days 0, 12 and 21 with ovalbumin (100µg, i.p.). Rats are challenged on any one day between days
30 27-32. 24 hours and 1 hour before antigen challenge the

- 294 -

test compounds are orally dosed. Rats are anaesthetized to allow recording of lung function (airway resistance and lung compliance) using respiratory mechanics software. Rats are challenged with ovalbumin i.v. and
5 the peak changes in airway resistance and lung compliance are determined.

7.2 Results.

Compounds within the scope of the invention inhibit
10 antigen-induced bronchoconstriction by up to 89% at doses of 10mg/kg.

8. Inhibitory effects of compounds on serum TNF-alpha levels in LPS-challenged mice

15 8.1. Treatment of animals and measurement of murine TNF-alpha.

Female Balb/c mice (age 6-8 weeks, weight 20-22g) are orally dosed with the test compound. After a minimum of 30 minutes they are challenged i.p. with 30µg of LPS
20 per mouse. After 90 minutes the animals are killed by carbon dioxide asphyxiation and bled by cardiac puncture. Blood is allowed to clot at 4°C, centrifuged (385 g for 5 minutes) and serum taken for TNF-alpha analysis. TNF-alpha levels are measured using a commercially
25 available murine TNF-alpha ELISA kit, purchased from Genzyme (Cat. no. 1509.00), as recommended by the manufacturer. Values for TNF-alpha are calculated from a recombinant murine TNF-alpha standard curve.

- 295 -

9. Systemic bioavailability in female Balb/c mouse

Intravenous administration :

Following surgery to expose the jugular vein for dosing, a solution of test compound in dimethylsulphoxide
5 is added at a dose of 1mg/kg body weight.

Oral administration :

A suspension of test compound in 1.5% aqueous carboxymethylcellulose is introduced into the stomach by gavage at a dose of 1mg/kg body weight. Following either
10 i.v. or oral dosing, blood is obtained by cardiac puncture following carbon dioxide asphyxiation and is obtained at a single time post-dose for each animal. Three animals are sacrificed at each time point. Blood samples are obtained at the following times after dosing
15 by both the i.v. and oral routes; 5 minutes (i.v. only), 0.25, 0.5, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5.5, 7 and 24 hours. Corresponding plasma is obtained by centrifugation of each blood sample. The drug content in the plasma samples is then determined using conventional methods.

20

9.1 Metabolism

(i) Preparation of mouse liver homogenate.

Fresh mouse liver is homogenised in sucrose-phosphate buffer. Following centrifugation the
25 resulting supernatant (liver homogenate) is used fresh or frozen in liquid nitrogen for one minute and stored at -30°C to -40°C prior to use.

(ii) Incubation of compounds with mouse liver homogenate.

To 0.5ml of mouse liver homogenate is added 0.5ml
30 taken from a vortexed mixture of 8mg NADPH added to a

- 296 -

mixture of aqueous magnesium chloride (1ml, 0.15M)
nicotinamide (1ml, 0.5M) and pH 7.4 tris buffer (8.5ml,
0.1M). The compound is added at a concentration of
1µg/ml in 10µl of solvent. Incubates are maintained at
5 37°C. Samples are taken at 0 minutes, 5 minutes, 10
minutes, 20 minutes and 30 minutes and the incubation
stopped by the addition of 100µl acetonitrile. The drug
content in the incubation samples is determined using
conventional methods.

10

10. Streptococcal Cell Wall-Induced Arthritis in Rats

10.1 Preparation of S. pyogenes purified cell wall

Purified S. pyogenes cell wall is prepared from the
cell pellet of a log-phase culture of S. pyogenes, group
15 A, strain D-58. The whole bacteria are homogenized by
grinding with glass beads and the crude cell wall
collected by centrifugation and subsequently washed with
2% sodium dodecyl sulphate in phosphate buffered saline
followed by phosphate buffered saline to remove
20 contaminating proteins and nucleic acids. The cell wall
is further purified by sonication and differential
centrifugation to obtain a purified preparation which
pelleted at 100,000 g. This material is suspended in
sterile phosphate buffered saline and the quantity of
25 cell wall determined by measuring the rhamnose content of
the preparation (purified cell wall contains 28% rhamnose
by weight). The material is filtered through a 0.22µm
filter and stored at 4°C until used for arthritis
induction.

30

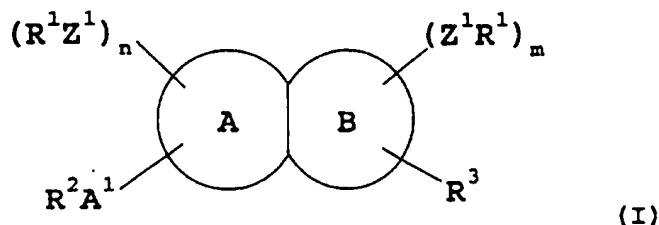
- 297 -

10.2 Arthritis Induction and measurement of joint diameters.

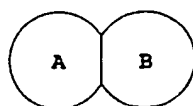
Female Lewis rats weighing 140-160g are injected intra-articularly into the left or right tibio-tarsal joint of one hind leg on day 0 with purified S. pyogenes cell wall extract (10mg in 10ml sterile saline). On day 20, rats received an intravenous injection of purified cell wall (100µg in 100µl sterile saline) via the lateral vein of the tail. Joint diameters are measured with calipers across the lateral and medial malleoli of the previously intra-articularly injected joint immediately prior to the i.v. injection and then daily through day 24. The net joint diameter is determined by subtracting the value for the contralateral joint. Body weights are also measured daily. Compounds or vehicle are administered by oral gavage on days 20-23. Typically, 8-10 animals are used per group. For each dose, the total daily dose is divided into two equal aliquots which are given at approximately 9 a.m. and 3 p.m.

CLAIMS

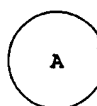
1. A compound of the general formula (I):




wherein



represents a bicyclic ring system, of
 10 about 10 to about 13 ring members, in which the ring



is an azaheterocycle, and the ring 
 represents an azaheteroaryl ring, or an optionally halo
 substituted benzene ring;

R^1 represents hydrogen or a straight- or
 15 branched-chain alkyl group of 1 to about 4 carbon atoms,
 optionally substituted by hydroxy or one or more halogen
 atoms, or when Z^1 represents a direct bond R^1 may also
 represent a lower alkenyl or lower alkynyl group, or a
 formyl group;

20 R^2 represents hydrogen, alkenyl, alkoxy, alkyl,
 alkylsulphinyl, alkylsulphonyl, alkylthio, aryl,
 arylalkyloxy, arylalkylsulphinyl, arylalkylsulphonyl,
 arylalkylthio, aryloxy, arylsulphinyl, arylsulphonyl,

- 299 -

arylthio, cyano, cycloalkenyl, cycloalkenyloxy,
 cycloalkyl, cycloalkyloxy, heteroaryl,
 heteroarylalkyloxy, heteroaryloxy, hydroxy, $-\text{SO}_2\text{NR}^4\text{R}^5$,
 $-\text{NR}^4\text{SO}_2\text{R}^5$, $-\text{NR}^4\text{R}^5$, $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{R}^5$, $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{R}^5$, $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^4\text{R}^5$,
 5 $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{OR}^5$, $-\text{O}(\text{C}=\text{O})\text{NR}^4\text{R}^5$, or $-\text{NR}^4\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{R}^5$ (where R^4 and R^5 ,
 which may be the same or different, each represent a
 hydrogen atom, or an alkyl, aryl, arylalkyl, cycloalkyl,
 heteroaryl, or heteroarylalkyl group);

R^3 represents a group selected from :

- | | | |
|----|--------|--|
| 10 | (i) | $-\text{C}(=\text{Z})-\text{N}(\text{R}^7)\text{R}^6$ |
| | (ii) | $-\text{C}(=\text{Z})-\text{CHR}^{12}\text{R}^6$ |
| | (iii) | $-\text{C}(=\text{Z})-\text{R}^6$ |
| | (iv) | $-\text{CR}^8=\text{C}(\text{R}^9)(\text{CH}_2)_p-\text{R}^6$ |
| | (v) | $-\text{C}(\text{R}^{10})=\text{C}(\text{R}^{11})\text{R}^{12}$ |
| 15 | (vi) | $-\text{C}(\text{R}^{13})(\text{R}^{10})\text{C}(\text{R}^{11})(\text{R}^{14})\text{R}^{12}$ |
| | (vii) | $-\text{C}(\text{R}^8)(\text{R}^{15})\text{CH}(\text{R}^9)(\text{CH}_2)_p-\text{R}^6$ |
| | (viii) | $-\text{R}^6$ |
| | (ix) | $-\text{N}(\text{R}^{16})\text{C}(=\text{Z})\text{R}^6$ |
| | (x) | $-\text{C}(\text{R}^{17})=\text{N}-\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{R}^{18}$ |
| 20 | (xi) | $-\text{C}(=\text{O})-\text{N}(\text{R}^{19})\text{OR}^{20}$ |
| | (xii) | $-\text{C}\equiv\text{C}-\text{R}^6$ |
| | (xiii) | $-\text{CH}_2-\text{C}(=\text{Z})-\text{R}^6$ |
| | (xiv) | $-\text{C}(=\text{Z})-\text{C}(=\text{Z})\text{R}^6$ |
| | (xv) | $-\text{CH}_2-\text{NHR}^6$ |
| 25 | (xvi) | $-\text{CH}_2-\text{ZR}^6$ |
| | (xvii) | $-\text{CH}_2-\text{SOR}^6$ |

- 300 -

| | | |
|----|-----------|---|
| | (xviii) | $-\text{CH}_2-\text{SO}_2\text{R}^6$ |
| | (xix) | $-\text{CF}_2-\text{OR}^6$ |
| | (xx) | $-\text{NH}-\text{CH}_2\text{R}^6$ |
| | (xxi) | $-\text{Z}-\text{CH}_2\text{R}^6$ |
| 5 | (xxii) | $-\text{SO}-\text{CH}_2\text{R}^6$ |
| | (xxiv) | $-\text{SO}_2-\text{CH}_2\text{R}^6$ |
| | (xxv) | $-\text{O}-\text{CF}_2\text{R}^6$ |
| | (xxiii) | $-\text{O}-\text{C}(=\text{Z})\text{R}^6$ |
| | (xxvi) | $-\text{N}=\text{N}-\text{R}^6$ |
| 10 | (xxvii) | $-\text{NH}-\text{SO}_2\text{R}^6$ |
| | (xxviii) | $-\text{SO}_2-\text{NR}^{21}\text{R}^{22}$ |
| | (xxix) | $-\text{CZ}-\text{CZ}-\text{NHR}^6$ |
| | (xxx) | $-\text{NH}-\text{CO}-\text{OR}^6$ |
| | (xxxi) | $-\text{O}-\text{CO}-\text{NHR}^6$ |
| 15 | (xxxii) | $-\text{NH}-\text{CO}-\text{NHR}^6$ |
| | (xxxiii) | $-\text{R}^{23}$ |
| | (xxxiv) | $-\text{CX}^1=\text{CX}^2\text{R}^6$ |
| | (xxxv) | $-\text{C}(=\text{NOR}^{24})-(\text{CH}_2)_q\text{R}^6$ |
| | (xxxvi) | $-\text{CH}_2-\text{CO}-\text{NH}(\text{CH}_2)_q\text{R}^6$ |
| 20 | (xxxvii) | $-\text{CH}_2-\text{NH}-\text{CO}(\text{CH}_2)_q\text{R}^6$ |
| | (xxxviii) | $-\text{CH}_2-\text{CO}-\text{CH}_2\text{R}^6$ |
| | (xxxix) | $-\text{C}(=\text{NR}^{25})-\text{NH}(\text{CH}_2)_q\text{R}^6$ |
| | (xxxx) | $-\text{C}(\text{X}^3)=\text{N}-(\text{CH}_2)_q\text{R}^6$ |
| | (xxxxi) | $-\text{CH}(\text{X}^4)-\text{CH}_2\text{R}^6$ |

- 301 -

[where:

- R^6 is aryl or heteroaryl;
- R^7 is a hydrogen atom or an alkyl or amino group;
- R^8 and R^9 , which may be the same or different, is each a
5 hydrogen atom or alkyl, $-\text{CO}_2R^5$, $-\text{C}(=\text{Z})\text{NR}^{26}R^{27}$ (where R^{26}
and R^{27} may be the same or different and each is as
described for R^5), $-\text{CN}$ or $-\text{CH}_2\text{CN}$;
- R^{10} and R^{11} , which may be the same or different, is each
a group $-(\text{CH}_2)_pR^6$;
- 10 R^{12} is a hydrogen atom or an alkyl group;
- R^{13} is a hydrogen or halogen atom or an $-\text{OR}^{28}$ group
(where R^{28} is a hydrogen atom or an alkyl, alkenyl,
alkoxyalkyl, acyl, carboxamido or thiocarboxamido group);
- R^{14} is a hydrogen atom or an alkyl group;
- 15 R^{15} is a hydrogen atom or a hydroxyl group;
- R^{16} is a hydrogen atom or an alkyl, amino, aryl,
arylalkyl or hydroxy group;
- R^{17} is a hydrogen atom or a C_{1-4} alkyl or
aryl C_{1-4} alkyl group;
- 20 R^{18} is an amino, alkylamino, arylamino, alkoxy or aryloxy
group;
- R^{19} is an alkyl, aryl, heteroaryl, arylalkyl or
heteroarylalkyl group;
- R^{20} is R^5 , $(\text{CH}_2)_p\text{CO}_2R^5$ or $(\text{CH}_2)_p\text{COR}^5$;
- 25 R^{21} is a group $-\text{L}^1-\text{R}^{29}$ [where L^1 is a straight or branched

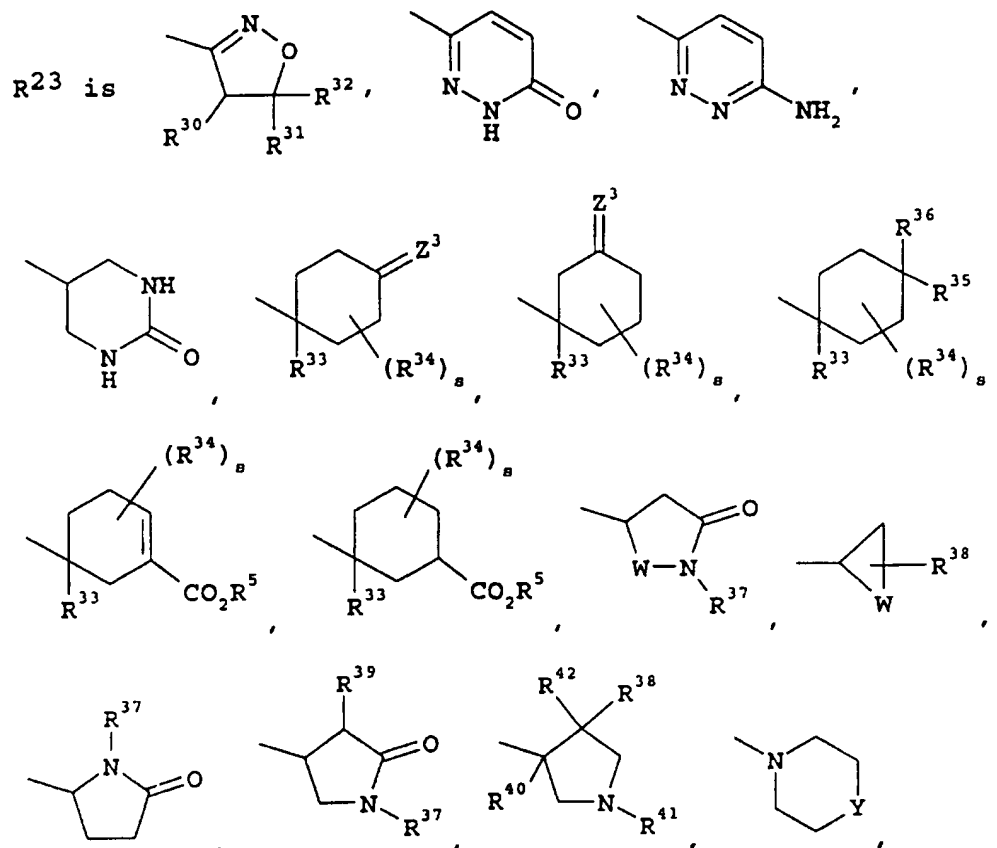
- 302 -

C₁₋₆alkylene chain, a straight or branched C₂₋₆alkenylene chain, a straight or branched C₂₋₆alkynylene chain or a straight or branched C₁₋₆alkylene chain containing an oxygen or sulphur atom, a phenylene, imino (-NH-) or
5 alkylimino linkage, or a sulphinyl or sulphonyl group, in which each of the alkylene, alkenylene and alkynylene chains may be optionally substituted, the substituents chosen from alkoxy, aryl, carboxy, cyano, cycloalkyl, halogen, heteroaryl, hydroxyl or oxo; and R²⁹ is hydrogen,
10 or arylalkoxycarbonyl, carboxy or an acid bioisostere, cyano, -NY¹Y², {where Y¹ and Y² are independently hydrogen, alkyl, aryl, arylalkyl, heterocycloalkyl, heteroaryl or heteroarylalkyl, or the group -NY¹Y² may form a 4-6 membered cyclic amine (which may optionally
15 contain a further heteroatom selected from O, S, or NY¹, or which may be fused to an additional aromatic or heteroaromatic ring)}}], or R²¹ is an optionally substituted cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl or heterocycloalkyl group which may optionally be fused to an additional
20 optionally substituted aromatic, heteroaromatic, carbocyclic or heterocycloalkyl ring (where the one or more optional substituents, for either or both rings, may be represented by -L¹-R²⁹);
R²² is a hydrogen atom, a group -L¹-R²⁹, or an optionally
25 substituted aryl, heteroaryl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl or heterocycloalkyl group which may optionally be fused to an additional optionally substituted aromatic, heteroaromatic, carbocyclic or heterocycloalkyl ring

- 303 -

(where the one or more optional substituents, for either or both rings, may be represented by $-L^1-R^{29}$); or both R^{21} and R^{22} represent aryl or heteroaryl each optionally substituted by

- 5 $-L^1-R^{29}$; or the group $-NR^{21}R^{22}$ represents an optionally substituted, saturated or unsaturated 3 to 8 membered cyclic amine ring, which may optionally contain one or more heteroatoms selected from O, S or N, and may also be fused to an additional optionally substituted aromatic,
- 10 heteroaromatic, carbocyclic or heterocycloalkyl ring (where the one or more optional substituents, for any of the rings, may be represented by $-L^1-R^{29}$);



- 304 -

{where:

R^{30} is a hydrogen atom or an alkyl, hydroxyalkyl or alkoxyalkyl group;

R^{31} is a hydrogen atom or an alkyl, carboxy, $CONHOR^{14}$,
 5 N-alkylaminoalkyl, N,N-dialkylaminoalkyl or alkoxyalkyl group; or R^{30} and R^{31} together represent a $-CH_2-O-CH_2-O-CH_2-$ group;

R^{32} is a hydrogen atom, or amino, alkyl, aminoalkyl, hydroxyalkyl, hydroxy, acyl, alkoxycarbonyl,
 10 methoxycarbonylalkyl, $-(CH_2)_pCONY^3Y^4$ (where Y^3 and Y^4 are each independently hydrogen or alkyl),
 $-(CH_2)_pSO_2NY^3Y^4$, $-(CH_2)_pPO_3H_2$, $-(CH_2)_pSO_2NHCOalkyl$, or
 $-(CH_2)_pSO_2NHCOR^6$;

R^{33} is $C_{1-4}alkyl$, $CH_2NHCOC(=O)NH_2$, $CH=C(R^{43})R^{44}$ (where R^{43}
 15 is R^{44} or fluorine and R^{44} is hydrogen or $C_{1-4}alkyl$ optionally substituted by 1 to 3 fluorine atoms), cyclopropyl (optionally substituted by R^{43}), CN, CH_2OR^{44} or $CH_2NR^{44}R^{45}$ (where R^{45} is hydrogen, OR^{44} , or $C_{1-4}alkyl$ optionally substituted by 1 to 3 fluorine
 20 atoms, or the group $NR^{44}R^{45}$ represents a 5 to 7 membered cyclic amine optionally containing one or more additional heteroatom selected from O, N, or S);

R^{34} is methyl or ethyl optionally substituted by 1 or more halogen atoms;

25 R^{35} is R^{14} , $-OR^{14}$, $-CO_2R^{14}$, $-COR^{14}$, $-CN$, $-CONY^3Y^4$ or $-NY^3Y^4$;

- 305 -

- R^{36} is $-C(=Z)R^{14}$, $-CO_2R^{14}$, $-CONY^3Y^4$ or $-CN$;
- R^{37} and R^{39} , which may be the same or different, is each a hydrogen atom, alkyl, acyl, arylalkyl, $-(CH_2)_pCO_2R^5$, $-CONHR^5$, heteroarylalkyl, aryl, or heteroaryl;
- 5 R^{38} is acyl, aroyl, $-C(=O)cycloalkyl$, alkoxycarbonyl, cycloalkoxycarbonyl, carboxy, alkoxyalkyl, $-NO_2$, $-CH_2OH$, $-CN$, $-NR^{14}COR^5$, $-NR^{14}CONY^5Y^6$, $-NR^{14}SO_2R^{46}$ [where R^{46} is alkyl, cycloalkyl, trifluoromethyl, aryl, arylalkyl or $-NY^5Y^6$ (where Y^5 and Y^6 are independently
- 10 selected from hydrogen, alkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl or arylalkyl, or Y^5 and Y^6 together form a 4- to 7-membered heterocyclic or carbocyclic ring)], $-SO_2R^{46}$ or $-CONY^5Y^6$;
- R^{40} is hydrogen, alkyl, haloalkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl, acyl, aroyl, $-C(=O)cycloalkyl$, $-CH_2OH$, alkoxyalkyl, alkoxycarbonyl, cycloalkoxycarbonyl, aryloxyalkyl, $-CN$, $-NO_2$, or $-SO_2R^{46}$;
- 15 R^{41} is $-CN$, $-C(Z)R^{47}$ (where R^{47} is hydrogen, alkyl, haloalkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl, arylalkyl, heteroaryl, C_{1-6} alkoxy, arylalkoxy, aryloxy or $-NY^5Y^6$) or SO_2R^{46} ;
- 20 R^{42} is hydrogen, alkyl, cycloalkyl, acyl, aroyl, $-C(=O)cycloalkyl$, alkoxycarbonyl, cycloalkoxycarbonyl, carboxy, $-CN$, $-SO_2R^{46}$ or $-CONY^5Y^6$;
- W is $(CH_2)_r$ or NR^{39} ;
- Z^3 is an oxygen atom, NR^{14} or NOR^{14} ;
- 25 s is zero or an integer 1 to 4;
- r is 1 to 4; and

- 306 -

Y is an oxygen atom, C(=O), CH(OH) or C(OR¹⁴)(CH₂)_pR⁶ };

R²⁴ is R⁵ or CONHR²⁵;

R²⁵ is hydrogen, C₁₋₃alkyl or (CH₂)_qR⁶;

p is zero or an integer 1 to 5;

5 q is zero or 1;

X¹ and X², which may be the same or different, is each a hydrogen or fluorine atom;

X³ is a chlorine or fluorine atom, alkoxy, aryloxy, heteroaryloxy, arylalkyloxy or heteroarylalkyl;

10 X⁴ is a halogen atom or hydroxy;

Z represents an oxygen or sulphur atom] ;

A¹ represents a direct bond, or a straight or branched C₁₋₆alkylene chain optionally substituted by hydroxyl, alkoxy, oxo, cycloalkyl, aryl or heteroaryl, or

15 A¹ represents a straight or branched C₂₋₆alkenylene or C₂₋₆alkynylene chain;

Z¹ represents a direct bond, an oxygen or sulphur atom or NH ;

n and m each represent zero or 1, provided that n is 20 1 when m is zero and n is zero when m is 1;

and N-oxides thereof, and their prodrugs, and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and solvates of the compounds of formula (I) and N-oxides thereof, and their prodrugs.

25

2. A compound according to claim 1 in which R¹

- 307 -

represents C₁₋₄alkyl optionally substituted by one or more halogen atoms.

3. A compound according to claim 1 or claim 2 in which
5 Z¹ represents a direct bond or an oxygen atom.

4. A compound according to any one of claims 1 to 3 in which A¹ represents a direct bond or a straight- or branched-chain alkylene linkage containing from 1 to 6
10 carbon atoms and optionally substituted by alkoxy.

5. A compound according to any preceding claim in which R³ represents -C(=O)NHR⁶, -C(=O)CH₂R⁶ or -OCH₂R⁶ wherein R⁶ is an optionally substituted azaheteroaryl group.
15

6. A compound according to claim 5 in which R⁶ is pyridyl or isoxazolyl substituted on both positions adjacent to the position of attachment of R⁶ to the rest of the molecule.
20

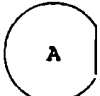
7. A compound according to claim 5 in which R⁶ is pyridyl or isoxazolyl substituted by two methyl or halogen moieties on both positions adjacent to the position of attachment of R⁶ to the rest of the molecule.
25


8. A compound according to claim 5 in which R⁶ is 3,5-dimethylpyrid-4-yl, 3,5-dihalopyrid-4-yl or an N-oxide of such groups.

- 308 -

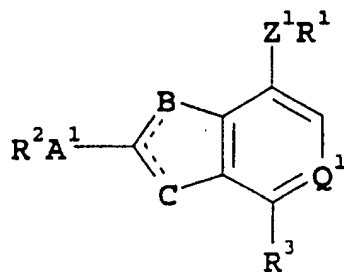
9. A compound according to claim 5 in which R^6 is 3,5-dimethylisoxazol-4-yl.

5 10. A compound according to any preceding claim in which

ring  represents a 5-membered azaheterocycle

containing at least one nitrogen atom, and ring  represents a 6-membered azaheteroaryl or a benzene ring.




10 11. A compound of formula (Ia)



(Ia)

wherein R^1 , R^2 , R^3 , A^1 and Z^1 are as defined in claim 1,

15 Q^1 is CH, CX^5 (where X^5 is halogen), a nitrogen atom or

N^+-O^- and  is  or  (where R^5 represents a

hydrogen atom or a methyl group), and N-oxides thereof, and their prodrugs, and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and solvates of the compounds of formula (I) and N-oxides

20 thereof and their prodrugs.

- 309 -

12. A compound according to claim 11 in which R¹ represents C₁₋₄alkyl optionally substituted by one or more halogen atoms.

5

13. A compound according to claim 11 in which R¹ represents methyl or difluoromethyl.

14. A compound according to any one of claims 11 to 13
10 in which R² represents a straight- or branched-chain C₁₋₄alkyl group, or cycloalkyl, alkoxy, aryl, aryloxy or heteroaryl.

15. A compound according to any one of claims 11 to 14
15 in which R³ represents -C(=O)-NHR⁶, -C(=O)-CH₂R⁶ or -O-CH₂R⁶ (where R⁶ represents a disubstituted azaheteroaryl group, or an N-oxide thereof).

16. A compound according to claim 15 in which R⁶ is
20 pyridyl or isoxazolyl substituted on both positions adjacent to the position of attachment of R⁶ to the rest of the molecule.

17. A compound according to claim 15 in which R⁶ is
25 pyridyl or isoxazolyl substituted by two methyl or halogen moieties on both positions adjacent to the position of attachment of R⁶ to the rest of the molecule.

- 310 -

18. A compound according to claim 15 in which R⁶ is 3,5-dimethylpyrid-4-yl, 3,5-dihalopyrid-4-yl or an N-oxide of such groups.

5 19. A compound according to claim 15 in which R⁶ is 3,5-dimethylisoxazol-4-yl.

20. A compound according to any one of claims 11 to 19
in which A¹ represents a direct bond or a straight- or
10 branched-chain alkylene linkage containing 1 to 6 carbon
atoms optionally substituted by alkoxy.

21. A compound according to any one of claims 11 to 20

in which $\begin{array}{c} \text{B} \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{C} \end{array}$ represents $\begin{array}{c} \text{N} \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{NR}^5 \end{array}$ or $\begin{array}{c} \text{NR}^5 \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{N} \end{array}$ (where R⁵ is a

15 hydrogen atom).

22. A compound according to any one of claims 11 to 21
in which Q¹ is a CH linkage.

20 23. A compound according to any one of claims 11 to 22
in which Z¹ is an oxygen atom.

24. A compound according to claim 11 in which R¹ is
methyl or difluoromethyl, R² is C₁₋₄alkyl,
25 C₃₋₆cycloalkyl, C₁₋₄alkoxy, aryl, aryloxy or
azaheteroaryl, R³ is -C(=O)-NHR⁶, -C(=O)-CH₂R⁶ or

- 311 -

-O-CH₂R⁶ (where R⁶ is a dimethyl- or dihalo-

azaheteroaryl), A¹ is a direct bond or a methylene

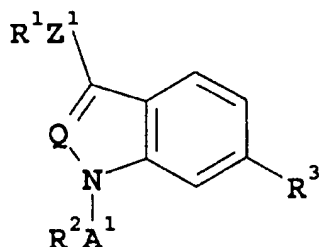
linkage; $\begin{array}{c} \text{B} \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{C} \end{array}$ is $\begin{array}{c} \text{N} \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{NH} \end{array}$, Q¹ is a CH linkage and Z¹ is an

oxygen atom, and N-oxides thereof, and their prodrugs,

5 and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and solvates of the compounds of formula (Ia) herein and N-oxides thereof, and their prodrugs.

25. A compound of formula (Ib)

10



(Ib)

wherein R¹, R², R³, A¹ and Z¹ are as defined in claim 1, and Q represents a CH linkage or a nitrogen atom, and

15 N-oxides thereof, and their prodrugs, and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and solvates of the compounds of formula (Ib) and N-oxides thereof, and their prodrugs.

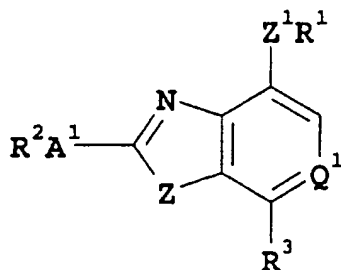
20 26. A compound according to claim 25 in which R¹ is hydrogen or methyl, R² is C₄-alkyl, C₃-7cycloalkyl, aryl, heteroaryl or heterocycloalkyl, R³ is -C(=O)-NHR⁶,

- 312 -

-C(=O)-CH₂R⁶ or -O-CH₂R⁶ (where R⁶ is a dimethyl- or dihalo-azaheteroaryl), A¹ is a direct bond or a methylene linkage, Z¹ is a direct bond, and Q is a CH linkage or a nitrogen atom, and N-oxides thereof, and their prodrugs,
 5 and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and solvates of the compounds of formula (Ib) herein and N-oxides thereof, and their prodrugs.

27. A compound of formula (Ic)

10



(Ic)

wherein R¹, R², R³, A¹ and Z¹ are as defined in claim 1, Q¹ is CH, CX⁵ (where X⁵ is halogen), a nitrogen atom or
 15 N⁺-O⁻ and Z is an oxygen or sulphur atom, and N-oxides thereof, and their prodrugs, and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and solvates of the compounds of formula (Ic) and N-oxides thereof, and their prodrugs.

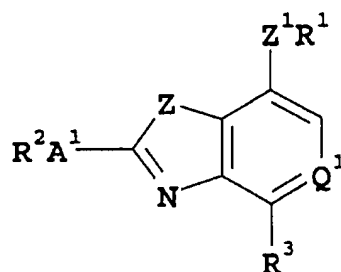
20 28. A compound according to claim 27 in which R¹ is methyl or difluoromethyl, R² is C₁₋₄alkyl, C₃₋₆cycloalkyl, C₁₋₄alkoxy, aryl, aryloxy or azaheteroaryl, R³ is -C(=O)-NHR⁶, -C(=O)-CH₂R⁶ or

- 313 -

-O-CH₂R⁶ (where R⁶ is a dimethyl- or dihalo-
 azaheteroaryl), A¹ is a direct bond or a methylene
 linkage, Q¹ is a CH linkage, and Z and Z¹ are both oxygen
 atoms, and N-oxides thereof, and their prodrugs, and
 5 pharmaceutically acceptable salts and solvates of the
 compounds of formula (Ic) herein and N-oxides thereof,
 and their prodrugs.

29. A compound of formula (Id)

10



(Id)

wherein R¹, R², R³, A¹ and Z¹ are as defined in claim 1,
 Q¹ is CH, CX⁵ (where X⁵ is halogen), a nitrogen atom or
 15 N⁺-O⁻ and Z is an oxygen or sulphur atom, and N-oxides
 thereof, and their prodrugs, and pharmaceutically
 acceptable salts and solvates of the compounds of formula
 (Id) and N-oxides thereof, and their prodrugs.

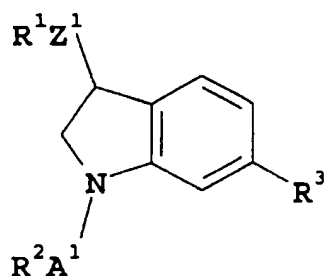
20 30. A compound according to claim 29 in which R¹ is
 methyl or difluoromethyl, R² is C₁₋₄alkyl,
 C₃₋₆cycloalkyl, C₁₋₄alkoxy, aryl, aryloxy or
 azaheteroaryl, R³ is -C(=O)-NHR⁶, -C(=O)-CH₂R⁶ or

- 314 -

-O-CH₂R⁶ (where R⁶ is a dimethyl- or dihalo-
 azaheteroaryl), A¹ is a direct bond or a methylene
 linkage, Q¹ is a CH linkage, and Z and Z¹ are both oxygen
 atoms, and N-oxides thereof, and their prodrugs, and
 5 pharmaceutically acceptable salts and solvates of the
 compounds of formula (Id) herein and N-oxides thereof,
 and their prodrugs.

31. A compound of formula (Ie)

10



(Ie)

wherein R¹, R², R³, A¹ and Z¹ are as defined in claim 1,
 and N-oxides thereof, and their prodrugs, and
 15 pharmaceutically acceptable salts and solvates of the
 compounds of formula (Ie) and N-oxides thereof, and their
 prodrugs.

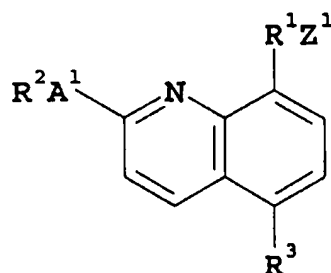
32. A compound according to claim 31 in which R¹ is
 20 hydrogen or methyl, R² is C₄₋₉alkyl, C₃₋₇cycloalkyl,
 aryl, heteroaryl or heterocycloalkyl, R³ is -C(=O)-NHR⁶,
 -C(=O)-CH₂R⁶ or -O-CH₂R⁶ (where R⁶ is a dimethyl- or
 dihalo-azaheteroaryl), A¹ is a direct bond or a methylene

- 315 -

linkage and Z^1 is a direct bond, and N-oxides thereof, and their prodrugs, and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and solvates of the compounds of formula (Ie) herein and N-oxides thereof, and their prodrugs.

5

33. A compound of formula (If)



(If)

10 wherein R^1 , R^2 , R^3 , A^1 and Z^1 are as defined in claim 1, and N-oxides thereof, and their prodrugs, and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and solvates of the compounds of formula (If) and N-oxides thereof, and their prodrugs.

15

34. A compound according to claim 33 in which R^1 is hydrogen or methyl, R^2 is C_{1-4} alkyl, C_{3-7} cycloalkyl, aryl, heteroaryl or heterocycloalkyl, R^3 is $-C(=O)-NHR^6$, $-C(=O)-CH_2R^6$ or $-O-CH_2R^6$ (where R^6 is dimethyl- or
 20 dihalo-azaheteroaryl), A^1 is a direct bond or a methylene linkage and Z^1 is an oxygen atom, and N-oxides thereof, and their prodrugs, and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and solvates of the compounds of formula (If) herein and

- 316 -

N-oxides thereof, and their prodrugs.

35. A compound selected from the following:

- N- (3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl) -7-methoxy-2-methoxymethyl-
5 3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
N- (3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl) -7-methoxy-2-phenyl-3H-
benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
N- (3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl) -7-methoxy-2-phenethyl-3H-
benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
10 2-benzyl-N- (3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl) -7-methoxy-3H-
benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
(RS) -N- (3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl) -7-methoxy-2-
(1-phenylethyl) -3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
(R) -N- (3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl) -7-methoxy-2-
15 (1-phenylethyl) -3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
(S) -N- (3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl) -7-methoxy-2-
(1-phenylethyl) -3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
N- (3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl) -7-methoxy-2- (4-methoxy-
benzyl) -3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
20 (RS) -2- (cyclohexyl-phenyl-methyl) -N- (3,5-dichloro-4-
pyridyl) -7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
(R) -2- (cyclohexyl-phenyl-methyl) -N- (3,5-dichloro-4-
pyridyl) -7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
(S) -2- (cyclohexyl-phenyl-methyl) -N- (3,5-dichloro-4-
25 pyridyl) -7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
(RS) -N- (3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl) -2- (1,2-diphenylethyl) -7-
methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
(R) -N- (3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl) -2- (1,2-diphenylethyl) -
7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
30 (S) -N- (3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl) -2- (1,2-diphenylethyl) -

- 317 -

- 7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
(RS)-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-2-
(2-phenylpropyl)-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
(R)-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-2-
5 (2-phenylpropyl)-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
(S)-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-2-
(2-phenylpropyl)-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-2-
(4-methoxyphenoxyethyl)-3H-benzimidazole-4-
10 carboxamide;
(RS)-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-2-
(1-phenylbutyl)-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
(R)-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-2-
(1-phenylbutyl)-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
15 (S)-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-2-
(1-phenylbutyl)-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
2-(4-bromobenzyl)-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-
methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
(RS)-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-2-[3-
20 methoxy-1-phenylpropyl]-3H-benzimidazole-4-
carboxamide;
(R)-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-2-[3-methoxy-1-
phenylpropyl]-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
(S)-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-2-[3-methoxy-1-
25 phenylpropyl]-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
2-(4-cyanobenzyl)-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-
methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-2-[4-
(3-pyridyl)benzyl]-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
30 N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-2-(2-methoxy-

- 318 -

- benzyl)-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
(RS)-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-2-(methoxy-phenyl)methyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
(R)-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-2-(4-methoxy-phenyl)methyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
5 (S)-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-2-(4-methoxy-phenyl)methyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-2-(2-methoxyphenoxy)methyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-
10 carboxamide;
N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-2-(3-pyridyl)-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-2-isopropyl-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
15 N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-2-methyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-2-phenoxy-methyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
2-cyclopentyl-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-3H-
20 benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
2-benzyl-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
2-cyclopentyl-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-1-methyl-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
25 2-cyclopentyl-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-3-methyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-2,7-dimethoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
2-cyclopropyl-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-3H-
30 benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;

- 319 -

- 2-cyclopropyl-N-(2,6-difluorophenyl)-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
- 2-cyclopropyl-N-(2,6-dibromophenyl)-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
- 5 2-cyclopropyl-N-(2,6-dimethylphenyl)-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
- 2-cyclopropyl-N-(2,4,6-trifluorophenyl)-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
- 2-cyclopropyl-N-(2,6-dichlorophenyl)-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
- 10 2-cyclopropyl-N-(3,5-dimethyl-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
- 2-cyclopropyl-N-(3,5-dimethyl-4-isoxazolyl)-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
- 15 N-(3,5-dimethyl-4-isoxazolyl)-7-methoxy-2-methoxymethyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
- 2-cyclopropyl-N-(4-carboxy-2,6-dimethylphenyl)-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
- N-(4-carboxy-2,6-dimethylphenyl)-7-methoxy-2-methoxymethyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
- 20 N-(3-chloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-2-propyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
- N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-8-methoxy-2-n-propyl-quinoline-5-carboxamide;
- 25 N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
- 1-butyloxycarbonyl-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-3-methyl-indole-6-carboxamide;
- N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
- 30 1-(6,6-dimethyl-bicyclo[3.1.1]hept-2-ylmethyl)-3-methyl-

- 320 -

- N-(4-pyridyl)-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
1-benzyl-N-(4-hydroxyphenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
1-(2-cyclohexyl)ethyl-3-methyl-N-(4-pyrimidinyl)-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
5 1-(6,6-dimethyl-bicyclo[3.1.1]hept-2-ylmethyl)-N-(3,5-dimethyl-[1,2,4]-triazol-4-yl)-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
1-benzyl-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-3-methyl-1H-indoline-
10 6-carboxamide;
1-(2-cyclopentyl-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazol-4-yl)-2-(4-pyridyl)ethanone;
2-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-1-[1-(4-methoxybenzyl)-3-methyl-1H-indol-6-yl]-ethanone;
15 2-(3,5-dichloro-pyridin-4-yl)-1-[1-(1-toluene-4-sulphonyl)-3-methyl-1H-indol-6-yl]-ethanone;
1-[1-(4-methoxybenzyl)-3-methyl-1H-indol-6-yl]-2-(4-pyridyl)-ethanone;
1-(7-methoxy-2-methoxymethyl-3H-benzimidazol-4-yl)-2-(4-pyridyl)ethanone;
20 1,3-bis-(4-pyridyl)-2-(7-methoxy-2-methoxymethyl-3H-benzimidazol-4-yl)-propan-2-ol;
7-methoxy-2-methoxymethyl-4-[2-(4-pyridyl)ethyl]-3H-benzimidazole;
25 2-(4-carboxamidobenzyl)-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
[2-(3-chlorophenoxy)-pyridin-3-yl]-(7-methoxy-2-methoxymethyl-3H-benzimidazol-4-yl)-methanone;
2-cyclopropyl-4-(3,5-dimethyl-4-pyridylmethoxy)-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole;
30

- 321 -

- 4- (3,5-dimethyl-4-pyridylmethoxy) -7-methoxy-2-methoxymethyl-3H-benzimidazole;
ethyl 5-(2-cyclopropyl-7-methoxy-benzimidazole-4-yl)pyridine-2-carboxylate;
- 5 2-cyclopropyl-7-methoxy-4-(4-morpholinosulphonyl)-3H-benzimidazole;
1-benzyl-7-methoxy-2-methoxymethyl-4-(2-(4-pyridyl)-ethyl)-1H-benzimidazole;
1-cyclohexylmethyl-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
- 10 1-(2-cyclohexyl)ethyl-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
1-[3-(cyclohexyl)propyl]-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
- 15 N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-3-methyl-1-heptyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-3-methyl-1-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-2-yl)methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-3-methyl-1-(tetrahydrofuran-2-yl)methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
- 20 N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-3-methyl-1-(toluene-4-sulphonyl)-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-3-methyl-1-(tetrahydro-furan-3-yl)-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
- 25 N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-3-methyl-1-(3-methoxy)-cyclopentyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-3-methyl-1-(5-chlorothiophen-2-yl)methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-3-methyl-1-(3,5-
- 30 dimethylisoxazol-4-yl)methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;

- N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-3-methyl-1-(2-methyl-thiazol-4-yl)methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
methyl 5-[6-(3,5-dichloro-pyridin-4-ylcarbamoyl)-3-methyl-indol-1-ylmethyl]-furan-2-carboxylate;
- 5 N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-3-methyl-1-(5-phenyl-[1,2,4]oxadiazol-3-yl)methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-3-methyl-1-(2-morpholin-4-yl)ethyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
methyl 5-[6-(3,5-dichloro-pyridin-4-ylcarbamoyl)-3-methyl-indole-1-yl]-pentanoate;
- 10 N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-1-(4-trifluorobenzyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-3-methyl-1-(4-methylsulphonylbenzyl)-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
- 15 N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-1-(4-methoxycarbonyl-benzyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-3-methyl-1-(3-nitrobenzyl)-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-1-(naphthalen-2-yl)methyl-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
- 20 N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-1-(biphenyl-4-yl)methyl-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-3-methyl-1-(1-benzyl-imidazol-2-yl)methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
- 25 N-(3,5-dichloro-pyridin-4-yl)-3-ethyl-1-(toluene-4-sulphonyl)-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
N-(3,5-dichloro-pyridin-4-yl)-3-isopropyl-1-(toluene-4-sulphonyl)-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
N-(3,5-dichloro-pyridin-4-yl)-3-(1-hydroxyethyl)-1-(toluene-4-sulphonyl)-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
- 30

- N-(3,5-dichloro-pyridin-4-yl)-3-(1-hydroxyisopropyl)-1-(toluene-4-sulphonyl)-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
- N-(3,5-dichloro-pyridin-4-yl)-3-formyl-1-(toluene-4-sulphonyl)-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
- 5 N-(3,5-dichloro-pyridin-4-yl)-3-formyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
- 1-benzyl-4-[3-methyl-1-(3-phenyl-propyl)-1H-indole-6-yl]-pyrrolidine-2-one;
- 4-[3-methyl-1-(3-phenyl-propyl)-1H-indole-6-yl]-pyrrolidine-2-one;
- 10 1-(4-methoxybenzyl)-3-methyl-6-(1-phenyl-2-pyridin-4-ylethyl)-1H-indole;
- cis- and trans-[1-(4-methoxybenzyl)-3-methyl-6-(1-phenyl-2-pyridin-4-yl-vinyl)-1H-indole;
- 15 6-(1-hydroxy-1-phenyl-2-pyridin-4-yl)ethyl-1-(4-methoxybenzyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole;
- [1-(4-methoxy-benzyl)-3-methyl-1H-indol-6-yl]-phenylmethanone;
- N-methoxy-1-(4-methoxybenzyl)-3-methyl-N-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
- 20 1-benzyl-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-3-methyl-1H-indazole-6-carboxamide;
- N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-1-(4-methoxybenzyl)-3-methyl-1H-indazole-6-carboxamide;
- 25 N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-4-methoxy-2-methoxymethyl-benzoxazole-7-carboxamide;
- N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-3-isopropyl-1-methyl-1H-indole-5-carboxamide;
- and the corresponding pyridine N-oxides, and their
- 30 prodrugs, and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and

- 324 -

solvates thereof.

36. A compound selected from the following:

N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-2-methoxymethyl-

5 3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;

N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-2,7-dimethoxy-3H-

benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;

2-cyclopropyl-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-3H-

benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;

10 2-isopropyl-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-3H-

benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;

2-cyclopropyl-N-(3,5-dimethyl-4-isoxazolyl)-7-methoxy-3H-

benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;

N-(3,5-dimethyl-4-isoxazolyl)-7-methoxy-2-methoxymethyl-

15 3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;

2-cyclopropyl-4-(3,5-dimethyl-4-pyridylmethoxy)-7-

methoxy-3H-benzimidazole;

4-(3,5-dimethyl-4-pyridylmethoxy)-7-methoxy-2-

methoxymethyl-3H-benzimidazole; and the corresponding

20 pyridine N-oxides, and their prodrugs, and

pharmaceutically acceptable salts and solvates thereof.

37. 2-Cyclopropyl-4-(3,5-dimethyl-4-pyridylmethoxy)-7-

methoxy-3H-benzimidazole; and its corresponding pyridine

25 N-oxide, and its prodrugs, and pharmaceutically

acceptable salts and solvates thereof.

38. A pharmaceutical composition comprising an effective

amount of a compound according to Claim 1 or a prodrug

30 thereof, and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and

- 325 -

solvates thereof in association with a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or excipient.

39. A compound of formula (I) or a prodrug thereof, and
5 pharmaceutically acceptable salts and solvates thereof as claimed in Claim 1 for use in therapy.

40. A compound of formula (I) or a prodrug thereof, and
pharmaceutically acceptable salts and solvates thereof as
10 claimed in Claim 1 for use in the treatment of a patient suffering from, or subject to, conditions which can be ameliorated by the administration of an inhibitor of TNF.

41. A composition as claimed in Claim 38 for use in the
15 treatment of a patient suffering from, or subject to, conditions which can be ameliorated by the administration of an inhibitor of TNF.

42. A compound of formula (I) or a prodrug thereof, and
20 pharmaceutically acceptable salts and solvates thereof as claimed in Claim 1 for use in the treatment of a patient suffering from, or subject to, conditions which can be ameliorated by the administration of an inhibitor of type IV cyclic AMP phosphodiesterase.

25

43. A composition as claimed in Claim 38 for use in the treatment of a patient suffering from, or subject to, conditions which can be ameliorated by the administration of an inhibitor of type IV cyclic AMP phosphodiesterase.

30

- 326 -

44. Use of a compound of formula (I) or a prodrug thereof, and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and solvates thereof as claimed in Claim 1 in the manufacture of a medicament for the treatment of a patient suffering from, or subject to, conditions which can be ameliorated by the administration of an inhibitor of TNF.

45. Use of a compound of formula (I) or a prodrug thereof, and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and solvates thereof as claimed in Claim 1 in the manufacture of a medicament for the treatment of a patient suffering from, or subject to, conditions which can be ameliorated by the administration of an inhibitor of type IV cyclic AMP phosphodiesterase.

15

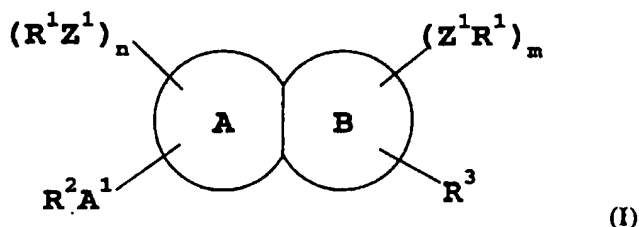
46. A method for the treatment of a human or animal patient suffering from, or subject to, conditions which can be ameliorated by the administration of an inhibitor of type IV cyclic AMP phosphodiesterase or of TNF comprising administering to said patient an effective amount of a compound of formula (I) or a prodrug thereof, and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and solvates thereof as claimed in Claim 1.

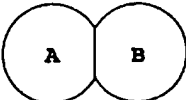
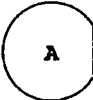
47. A compound as substantially hereinbefore described with reference to the Examples.


AMENDED CLAIMS


[received by the International Bureau on 3 December 1997 (03.12.97);
original claims 1-47 replaced by amended claims 1-41 (21 pages)]


1. Use of a compound of formula (I) :



wherein  represents a bicyclic ring system in which ring  represents a

5-membered azaheterocycle, and ring  represents a 6-membered azaheteroaryl, or an

10 optionally halo substituted benzene ring, except that  cannot represent an oxazole or

thiazole ring when  represents an optionally halo substituted benzene ring;

R^1 represents hydrogen or a straight- or branched-chain alkyl group of 1 to about 4 carbon atoms, optionally substituted by hydroxy or one or more halogen atoms, or when Z^1 represents a direct bond R^1 may also represent a lower alkenyl or lower alkynyl group, or a formyl group;

15

R^2 represents hydrogen, alkenyl, alkoxy, alkyl, alkylsulphinyl, alkylsulphonyl, alkylthio, aryl, arylalkyloxy, arylalkylsulphinyl, arylalkylsulphonyl, arylalkylthio, aryloxy, arylsulphinyl, arylsulphonyl, arylthio, cyano, cycloalkenyl, cycloalkenyloxy, cycloalkyl, cycloalkyloxy, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkyloxy, heteroaryloxy, hydroxy, $-SO_2NR^4R^5$, $-NR^4SO_2R^5$, $-NR^4R^5$, $-C(=O)R^5$, $-C(=O)C(=O)R^5$, $-C(=O)NR^4R^5$, $-C(=O)OR^5$, $-O(C=O)NR^4R^5$, or $-NR^4C(=O)R^5$

20 (where R^4 and R^5 , which may be the same or different, each represent a hydrogen atom, or an alkyl, aryl, arylalkyl, cycloalkyl, heteroaryl, or heteroarylalkyl group);

R^3 represents a group selected from :

(i) $-C(=Z)-N(R^7)R^6$

| | | |
|----|----------|--|
| | (ii) | $-\text{C}(=\text{Z})-\text{CHR}^{12}\text{R}^6$ |
| | (iii) | $-\text{C}(=\text{Z})-\text{R}^6$ |
| | (iv) | $-\text{CR}^8=\text{C}(\text{R}^9)(\text{CH}_2)_p-\text{R}^6$ |
| | (v) | $-\text{C}(\text{R}^{10})=\text{C}(\text{R}^{11})\text{R}^{12}$ |
| 5 | (vi) | $-\text{C}(\text{R}^{13})(\text{R}^{10})\text{C}(\text{R}^{11})(\text{R}^{14})\text{R}^{12}$ |
| | (vii) | $-\text{C}(\text{R}^8)(\text{R}^{15})\text{CH}(\text{R}^9)(\text{CH}_2)_p-\text{R}^6$ |
| | (viii) | $-\text{R}^6$ |
| | (ix) | $-\text{N}(\text{R}^{16})\text{C}(=\text{Z})\text{R}^6$ |
| | (x) | $-\text{C}(\text{R}^{17})=\text{N}-\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{R}^{18}$ |
| 10 | (xi) | $-\text{C}(=\text{O})-\text{N}(\text{R}^{19})\text{OR}^{20}$ |
| | (xii) | $-\text{C}\equiv\text{C}-\text{R}^6$ |
| | (xiii) | $-\text{CH}_2-\text{C}(=\text{Z})-\text{R}^6$ |
| | (xiv) | $-\text{C}(=\text{Z})-\text{C}(=\text{Z})\text{R}^6$ |
| | (xv) | $-\text{CH}_2-\text{NHR}^6$ |
| 15 | (xvi) | $-\text{CH}_2-\text{ZR}^6$ |
| | (xvii) | $-\text{CH}_2-\text{SOR}^6$ |
| | (xviii) | $-\text{CH}_2-\text{SO}_2\text{R}^6$ |
| | (xix) | $-\text{CF}_2-\text{OR}^6$ |
| | (xx) | $-\text{NH}-\text{CH}_2\text{R}^6$ |
| 20 | (xxi) | $-\text{Z}-\text{CH}_2\text{R}^6$ |
| | (xxii) | $-\text{SO}-\text{CH}_2\text{R}^6$ |
| | (xxiii) | $-\text{O}-\text{C}(=\text{Z})\text{R}^6$ |
| | (xxiv) | $-\text{SO}_2-\text{CH}_2\text{R}^6$ |
| | (xxv) | $-\text{O}-\text{CF}_2\text{R}^6$ |
| 25 | (xxvi) | $-\text{N}=\text{N}-\text{R}^6$ |
| | (xxvii) | $-\text{NH}-\text{SO}_2\text{R}^6$ |
| | (xxviii) | $-\text{SO}_2-\text{NR}^{21}\text{R}^{22}$ |
| | (xxix) | $-\text{CZ}-\text{CZ}-\text{NHR}^6$ |
| | (xxx) | $-\text{NH}-\text{CO}-\text{OR}^6$ |
| 30 | (xxxi) | $-\text{O}-\text{CO}-\text{NHR}^6$ |

| | | |
|----|-----------|---|
| | (xxxii) | -NH-CO-NHR ⁶ |
| | (xxxiii) | -R ²³ |
| | (xxxiv) | -CX ¹ =CX ² R ⁶ |
| | (xxxv) | -C(=NOR ²⁴)-(CH ₂) _q R ⁶ |
| 5 | (xxxvi) | -CH ₂ -CO-NH(CH ₂) _q R ⁶ |
| | (xxxvii) | -CH ₂ -NH-CO(CH ₂) _q R ⁶ |
| | (xxxviii) | -CH ₂ -CO-CH ₂ R ⁶ |
| | (xxxix) | -C(=NR ²⁵)-NH(CH ₂) _q R ⁶ |
| | (xxxx) | -C(X ³)=N-(CH ₂) _q R ⁶ |
| 10 | (xxxxi) | -CH(X ⁴)-CH ₂ R ⁶ |

[where:

R⁶ is aryl or heteroaryl;

R⁷ is a hydrogen atom or an alkyl or amino group;

R⁸ and R⁹, which may be the same or different, is each a hydrogen atom or alkyl, -CO₂R⁵,

15 -C(=Z)NR²⁶R²⁷ (where R²⁶ and R²⁷ may be the same or different and each is as described for R⁵), -CN or -CH₂CN;

R¹⁰ and R¹¹, which may be the same or different, is each a group -(CH₂)_pR⁶;

R¹² is a hydrogen atom or an alkyl group;

20 R¹³ is a hydrogen or halogen atom or an -OR²⁸ group (where R²⁸ is a hydrogen atom or an alkyl, alkenyl, alkoxyalkyl, acyl, carboxamido or thiocarboxamido group);

R¹⁴ is a hydrogen atom or an alkyl group;

R¹⁵ is a hydrogen atom or a hydroxyl group;

R¹⁶ is a hydrogen atom or an alkyl, amino, aryl, arylalkyl or hydroxy group;

R¹⁷ is a hydrogen atom or a C₁₋₄alkyl or

25 arylC₁₋₄alkyl group;

R¹⁸ is an amino, alkylamino, arylamino, alkoxy or aryloxy group;

R¹⁹ is an alkyl, aryl, heteroaryl, arylalkyl or heteroarylalkyl group;

R²⁰ is R⁵, (CH₂)_pCO₂R⁵ or (CH₂)_pCOR⁵;

30 R²¹ is a group -L¹-R²⁹ [where L¹ is a straight or branched C₁₋₆alkylene chain, a straight or branched C₂₋₆alkenylene chain, a straight or branched C₂₋₆alkynylene chain or a straight or

branched C₁₋₆alkylene chain containing an oxygen or sulphur atom, a phenylene, imino (-NH-) or alkylimino linkage, or a sulphinyl or sulphonyl group, in which each of the alkylene, alkenylene and alkynylene chains may be optionally substituted, the substituents chosen from alkoxy, aryl, carboxy, cyano, cycloalkyl, halogen, heteroaryl, hydroxyl or oxo; and R²⁹ is

5 hydrogen, or arylalkoxycarbonyl, carboxy or an acid bioisostere, cyano, -NY¹Y², {where Y¹ and Y² are independently hydrogen, alkyl, aryl, arylalkyl, heterocycloalkyl, heteroaryl or heteroarylalkyl, or the group -NY¹Y² may form a 4-6 membered cyclic amine (which may optionally contain a further heteroatom selected from O, S, or NY¹, or which may be fused to an additional aromatic or heteroaromatic ring)}], or R²¹ is an optionally substituted cycloalkyl,

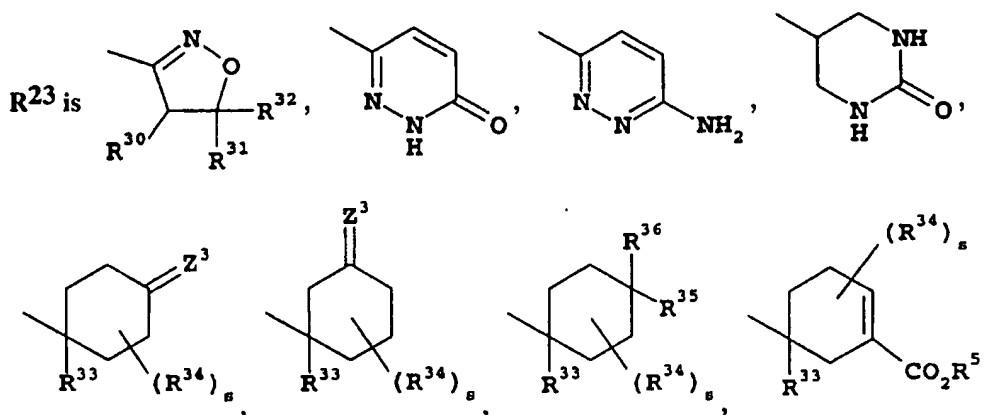
10 cycloalkenyl or heterocycloalkyl group which may optionally be fused to an additional optionally substituted aromatic, heteroaromatic, carbocyclic or heterocycloalkyl ring (where the one or more optional substituents, for either or both rings, may be represented by -L¹-R²⁹);

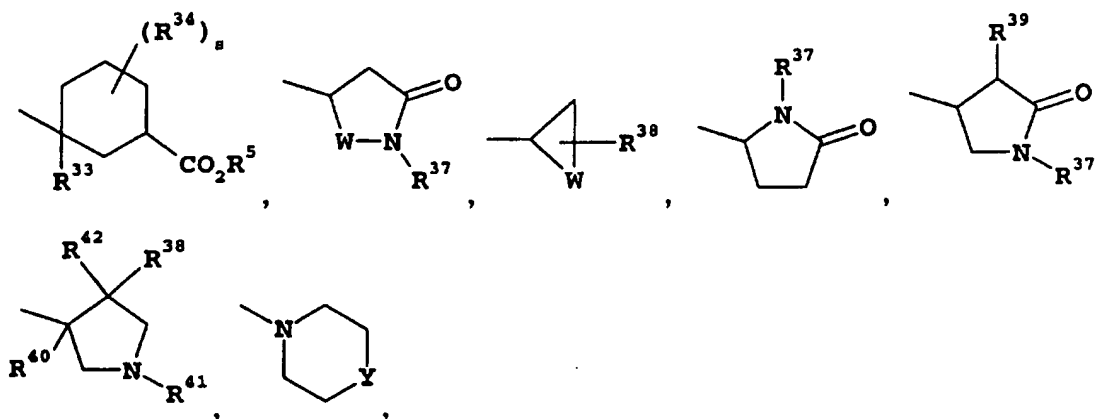
R²² is a hydrogen atom, a group -L¹-R²⁹, or an optionally substituted aryl, heteroaryl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl or heterocycloalkyl group which may optionally be fused to an

15 additional optionally substituted aromatic, heteroaromatic, carbocyclic or heterocycloalkyl ring (where the one or more optional substituents, for either or both rings, may be represented by -L¹-R²⁹); or both R²¹ and R²² represent aryl or heteroaryl each optionally substituted by -L¹-R²⁹; or the group -NR²¹R²² represents an optionally substituted, saturated or unsaturated

3 to 8 membered cyclic amine ring, which may optionally contain one or more heteroatoms

20 selected from O, S or N, and may also be fused to an additional optionally substituted aromatic, heteroaromatic, carbocyclic or heterocycloalkyl ring (where the one or more optional substituents, for any of the rings, may be represented by -L¹-R²⁹);



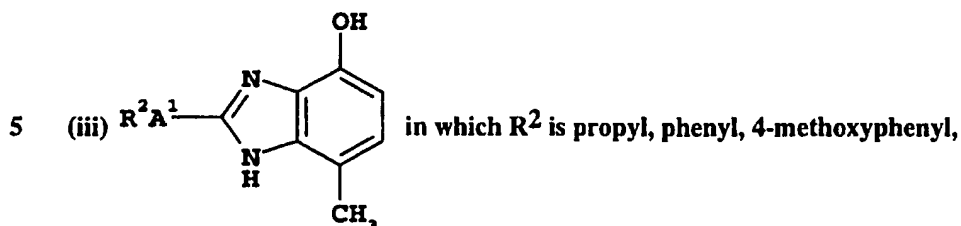


{ where:

- R³⁰** is a hydrogen atom or an alkyl, hydroxyalkyl or alkoxyalkyl group;
- 5 R³¹** is a hydrogen atom or an alkyl, carboxy, CONHOR¹⁴, N-alkylaminoalkyl, N,N-dialkylaminoalkyl or alkoxyalkyl group; or **R³⁰** and **R³¹** together represent a -CH₂-O-CH₂-O-CH₂- group;
- R³²** is a hydrogen atom, or amino, alkyl, aminoalkyl, hydroxyalkyl, hydroxy, acyl, alkoxycarbonyl, methoxycarbonylalkyl, -(CH₂)_pCONY³Y⁴ (where Y³ and Y⁴ are each
- 10** independently hydrogen or alkyl), -(CH₂)_pSO₂NY³Y⁴, -(CH₂)_pPO₃H₂, -(CH₂)_pSO₂NHCOalkyl, or -(CH₂)_pSO₂NHCOR⁶;
- R³³** is C₁₋₄alkyl, CH₂NHCOCONH₂, CH=C(R⁴³)R⁴⁴ (where R⁴³ is R⁴⁴ or fluorine and R⁴⁴ is hydrogen or C₁₋₄alkyl optionally substituted by 1 to 3 fluorine atoms), cyclopropyl (optionally substituted by R⁴³), CN, CH₂OR⁴⁴ or CH₂NR⁴⁴R⁴⁵ (where R⁴⁵ is hydrogen, OR⁴⁴, or
- 15** C₁₋₄alkyl optionally substituted by 1 to 3 fluorine atoms, or the group NR⁴⁴R⁴⁵ represents a 5 to 7 membered cyclic amine optionally containing one or more additional heteroatom selected from O, N, or S);
- R³⁴** is methyl or ethyl optionally substituted by 1 or more halogen atoms;
- R³⁵** is R¹⁴, -OR¹⁴, -CO₂R¹⁴, -COR¹⁴, -CN, -CONY³Y⁴ or -NY³Y⁴;
- 20 R³⁶** is -C(=Z)R¹⁴, -CO₂R¹⁴, -CONY³Y⁴ or -CN;
- R³⁷** and **R³⁹**, which may be the same or different, is each a hydrogen atom, alkyl, acyl, arylalkyl, -(CH₂)_pCO₂R⁵, -CONHR⁵, heteroarylalkyl, aryl, or heteroaryl;
- R³⁸** is acyl, aroyl, -C(=O)cycloalkyl, alkoxycarbonyl, cycloalkoxycarbonyl, carboxy, alkoxyalkyl, -NO₂, -CH₂OH, -CN, -NR¹⁴COR⁵, -NR¹⁴CONY⁵Y⁶, -NR¹⁴SO₂R⁴⁶ [where R⁴⁶ is alkyl,

- cycloalkyl, trifluoromethyl, aryl, arylalkyl or $-NY^5Y^6$ (where Y^5 and Y^6 are independently selected from hydrogen, alkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl or arylalkyl, or Y^5 and Y^6 together form a 4- to 7-membered heterocyclic or carbocyclic ring)], $-SO_2R^{46}$ or $-CONY^5Y^6$;
- R^{40} is hydrogen, alkyl, haloalkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl, acyl, aroyl, $-C(=O)cycloalkyl$, $-CH_2OH$,
 5 alkoxyalkyl, alkoxycarbonyl, cycloalkoxycarbonyl, aryloxycarbonyl, $-CN$, $-NO_2$, or $-SO_2R^{46}$;
- R^{41} is $-CN$, $-C(Z)R^{47}$ (where R^{47} is hydrogen, alkyl, haloalkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl, arylalkyl, heteroaryl, $C_{1-6}alkoxy$, arylalkoxy, aryloxy or $-NY^5Y^6$) or SO_2R^{46} ;
- R^{42} is hydrogen, alkyl, cycloalkyl, acyl, aroyl, $-C(=O)cycloalkyl$, alkoxycarbonyl, cycloalkoxycarbonyl, carboxy, $-CN$, $-SO_2R^{46}$ or $-CONY^5Y^6$;
- 10 W is $(CH_2)_r$ or NR^{39} ;
- Z^3 is an oxygen atom, NR^{14} or NOR^{14} ;
- s is zero or an integer 1 to 4;
- r is 1 to 4; and
- Y is an oxygen atom, $C(=O)$, $CH(OH)$ or $C(OR^{14})(CH_2)_pR^6$ };
- 15 R^{24} is R^5 or $CONHR^{25}$;
- R^{25} is hydrogen, $C_{1-3}alkyl$ or $(CH_2)_qR^6$;
- p is zero or an integer 1 to 5;
- q is zero or 1;
- X^1 and X^2 , which may be the same or different, is each a hydrogen or fluorine atom;
- 20 X^3 is a chlorine or fluorine atom, alkoxy, aryloxy, heteroaryloxy, arylalkyloxy or heteroarylalkyl;
- X^4 is a halogen atom or hydroxy;
- Z represents an oxygen or sulphur atom];
- A^1 represents a direct bond, or a straight or branched $C_{1-6}alkylene$ chain optionally
 25 substituted by hydroxyl, alkoxy, oxo, cycloalkyl, aryl or heteroaryl, or A^1 represents a straight or branched $C_{2-6}alkenylene$ or $C_{2-6}alkynylene$ chain;
- Z^1 represents a direct bond, an oxygen or sulphur atom or NH ;
- n and m each represent zero or 1, provided that n is 1 when m is zero and n is zero when m is 1;

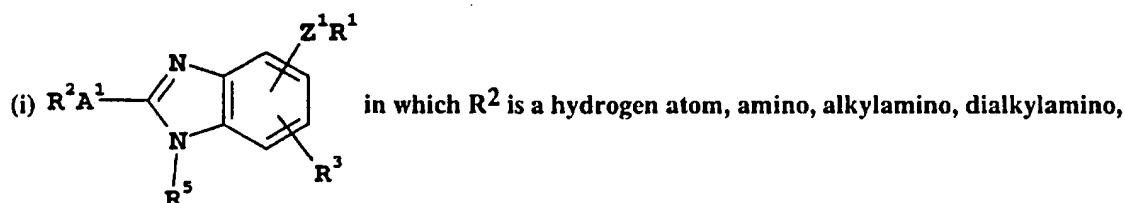
C₁₋₄alkyl, R³ is di- or tri-substituted benzyloxy in which one of the substituents is acylamino or aroylamino and the other substituent(s) is/are selected from halo, alkyl or alkoxy and R⁵ is hydrogen, alkyl, aryl or arylalkyl; or



3-trifluoromethylphenyl, 4-dimethylaminophenyl or 2-furyl and A¹ is a direct bond; or R² is phenyl, 4-methylphenyl, 4-methoxyphenyl, 3-methoxyphenyl, 2-methoxyphenyl, 4-ethoxyphenyl, 4-hydroxyphenyl, 3,4-dimethoxyphenyl, 3,4,5-trimethoxyphenyl, 1-naphthyl, 2-naphthyl, 2-thienyl or 3-pyridyl and A¹ is methylene; or R² is phenyl and A¹ is ethylene.

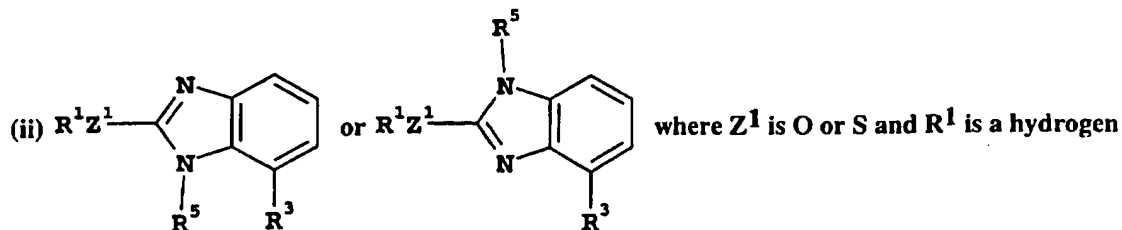
10

4. A compound of formula (I) as defined in claim 1 except 6-benzyloxy-1-methyl-1H-indole, N-(1-methyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-indol-6-yl)-benzamide, (3RS)-1-benzyl-6-benzyloxy-2,3-dihydro-4-iodo-3-iodomethyl-1H-indole, 1-benzyl-6-benzyloxy-4-iodo-3-methyl-1H-indole, (3RS)-1-benzyl-6-benzyloxy-2,3-dihydro-3-hydroxymethyl-4-iodo-1H-indole, (3RS)-1-benzyl-6-benzyloxy-2,3-dihydro-3-hydroxymethyl-1H-indole, (3RS)-1-benzyl-6-benzyloxy-3-chloromethyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-indole, or compounds of formula

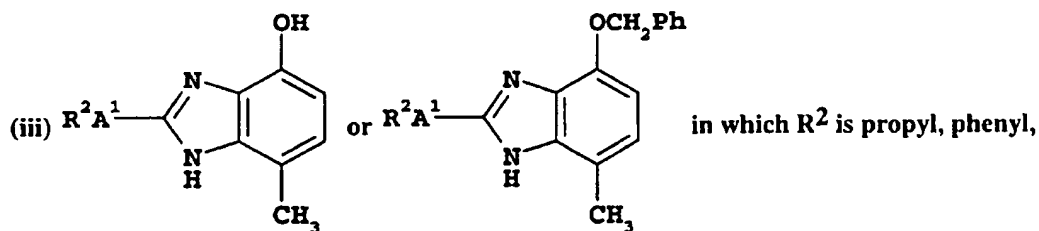


alkyl or aryl when A¹ is a direct bond; or R² is a hydrogen atom, hydroxy, alkyl or aryl when A¹ is a straight or branched C₁₋₆alkenylene; Z¹R¹ is hydrogen, alkyl or alkoxy; R⁵ is hydrogen, alkyl or phenylalkyl; and R³ represents (iv), (vii), (xv), (xvi), (xx) or (xxi) in which R⁸ and R⁹ are hydrogen or alkyl, R¹⁵ is hydrogen, and p, Z and R⁶ are as hereinbefore defined;

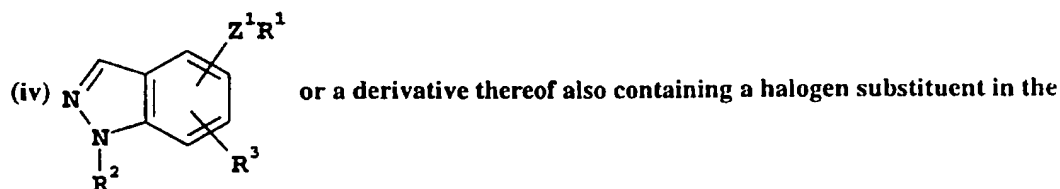
20



atom, or a straight or branched C_{1-4} alkyl, or Z^1 is a bond and R^1 is straight or branched C_{1-4} alkyl optionally substituted by hydroxy or halo, or Z^1 is NH and R^1 is a hydrogen atom, or a straight or branched C_{1-4} alkyl, R^3 is di- or tri-substituted benzyloxy in which one of the substituents is acylamino or aroylamino and the other substituent(s) is/are selected from halo, alkyl or alkoxy and R^5 is hydrogen, alkyl, aryl or arylalkyl; or



4-methoxyphenyl, 3-trifluoromethylphenyl, 4-dimethylaminophenyl or 2-furyl and A^1 is a direct bond; or R^2 is phenyl, 4-methylphenyl, 4-methoxyphenyl, 3-methoxyphenyl, 2-methoxyphenyl, 4-ethoxyphenyl, 4-hydroxyphenyl, 3,4-dimethoxyphenyl, 3,4,5-trimethoxyphenyl, 1-naphthyl, 2-naphthyl, 2-thienyl or 3-pyridyl and A^1 is methylene; or R^2 is phenyl and A^1 is ethylene; or



indazole benzene ring, in which Z^1 is a direct bond and R^1 is hydrogen, formyl or a straight- or branched-chain alkyl group of 1 to about 4 carbon atoms (optionally substituted hydroxy or one or more halogen atoms); or Z^1 is an oxygen atom or NH and R^1 is hydrogen, a straight- or branched-chain alkyl group of 1 to about 4 carbon atoms (optionally substituted hydroxy or one or more halogen atoms), a lower alkenyl or a lower alkynyl group; or Z^1 is an sulphur atom and R^1 is a straight- or branched-chain alkyl group of 1 to about 4 carbon atoms (optionally substituted hydroxy or one or more halogen atoms), a lower alkenyl or a lower alkynyl group; R^2 is optionally substituted phenyl or optionally substituted 2-pyridyl; and R^3 represents a group (ix) in which R^{16} is hydrogen or alkyl, Z is an oxygen atom and R^6 is an unsubstituted 5 or 6 membered heteroaryl group; a group (xx), (xxi), (xxii), (xxiv) or (xxx) in which R^6 is phenyl

or heteroaryl and Z is as defined hereinbefore; a group (xxiii) in which Z is an oxygen atom and R⁶ is an unsubstituted 5 or 6 membered heteroaryl group; or a group (xxvii) in which R⁶ is an unsubstituted 5 or 6 membered heteroaryl group.

5 5. Use, composition or compound according to any preceding claim in which in formula (I) R¹ represents C₁₋₄alkyl optionally substituted by one or more halogen atoms.

6. Use, composition or compound according to any preceding claim in which in formula (I) Z¹ represents a direct bond or an oxygen atom.

10

7. Use, composition or compound according to any preceding claim in which in formula (I) A¹ represents a direct bond or a straight- or branched-chain alkylene linkage containing from 1 to 6 carbon atoms and optionally substituted by alkoxy.

15 8. Use, composition or compound according to any preceding claim in which in formula (I) R³ represents -C(=O)NHR⁶, -C(=O)CH₂R⁶ or -OCH₂R⁶ wherein R⁶ is an optionally substituted azaheteroaryl group.

9. Use, composition or compound according to claim 8 in which R⁶ is pyridyl or isoxazolyl
20 substituted on both positions adjacent to the position of attachment of R⁶ to the rest of the molecule.

10. Use, composition or compound according to claim 8 in which R⁶ is pyridyl or isoxazolyl substituted by two methyl or halogen moieties on both positions adjacent to the position of
25 attachment of R⁶ to the rest of the molecule.

11. Use, composition or compound according to claim 8 in which R⁶ is 3,5-dimethylpyrid-4-yl, 3,5-dihalopyrid-4-yl or an N-oxide of such groups.

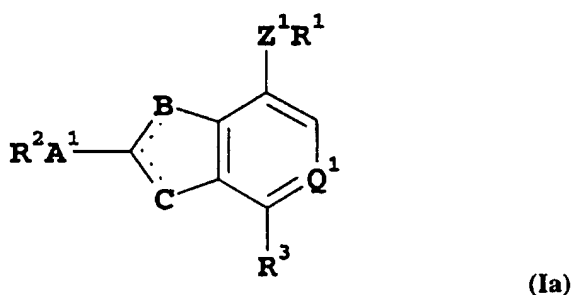
30 12. Use, composition or compound according to claim 8 in which R⁶ is 3,5-dimethylisoxazol-4-yl.

13. Use, composition or compound according to any preceding claim in which in formula (I)

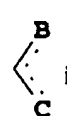
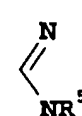
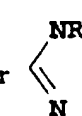
ring  represents a 5-membered azaheterocycle containing at least one nitrogen atom,

and ring  represents a 6-membered azaheteroaryl or a benzene ring.

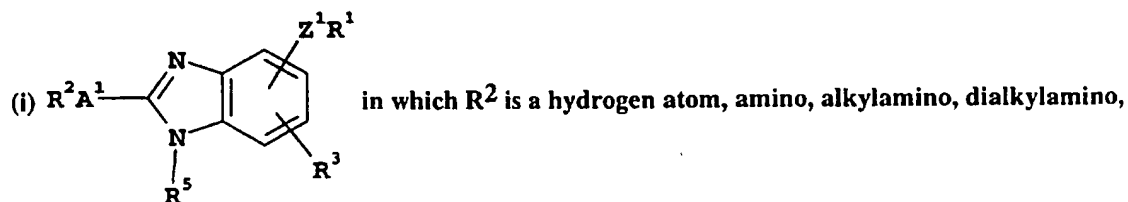
5 14. A compound of formula (Ia)



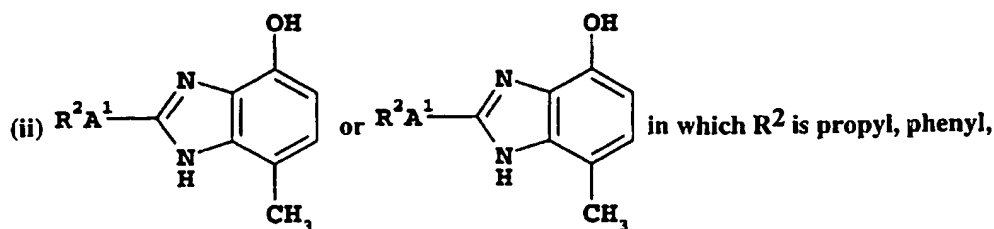
wherein R^1 , R^2 , R^3 , A^1 and Z^1 are as defined in claim 1, Q^1 is CH, CX^5 (where X^5 is halogen), a

10 nitrogen atom or N^+-O^- and  is  or  (where R^5 represents a hydrogen atom or

a methyl group), and N-oxides thereof, and their prodrugs, and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and solvates of the compounds of formula (I) and N-oxides thereof and their prodrugs, except compounds of formula




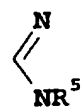
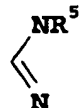
15 alkyl or aryl when A^1 is a direct bond; or R^2 is a hydrogen atom, hydroxy, alkyl or aryl when A^1 is a straight or branched C_{1-6} alkenylene; Z^1R^1 is hydrogen, alkyl or alkoxy; R^5 is hydrogen or methyl; and R^3 represents (iv), (vii), (xv), (xvi), (xx) or (xxi) in which R^8 and R^9 are hydrogen or alkyl, R^{15} is hydrogen, and p, Z and R^6 are as hereinbefore defined; or



- 4-methoxyphenyl, 3-trifluoromethylphenyl, 4-dimethylaminophenyl or 2-furyl and A¹ is a direct bond; or R² is phenyl, 4-methylphenyl, 4-methoxyphenyl, 3-methoxyphenyl, 2-methoxyphenyl, 4-ethoxyphenyl, 4-hydroxyphenyl, 3,4-dimethoxyphenyl, 3,4,5-trimethoxyphenyl, 1-naphthyl, 2-naphthyl, 2-thienyl or 3-pyridyl and A¹ is methylene; or R² is phenyl and A¹ is ethylene.

15. A compound according to claim 14 in which R¹ represents C₁₋₄alkyl optionally substituted by one or more halogen atoms.
- 10 16. A compound according to claim 14 in which R¹ represents methyl or difluoromethyl.
17. A compound according to any one of claims 14 to 16 in which R² represents a straight- or branched-chain C₁₋₄alkyl group, or cycloalkyl, alkoxy, aryl, aryloxy or heteroaryl.
- 15 18. A compound according to any one of claims 14 to 17 in which R³ represents -C(=O)-NHR⁶, -C(=O)-CH₂R⁶ or -O-CH₂R⁶ (where R⁶ represents a disubstituted azaheteroaryl group, or an N-oxide thereof).
19. A compound according to claim 18 in which R⁶ is pyridyl or isoxazolyl substituted on both positions adjacent to the position of attachment of R⁶ to the rest of the molecule.
- 20 20. A compound according to claim 18 in which R⁶ is pyridyl or isoxazolyl substituted by two methyl or halogen moieties on both positions adjacent to the position of attachment of R⁶ to the rest of the molecule.
- 25 21. A compound according to claim 18 in which R⁶ is 3,5-dimethylpyrid-4-yl, 3,5-dihalopyrid-4-yl or an N-oxide of such groups.
22. A compound according to claim 18 in which R⁶ is 3,5-dimethylisoxazol-4-yl.


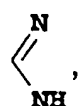
23. A compound according to any one of claims 14 to 22 in which A^1 represents a direct bond or a straight- or branched-chain alkylene linkage containing 1 to 6 carbon atoms optionally substituted by alkoxy.

5 24. A compound according to any one of claims 14 to 23 in which  represents  or  (where R^5 is a hydrogen atom).

25. A compound according to any one of claims 14 to 24 in which Q^1 is a CH linkage.

10 26. A compound according to any one of claims 14 to 25 in which Z^1 is an oxygen atom.

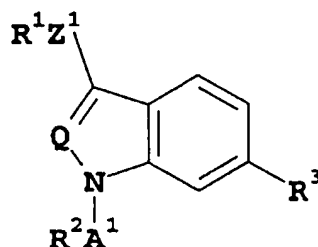
27. A compound according to claim 14 in which R^1 is methyl or difluoromethyl, R^2 is C_{1-4} alkyl, C_{3-6} cycloalkyl, C_{1-4} alkoxy, aryl, aryloxy or azaheteroaryl, R^3 is $-C(=O)-NHR^6$, $-C(=O)-CH_2R^6$ or $-O-CH_2R^6$ (where R^6 is a dimethyl- or dihalo-azaheteroaryl), A^1 is a direct

15 bond or a methylene linkage;  is , Q^1 is a CH linkage and Z^1 is an oxygen atom, and

N-oxides thereof, and their prodrugs, and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and solvates of the compounds of formula (Ia) herein and N-oxides thereof, and their prodrugs.

28. A compound of formula (Ib)

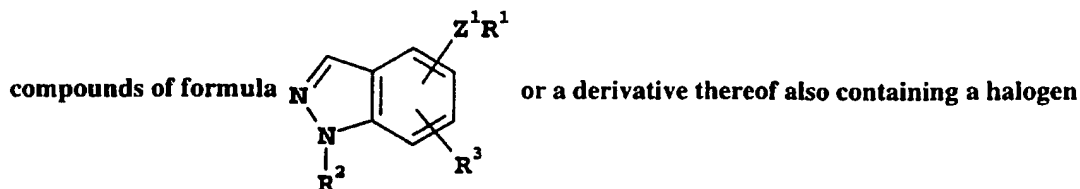
20



(Ib)

wherein R^1 , R^2 , R^3 , A^1 and Z^1 are as defined in claim 1, and Q represents a CH linkage or a nitrogen atom, and N-oxides thereof, and their prodrugs, and pharmaceutically acceptable salts

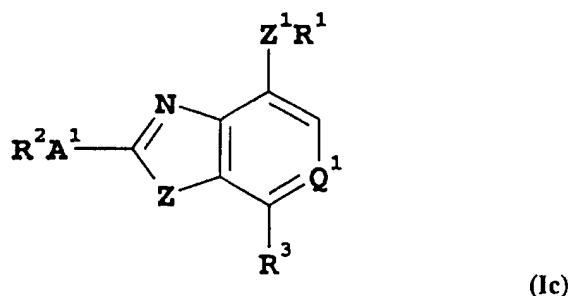
and solvates of the compounds of formula (Ib) and N-oxides thereof, and their prodrugs, except 6-benzyloxy-1-methyl-1H-indole, 1-benzyl-6-benzyloxy-4-iodo-3-methyl-1H-indole, or



substituent in the indazole benzene ring, in which Z¹ is a direct bond and R¹ is hydrogen; R² is optionally substituted phenyl or optionally substituted 2-pyridyl; and R³ represents a group (ix) in which R¹⁶ is hydrogen or alkyl, Z is an oxygen atom and R⁶ is an unsubstituted 5 or 6 membered heteroaryl group; a group (xx), (xxi), (xxii), (xxiv) or (xxx) in which R⁶ is phenyl or heteroaryl and Z is as defined hereinbefore; a group (xxiii) in which Z is an oxygen atom and R⁶ is an unsubstituted 5 or 6 membered heteroaryl group; or a group (xxvii) in which R⁶ is an unsubstituted 5 or 6 membered heteroaryl group.

29. A compound according to claim 28 in which R¹ is hydrogen or methyl, R² is C₄₋₉alkyl, C₃₋₇cycloalkyl, aryl, heteroaryl or heterocycloalkyl, R³ is -C(=O)-NHR⁶, -C(=O)-CH₂R⁶ or -O-CH₂R⁶ (where R⁶ is a dimethyl- or dihalo-azaheteroaryl), A¹ is a direct bond or a methylene linkage, Z¹ is a direct bond, and Q is a CH linkage or a nitrogen atom, and N-oxides thereof, and their prodrugs, and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and solvates of the compounds of formula (Ib) herein and N-oxides thereof, and their prodrugs.

30. A compound of formula (Ic)

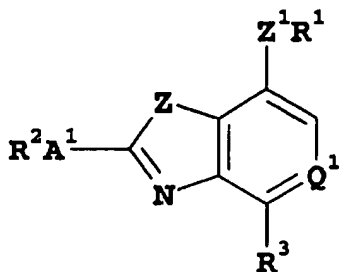


wherein R¹, R², R³, A¹ and Z¹ are as defined in claim 1, Q¹ is a nitrogen atom or N⁺-O⁻ and Z is an oxygen or sulphur atom, and N-oxides thereof, and their prodrugs, and pharmaceutically

acceptable salts and solvates of the compounds of formula (Ic) and N-oxides thereof, and their prodrugs.

31. A compound of formula (Id)

5

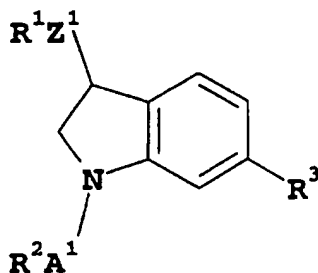


(Id)

wherein R^1 , R^2 , R^3 , A^1 and Z^1 are as defined in claim 1, Q^1 is a nitrogen atom or N^+-O^- and Z is an oxygen or sulphur atom, and N-oxides thereof, and their prodrugs, and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and solvates of the compounds of formula (Id) and N-oxides thereof, and their prodrugs.

10

32. A compound of formula (Ie)



(Ie)

15

wherein R^1 , R^2 , R^3 , A^1 and Z^1 are as defined in claim 1, and N-oxides thereof, and their prodrugs, and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and solvates of the compounds of formula (Ic) and N-oxides thereof, and their prodrugs, except N-(1-methyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-indol-6-yl)-benzamide, (3RS)-1-benzyl-6-benzyloxy-2,3-dihydro-4-iodo-3-iodomethyl-1H-indole, (3RS)-1-benzyl-6-benzyloxy-2,3-dihydro-3-hydroxymethyl-4-iodo-1H-indole, (3RS)-1-benzyl-6-benzyloxy-2,3-dihydro-3-hydroxymethyl-1H-indole, (3RS)-1-benzyl-6-benzyloxy-3-chloromethyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-indole.

20

33. A compound according to claim 32 in which R^1 is hydrogen or methyl, R^2 is C_{4-9} alkyl, C_{3-7} cycloalkyl, aryl, heteroaryl or heterocycloalkyl, R^3 is $-C(=O)-NHR^6$, $-C(=O)-CH_2R^6$ or $-O-CH_2R^6$ (where R^6 is a dimethyl- or dihalo-azaheteroaryl), A^1 is a direct bond or a methylene linkage and Z^1 is a direct bond, and N-oxides thereof, and their prodrugs, and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and solvates of the compounds of formula (Ie) herein and N-oxides thereof, and their prodrugs.

34. A compound selected from the following:

- N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-2-methoxymethyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
- 10 N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-2-phenyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
- N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-2-phenethyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
- 2-benzyl-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
- (RS)-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-2-(1-phenylethyl)-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
- (R)-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-2-(1-phenylethyl)-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
- 15 (S)-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-2-(1-phenylethyl)-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
- N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-2-(4-methoxy-benzyl)-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
- (RS)-2-(cyclohexyl-phenyl-methyl)-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
- (R)-2-(cyclohexyl-phenyl-methyl)-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-
- 20 4-carboxamide;
- (S)-2-(cyclohexyl-phenyl-methyl)-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
- (RS)-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-2-(1,2-diphenylethyl)-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
- 25 (R)-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-2-(1,2-diphenylethyl)-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
- (S)-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-2-(1,2-diphenylethyl)-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
- (RS)-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-2-(2-phenylpropyl)-3H-benzimidazole-
- 30 4-carboxamide;
- (R)-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-2-(2-phenylpropyl)-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
- (S)-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-2-(2-phenylpropyl)-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
- N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-2-(4-methoxyphenoxy-methyl)-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
- 35 (RS)-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-2-(1-phenylbutyl)-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;

- (R)-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-2-(1-phenylbutyl)-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
(S)-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-2-(1-phenylbutyl)-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
2-(4-bromobenzyl)-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
(RS)-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-2-[3-methoxy-1-phenylpropyl]-3H-benzimidazole-4-
5 carboxamide;
(R)-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-2-[3-methoxy-1-phenylpropyl]-3H-benzimidazole-
4-carboxamide;
(S)-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-2-[3-methoxy-1-phenylpropyl]-3H-benzimidazole-
4-carboxamide;
10 2-(4-cyanobenzyl)-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-2-[4-(3-pyridyl)benzyl]-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-2-(2-methoxy-benzyl)-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
(RS)-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-2-(methoxy-phenyl)methyl-3H-benzimidazole-
4-carboxamide;
15 (R)-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-2-(4-methoxy-phenyl)methyl-3H-benzimidazole-
4-carboxamide;
(S)-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-2-(4-methoxy-phenyl)methyl-3H-benzimidazole-
4-carboxamide;
N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-2-(2-methoxyphenoxy)methyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-
20 carboxamide;
N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-2-(3-pyridyl)-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-2-isopropyl-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-2-methyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-2-phenoxy-methyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
25 2-cyclopentyl-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
2-benzyl-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
2-cyclopentyl-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-1-methyl-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
2-cyclopentyl-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-3-methyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-2,7-dimethoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
30 2-cyclopropyl-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
2-cyclopropyl-N-(2,6-difluorophenyl)-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
2-cyclopropyl-N-(2,6-dibromophenyl)-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
2-cyclopropyl-N-(2,6-dimethylphenyl)-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
2-cyclopropyl-N-(2,4,6-trifluorophenyl)-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
35 2-cyclopropyl-N-(2,6-dichlorophenyl)-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
2-cyclopropyl-N-(3,5-dimethyl-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
2-cyclopropyl-N-(3,5-dimethyl-4-isoxazolyl)-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;

- N-(3,5-dimethyl-4-isoxazolyl)-7-methoxy-2-methoxymethyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
 2-cyclopropyl-N-(4-carboxy-2,6-dimethylphenyl)-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
 N-(4-carboxy-2,6-dimethylphenyl)-7-methoxy-2-methoxymethyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
- 5 N-(3-chloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-2-propyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
 N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
 1-butyloxycarbonyl-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-3-methyl-indole-6-carboxamide;
 N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
 1-(6,6-dimethyl-bicyclo[3.1.1]hept-2-ylmethyl)-3-methyl-N-(4-pyridyl)-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
- 10 1-benzyl-N-(4-hydroxyphenyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
 1-(2-cyclohexyl)ethyl-3-methyl-N-(4-pyrimidinyl)-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
 1-(6,6-dimethyl-bicyclo[3.1.1]hept-2-ylmethyl)-N-(3,5-dimethyl-[1,2,4]-triazol-4-yl)-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
 1-benzyl-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-3-methyl-1H-indoline-6-carboxamide;
- 15 1-(2-cyclopentyl-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazol-4-yl)-2-(4-pyridyl)ethanone;
 2-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-1-[1-(4-methoxybenzyl)-3-methyl-1H-indol-6-yl]-ethanone;
 2-(3,5-dichloro-pyridin-4-yl)-1-[1-(1-toluene-4-sulphonyl)-3-methyl-1H-indol-6-yl]-ethanone;
 1-[1-(4-methoxybenzyl)-3-methyl-1H-indol-6-yl]-2-(4-pyridyl)-ethanone;
 1-(7-methoxy-2-methoxymethyl-3H-benzimidazol-4-yl)-2-(4-pyridyl)ethanone;
- 20 1,3-bis-(4-pyridyl)-2-(7-methoxy-2-methoxymethyl-3H-benzimidazol-4-yl)-propan-2-ol;
 7-methoxy-2-methoxymethyl-4-[2-(4-pyridyl)ethyl]-3H-benzimidazole;
 2-(4-carboxamidobenzyl)-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
 [2-(3-chlorophenoxy)-pyridin-3-yl]-(7-methoxy-2-methoxymethyl-3H-benzimidazol-
- 25 4-yl)-methanone;
 2-cyclopropyl-4-(3,5-dimethyl-4-pyridylmethoxy)-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole;
 4-(3,5-dimethyl-4-pyridylmethoxy)-7-methoxy-2-methoxymethyl-3H-benzimidazole;
 ethyl 5-(2-cyclopropyl-7-methoxy-benzimidazole-4-yl)pyridine-2-carboxylate;
 2-cyclopropyl-7-methoxy-4-(4-morpholinosulphonyl)-3H-benzimidazole;
- 30 1-benzyl-7-methoxy-2-methoxymethyl-4-(2-(4-pyridyl)-ethyl)-1H-benzimidazole;
 1-cyclohexylmethyl-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
 1-(2-cyclohexyl)ethyl-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
 1-[3-(cyclohexyl)propyl]-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
 N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-3-methyl-1-heptyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
- 35 N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-3-methyl-1-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-2-yl)methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
 N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-3-methyl-1-(tetrahydrofuran-2-yl)methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;

- N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-3-methyl-1-(toluene-4-sulphonyl)-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
 N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-3-methyl-1-(tetrahydro-furan-3-yl)-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
 N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-3-methyl-1-(3-methoxy)-cyclopentyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
 N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-3-methyl-1-(5-chloro-thiophen-2-yl)methyl-1H-indole-6-
 5 carboxamide;
 N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-3-methyl-1-(3,5-dimethylisoxazol-4-yl)methyl-1H-indole-6-
 carboxamide;
 N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-3-methyl-1-(2-methyl-thiazol-4-yl)methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
 methyl 5-[6-(3,5-dichloro-pyridin-4-ylcarbamoyl)-3-methyl-indol-1-ylmethyl]-furan-2-
 10 carboxylate;
 N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-3-methyl-1-(5-phenyl-[1,2,4]oxadiazol-3-yl)methyl-1H-indole-6-
 carboxamide;
 N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-3-methyl-1-(2-morpholin-4-yl)ethyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
 methyl 5-[6-(3,5-dichloro-pyridin-4-ylcarbamoyl)-3-methyl-indole-1-yl]-pentanoate;
 15 N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-1-(4-trifluorobenzyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
 N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-3-methyl-1-(4-methyl-sulphonylbenzyl)-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
 N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-1-(4-methoxycarbonyl-benzyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
 N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-3-methyl-1-(3-nitrobenzyl)-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
 N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-1-(naphthalen-2-yl)methyl-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
 20 N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-1-(biphenyl-4-yl)methyl-3-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
 N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-3-methyl-1-(1-benzyl-imidazol-2-yl)methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
 N-(3,5-dichloro-pyridin-4-yl)-3-ethyl-1-(toluene-4-sulphonyl)-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
 N-(3,5-dichloro-pyridin-4-yl)-3-isopropyl-1-(toluene-4-sulphonyl)-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
 N-(3,5-dichloro-pyridin-4-yl)-3-(1-hydroxyethyl)-1-(toluene-4-sulphonyl)-1H-indole-6-
 25 carboxamide;
 N-(3,5-dichloro-pyridin-4-yl)-3-(1-hydroxyisopropyl)-1-(toluene-4-sulphonyl)-1H-indole-6-
 carboxamide;
 N-(3,5-dichloro-pyridin-4-yl)-3-formyl-1-(toluene-4-sulphonyl)-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
 N-(3,5-dichloro-pyridin-4-yl)-3-formyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
 30 1-benzyl-4-[3-methyl-1-(3-phenyl-propyl)-1H-indole-6-yl]-pyrrolidine-2-one;
 4-[3-methyl-1-(3-phenyl-propyl)-1H-indole-6-yl]-pyrrolidine-2-one;
 1-(4-methoxybenzyl)-3-methyl-6-(1-phenyl-2-pyridin-4-yl-ethyl)-1H-indole;
 cis- and trans-[1-(4-methoxybenzyl)-3-methyl-6-(1-phenyl-2-pyridin-4-yl-vinyl)-1H-indole;
 6-(1-hydroxy-1-phenyl-2-pyridin-4-yl)ethyl-1-(4-methoxybenzyl)-3-methyl-1H-indole;
 35 [1-(4-methoxy-benzyl)-3-methyl-1H-indol-6-yl]-phenyl-methanone;
 N-methoxy-1-(4-methoxybenzyl)-3-methyl-N-methyl-1H-indole-6-carboxamide;
 1-benzyl-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-3-methyl-1H-indazole-6-carboxamide;

N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-1-(4-methoxybenzyl)-3-methyl-1H-indazole-6-carboxamide;
N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-3-isopropyl-1-methyl-1H-indole-5-carboxamide;
and the corresponding pyridine N-oxides, and their prodrugs, and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and solvates thereof.

5

35. A compound selected from the following:

- N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-2-methoxymethyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-2,7-dimethoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
2-cyclopropyl-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
10 2-isopropyl-N-(3,5-dichloro-4-pyridyl)-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
2-cyclopropyl-N-(3,5-dimethyl-4-isoxazolyl)-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
N-(3,5-dimethyl-4-isoxazolyl)-7-methoxy-2-methoxymethyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide;
2-cyclopropyl-4-(3,5-dimethyl-4-pyridylmethoxy)-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole;
4-(3,5-dimethyl-4-pyridylmethoxy)-7-methoxy-2-methoxymethyl-3H-benzimidazole; and the
15 corresponding pyridine N-oxides, and their prodrugs, and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and solvates thereof.

36. 2-Cyclopropyl-4-(3,5-dimethyl-4-pyridylmethoxy)-7-methoxy-3H-benzimidazole; and its corresponding pyridine N-oxide, and its prodrugs, and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and
20 solvates thereof.

37. A compound of formula (I) as defined in claim 3 or a prodrug thereof, and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and solvates thereof as claimed in Claim 1 for use in therapy.

- 25 38. A composition comprising a compound of formula (I) as defined in claim 1, or a prodrug thereof, and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and solvates thereof in association with a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or excipient for use in the treatment of a patient suffering from, or subject to, conditions which can be ameliorated by the administration of an inhibitor of TNF.

30

39. A composition comprising a compound of formula (I) as defined in claim 1, or a prodrug thereof, and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and solvates thereof in association with a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or excipient for use in the treatment of a patient suffering from, or subject to, conditions which can be ameliorated by the administration of an inhibitor of
35 type IV cyclic AMP phosphodiesterase.

40. A method for the treatment of a human or animal patient suffering from, or subject to, conditions which can be ameliorated by the administration of an inhibitor of type IV cyclic AMP phosphodiesterase or of TNF comprising administering to said patient an effective amount of a compound of formula (I) or a prodrug thereof, and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and
5 solvates thereof as claimed in Claim 1.
41. A compound as substantially hereinbefore described with reference to the Examples.

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Inten. Application No

PCT/GB 97/01639

A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER

IPC 6 C07D401/12 A61K31/415 A61K31/40 A61K31/47 A61K31/42
C07D209/08 C07D235/08 C07D235/12 C07D401/04 C07D401/06
C07D403/04 C07D413/12 C07D405/12 C07D405/14 C07D409/14

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)

IPC 6 C07D

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practical, search terms used)

C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

| Category * | Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages | Relevant to claim No. |
|------------|---|-----------------------|
| X | WO 96 11917 A (EURO CELTIQUE SA ;CAVALLA DAVID J (GB); CHASIN MARK (US); HOFER PE) 25 April 1996 see page 73 - page 74; claim 1 see page 6, line 11 - page 7, line 6 --- | 1,27-30, 38-47 |
| X | EP 0 266 326 A (HAESSLE AB) 4 May 1988 see page 4, line 1 - line 45 see page 5 - page 9; table 1 see page 15 - page 17; table 2 --- -/-- | 1,11-14, 20-22 |



Further documents are listed in the continuation of box C.



Patent family members are listed in annex.

* Special categories of cited documents :

- "A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance
- "E" earlier document but published on or after the international filing date
- "L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)
- "O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means
- "P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed

- "T" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention
- "X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone
- "Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art.
- "&" document member of the same patent family

Date of the actual completion of the international search

25 September 1997

Date of mailing of the international search report

- 6. 10. 97

Name and mailing address of the ISA

European Patent Office, P.B. 5818 Patentlaan 2
NL - 2280 HV Rijswijk
Tel. (+ 31-70) 340-2040, Tx. 31 651 epo nl,
Fax (+ 31-70) 340-3016

Authorized officer

Fink, D

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Intern. Application No
PCT/GB 97/01639

| C.(Continuation) DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT | | |
|--|---|-----------------------|
| Category | Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages | Relevant to claim No. |
| P,X | EP 0 774 462 A (FUJISAWA PHARMACEUTICAL CO) 21 May 1997 see page 22, lines 53 and 59 see page 29, line 25 see page 37, line 45 see page 38, lines 6, 19, 29, and 44 | 1,11,14, 20,22 |
| X | & WO 96 04251 A (FUJISAWA PHARMACEUTICAL CO; OKU TERUO (JP); KAYAKIRI HIROSHI (JP);) 15 February 1996 --- | 1,11,14, 20,22 |
| X | D.R. BUCKLE ET AL.: "Novel 1H-Benzimidazol-4-ols with Potent 5-Lipoxygenase Inhibitory Activity" JOURNAL OF MEDICINAL CHEMISTRY., vol. 30, no. 12, December 1987, WASHINGTON US, pages 2216-2221, XP002041812 see page 2217; table I see page 2219; compound no. 55 --- | 1,11-14, 20-22 |
| X | DE 39 30 473 A (OREAL) 15 March 1990 see page 11, line 10 - line 25 --- | 1,25 |
| X | US 5 444 038 A (JAMES DONALD R ET AL) 22 August 1995 see column 41; table I, compound no. 220 see column 44; table I, compound no. 254 --- | 1,25 |
| X | L.F. TIETZE ET AL.: "Synthesis of the Reduced A-Unit (CI) of the Antitumor Antibiotic CC-1065" CHEMISCHE BERICHTE., vol. 126, no. 12, December 1993, WEINHEIM DE, pages 2733-2737, XP002041813 see page 2734, compounds no. 10 and 11 --- | 1,31 |
| X | DATABASE CROSSFIRE Beilstein Informationssysteme GmbH, Frankfurt DE XP002041815 see BRN: 218639 & DOKL. AKAD. NAUK SSSR, vol. 118, 1958, pages 302-304, --- -/-- | 1,31 |

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Inter. Appl. Application No
PCT/GB 97/01639

| C.(Continuation) DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT | | |
|--|--|-----------------------|
| Category * | Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages | Relevant to claim No. |
| X | C.T. ALABASTER ET AL.: "2(1H)-Quinolinones with Cardiac Stimulant Activity. 1. Synthesis and Biological Activities of (Six-Membered Heteroaryl)-Substituted Derivatives" JOURNAL OF MEDICINAL CHEMISTRY., vol. 31, no. 10, October 1988, WASHINGTON US, pages 2048-2056, XP002041814 see page 2050; table III, compound no. 38 --- | 1,33 |
| X | DATABASE CROSSFIRE Beilstein Informationssysteme GmbH, Frankfurt DE XP002041816 see BRN: 19537 & ZH. OBSHCH. KHIM., vol. 23, 1953, pages 634-642, --- | 1,33 |
| A | WO 94 02465 A (RHONE POULENC RORER LTD ;FENTON GARRY (GB); MORLEY ANDREW DAVID (G) 3 February 1994 see the whole document --- | 1-47 |
| A | WO 96 12720 A (PFIZER ;DUPLANTIER ALLEN J (US)) 2 May 1996 see the whole document ----- | 1-47 |

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.
PCT/GB 97/01639

Box I Observations where certain claims were found unsearchable (Continuation of item 1 of first sheet)

This International Search Report has not been established in respect of certain claims under Article 17(2)(a) for the following reasons:

1. ☒ Claims Nos.:
because they relate to subject matter not required to be searched by this Authority, namely:
see FURTHER INFORMATION sheet PCT/ISA/210
2. ☒ Claims Nos.:
because they relate to parts of the International Application that do not comply with the prescribed requirements to such an extent that no meaningful International Search can be carried out, specifically:
see FURTHER INFORMATION sheet PCT/ISA/210
3. ☐ Claims Nos.:
because they are dependent claims and are not drafted in accordance with the second and third sentences of Rule 6.4(a).

Box II Observations where unity of invention is lacking (Continuation of item 2 of first sheet)

This International Searching Authority found multiple inventions in this international application, as follows:

1. ☐ As all required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this International Search Report covers all searchable claims.
2. ☐ As all searchable claims could be searched without effort justifying an additional fee, this Authority did not invite payment of any additional fee.
3. ☐ As only some of the required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this International Search Report covers only those claims for which fees were paid, specifically claims Nos.:
4. ☐ No required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant. Consequently, this International Search Report is restricted to the invention first mentioned in the claims; it is covered by claims Nos.:

Remark on Protest

- ☐ The additional search fees were accompanied by the applicant's protest.
- ☐ No protest accompanied the payment of additional search fees.

FURTHER INFORMATION CONTINUED FROM PCT/ISA/ 210

This international search report has not been established in respect of certain claims under Article 17(2)(a) for the following reasons:

Claims Nos.: 1-23,25,27-35,38-47

because they relate to parts of the international application that do not comply with the prescribed requirements to such an extent that no meaningful international search can be carried out, specifically:

The novelty search on the compounds of present claim 1 revealed a vast amount of novelty-destroying documents. Therefore, the search and the search report - as far as the question of novelty is concerned - had to be limited (for economical reasons; cf. WIPO: "PCT Search Guidelines", 18. November 1992, part 8, chapter III, item 2) to the compounds according to claims 24 and 26 (and 36 and 37) of the present application.

Hence, the search report should not be considered as being complete with respect to present claims 1-23, 25, 27-35, 38-47 (the corresponding novelty-destroying documents of the search report are merely cited for representative purposes).

Remark : Although claim 46 is directed to a method of treatment of the human/animal body , the search has been carried out and based on the alleged effects of the compound/composition.

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Information on patent family members

Inter. Appl. No.

PCT/GB 97/01639

| Patent document cited in search report | Publication date | Patent family member(s) | Publication date |
|---|---------------------|----------------------------|---------------------|
| WO 9611917 A | 25-04-96 | US 5665737 A | 09-09-97 |
| | | AU 4231796 A | 06-05-96 |
| | | EP 0785927 A | 30-07-97 |
| | | FI 971489 A | 05-06-97 |
| | | NO 971684 A | 12-06-97 |
| | | PL 319605 A | 18-08-97 |
| | | ZA 9508563 A | 13-05-96 |
| EP 0266326 A | 04-05-88 | AU 7949887 A | 28-04-88 |
| | | DE 3784624 A | 15-04-93 |
| | | ES 2053587 T | 01-08-94 |
| | | JP 63122675 A | 26-05-88 |
| | | SU 1597100 A | 30-09-90 |
| | | US 5106862 A | 21-04-92 |
| | | ZA 8707400 A | 27-04-88 |
| EP 0774462 A | 21-05-97 | AU 2991595 A | 04-03-96 |
| | | WO 9604251 A | 15-02-96 |
| DE 3930473 A | 15-03-90 | LU 87337 A | 06-04-90 |
| | | AT 400672 B | 26-02-96 |
| | | AT 210089 A | 15-07-95 |
| | | AU 626579 B | 06-08-92 |
| | | AU 4120789 A | 15-03-90 |
| | | BE 1002235 A | 30-10-90 |
| | | CH 679551 A | 13-03-92 |
| | | FR 2636236 A | 16-03-90 |
| | | GB 2224518 A,B | 09-05-90 |
| | | GR 1000461 B | 30-07-92 |
| | | JP 2121912 A | 09-05-90 |
| | | NL 8902281 A | 02-04-90 |
| | | PT 91663 B | 09-08-95 |
| | | US 5279620 A | 18-01-94 |
| US 5444038 A | 22-08-95 | AU 665818 B | 18-01-96 |
| | | CN 1079961 A | 29-12-93 |
| | | EP 0630367 A | 28-12-94 |
| | | HU 70876 A | 28-11-95 |
| | | JP 7508259 T | 14-09-95 |
| | | MX 9301301 A | 29-04-94 |

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Information on patent family members

International Application No

PCT/GB 97/01639

| Patent document cited in search report | Publication date | Patent family member(s) | Publication date |
|---|---------------------|---|--|
| US 5444038 A | | WO 9318008 A ZA 9301632 A | 16-09-93 05-08-94 |
| WO 9402465 A | 03-02-94 | AU 4717693 A CA 2140441 A CZ 9500147 A EP 0652868 A FI 950375 A HU 72656 A HU 211979 B JP 8503925 T MX 9304571 A NO 950319 A NZ 254881 A PL 307265 A ZA 9305448 A | 14-02-94 03-02-94 17-07-96 17-05-95 27-01-95 28-05-96 29-01-96 30-04-96 31-05-94 27-03-95 25-09-96 15-05-95 19-05-94 |
| WO 9612720 A | 02-05-96 | AU 3531795 A BR 9504491 A EP 0787132 A FI 954991 A NO 971811 A PL 319758 A | 15-05-96 20-05-97 06-08-97 21-04-96 18-06-97 18-08-97 |